Asanti
Workflow Software

Reference Guide

AGFA

WE EMBODY PRINT

For more information about Agfa products, visit *www.agfa.com* or contact us at the following address:

Agfa Offset BV
Septestraat 27
B-2640 Mortsel, Belgium
Tel: (+)32 3 444 2111

Date of Issue: October 2025

End User License Agreement

1. IMPORTANT NOTICE

This package includes one or more diskette(s), CD-ROM(s), and/or DVD(s) containing copies of Asanti™ software programs and documentation relating thereto, and an associated dongle.

You should carefully read the following terms and conditions before accepting this License Agreement, and installing and using this Software (as defined below). This License Agreement ("Agreement") is a legal agreement between You and Agfa Offset BV, Septestraat 27, B-2640 Mortsel, Belgium ("AGFA"), and describes the terms and conditions pursuant to which AGFA shall license to You this Software, provided however that in the event a hardcopy license agreement with respect to the Software is signed by or on behalf of both You and AGFA whose terms vary from this Agreement, then such signed hardcopy license agreement shall govern Your Use of the Software. In this License Agreement "You" means, and "Your" refers to, the corporation or other entity that obtains the Software and enters into this Agreement, including both the reader and any corporate licensee.

BY INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THESE TERMS, DO NOT INSTALL, COPY OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE, AND YOU MAY RETURN THE SOFTWARE, WITH PROOF OF PAYMENT, FOR A FULL REFUND TO THE PLACE OF PURCHASE WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS OF THE PURCHASE DATE.

You are licensed to use the Software on the following terms and conditions:

2. DEFINITIONS

2.1 "AGFA order form" means the electronic or hard copy order form by which You have ordered the Software.

2.2 "Authorised Users" means the number of users who concurrently may have access to the Software at any one time, as specified in the AGFA order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.3 "Confidential Information" means this Agreement, including all of its terms, and all its amendments and addenda, all Software listings, Documentation, information, data, tests, specifications, trade secrets, object code and machine-readable copies of the Software, and any other proprietary information supplied to You by AGFA, or by You to AGFA and clearly marked as "confidential information", including all items defined as "confidential information" in any other agreement between You and AGFA executed prior to the date of this Agreement.

2.4 "Designated Output Device" means an Output Device that has been designated by You to be managed by the Software.

2.5 "Documentation" means any instruction manuals, operating instructions, user manuals, online help, tutorials and specifications provided by AGFA which describe the use of the Software and which either accompany the Software or are provided to You at any time.

2.6 "Dongle" means a small hardware device that connects to a computer and acts as an authentication key for the licensed Software.

2.7 "Effective Date" means the date on which You have accepted to be bound by the terms of this Agreement by installing, copying or otherwise using the Software.

2.8 "Font Programs" means the digitally encoded, machine readable outline programs for certain typefaces.

2.9 "Modules" means the modules elected by You as being part of the Software, as listed in the AGFA order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.10 "Output Device" means a device that is capable of outputting logical pages, such as, without limitation, a platesetter or imagesetter.

2.11 "Processor" means one (1) single processor core that forms part of a desktop computer or server, as the case may be, on which the Software is installed or executed. For those processors that have multiple execution cores, each such core shall be considered a distinct Processor.

2.12 "Software" means Asanti™ computer software program, all or part of which are owned by AGFA or other parties whereby the license is owned by AGFA ("Other Owners"), consisting of any of the Modules elected by You, provided and licensed to You pursuant to this Agreement.

2.13 "Storage Device" means the diskette(s), CD-ROM(s), DVD(s) and/ or other device on which AGFA distributes copies of the Software.

2.14 "System" means one or more Processors on which the Software is installed or run, and located at the System Location. The number of Processors on which You are authorised to install or run the Software is set forth in the AGFA order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.15 "System Location" means, with respect to the System and any part thereof, the address at which the System, and any part thereof, is physically located, as identified in the AGFA order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.16 "Updates" shall mean updates, if any, to the Software as commercially released by AGFA at any given time, including, but not limited to, updates, small enhancements, additions, modifications, deletions, incorporation of patches, and/ or error corrections to any previously delivered version of the Software, as designated in AGFA's sole determination.

2.17 "Upgrades" shall mean a new and enhanced release of the Software as commercially released by AGFA at any given time and that, when made or added, materially changes its utility, efficiency, functional capability or application, as designated in AGFA's sole determination.

2.18 "Use" means loading, utilisation, running, storage or display of the Software by Authorised Users on Your System in connection with a Designated Output Device only, and solely for Your own internal business operations.

2.19 "Warranty Period" means the period ending ninety (90) days after the Effective Date during which the Software is covered by AGFA's warranty as set forth in this Agreement, provided however that in no event the Warranty Period shall exceed a period of one hundred and twenty (120) days after the date You have purchased the Software.

3. LICENSE AND COPIES

3.1 GRANT OF LICENSE. Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, AGFA hereby grants to You a perpetual, non-exclusive, non-sublicensable and non-transferable limited right and license to (a) Use the Software on the System, and (b) use the Documentation in connection with the Use of the Software. You acknowledge that the License Fee paid by You for the Use of Software is determined by the Designated Output Device. For each Output Device with which You Use the Software different from the Designated Output Device You will have to purchase a license upgrade for the Software or, with respect to additional Output Devices in connection with which You Use the Software, one or more additional licensed copies of the Software. In addition, specific terms and conditions shall apply to the use of Font Programs, as further set out in the about-box of the Software.

3.2 This license transfers to You neither title nor any proprietary or intellectual property rights to the Software, Documentation, or any copyrights, patents, or trademarks, embodied or used in connection therewith, except for the limited rights expressly granted herein. You acknowledge that the Software and any copies thereof are licensed and not sold, and all right, title and interest in and to the Software are and shall remain with AGFA and/ or the Other Owners.

3.3 COPIES. During the term of this Agreement, You will be entitled to make a reasonable number of machine-readable copies of the Software for backup or archival purposes only. You may not copy the Software, except as permitted by this Agreement. You shall maintain accurate and up-to-date records of the location of all copies of the Software and inform AGFA in writing of such location(s) upon AGFA's request. All copies of the Software will be subject to all terms and conditions of this Agreement. Whenever You are permitted to copy or reproduce all or any part of the Software, all titles, trademark symbols, copyright symbols and legends, and other proprietary markings must be reproduced.

4. LICENSE RESTRICTIONS

You agree that You are granted a limited right to Use only, and that You will not Yourself, or through any parent, subsidiary, affiliate, agent or other third party:

(a) lease, license or sub-license the Software or the Documentation;

(b) sell or otherwise transfer the Software or Documentation, unless, subject to Article 9.4, You transfer your rights under this Agreement to a corporation or other entity and that at the time of transfer You pass the Software (and any and all copies in Your control) to such corporation or other entity and such corporation or other entity agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement;

(c) decompile, disassemble, or reverse engineer the Software, in whole or in part;

(d) modify the Software or any part thereof, except to the extent that the Software provides for user-modifiable components and such modification is necessary to Use the Software;

(e) write or develop any derivative software or any other software program based upon the Software or any part thereof, or any Confidential Information;

(f) use the Software to provide software related services; or

(g) provide, disclose, divulge or make available to, or permit use of the Software by any unauthorized third party without AGFA's prior written consent.

(h) If the Software is used within a country of the European Community, nothing in this Agreement shall be construed as restricting or prejudicing any imperative rights available under the European Community Software Directive, O.J.Eur.Comm. (No.L.122/42, 1991).

5. LICENSE FEE

5.1 LICENSE FEE. You shall pay the license fees for the Software applicable at the time of purchase (the "License Fee"). All fees hereunder exclude all applicable sales, use, value-added, property and other taxes, including duties and similar mandatory payments, and You will be responsible for payment of all such.

5.2 NO OFFSET. License Fees due from You under this Agreement may not be withheld or offset by You against other amounts due to You for any reason.

6. INSTALLATION - UPDATES - UPGRADES - MAINTENANCE AND SUPPORT

6.1 You shall be responsible for the installation of the Software on the System, in accordance with the Documentation.

6.2 As from the Effective Date, You may elect to purchase support and maintenance services in connection with the Software. In the event such maintenance and support agreement entitles You to Updates and Upgrades of the Software, if, and as from the date that, any such Update or Upgrade is installed on the System, it shall be an integral part of the Software. An Upgrade is covered by the warranty pursuant to paragraph 6.1 during a period of ninety (90) days as from the date of installation of the Upgrade, which in no event shall exceed a period of 120 days after the Upgrade has been shipped by AGFA.

6.3 Notwithstanding the foregoing, AGFA shall have no obligation to offer, or continue to offer, to You the opportunity to purchase such support and maintenance services with respect to a given release (Updates or Upgrades) of the Software for a period exceeding two (2) years from the date of such release.

7. LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

7.1 **LIMITED WARRANTY.** AGFA warrants that during the Warranty Period (a) the Software will perform in substantial accordance with the Documentation and (b) the Storage Device on which the Software is distributed will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use. If during the Warranty Period the Software or the Storage Device on which it is distributed do not perform as warranted, AGFA at its sole and exclusive option shall use commercially reasonable efforts to correct such non-conformance of the Software or to provide a reasonable workaround, or replace the Storage Device free of charge, or, if neither of those remedies are commercially practicable, terminate this Agreement and repay to You the License Fee. The warranty set forth above is made to and for the benefit of You only. The warranty will apply only if: (a) the Software has been properly installed and used at all times and in accordance with the Documentation or other instructions for Use, and (b) no modification, alteration or addition has been made to the Software by persons other than AGFA or AGFA's authorised representative, except as authorised in writing by AGFA, and (c) the defect, error or problem does not result from any cause within the control of You. Any supplements or Updates to the Software, including without limitation, any service packs or hot fixes provided to you after the expiration of the Warranty Period are not covered by any warranty or condition, express, implied or statutory. AGFA warrants that it possesses all of the right, title, interest and authority to enter into this Agreement with You. AGFA also warrants that no lawsuit or claim concerning the Software is currently pending.

7.2 EXCEPT FOR THE ABOVE EXPRESS LIMITED WARRANTIES, AGFA MAKES NO WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY REGARDING OR RELATING TO THE SOFTWARE OR THE DOCUMENTATION, OR ANY MATERIALS OR SERVICES FURNISHED OR PROVIDED TO YOU UNDER THIS AGREEMENT. AGFA SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, DOCUMENTATION AND SAID OTHER MATERIALS AND SERVICES, AND WITH RESPECT TO THE USE OF ANY OF THE FOREGOING. WITHOUT LIMITING THE GENERALITY OF THE FOREGOING, AGFA DOES NOT WARRANT THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DATA WILL NOT BE LOST IF FOR ANY REASON OPERATIONS ARE INTERRUPTED.

7.3 **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL AGFA BE LIABLE FOR ANY COMMERCIAL LOSS, LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF AN OPPORTUNITY, LOSS OF USE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF DATA, COST OF COVER OR INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE OR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES PERFORMED

HEREUNDER, WHETHER ALLEGED AS A BREACH OF CONTRACT OR TORTIOUS CONDUCT, INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE (BUT NOT GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR FRAUD), EVEN IF AGFA HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ADDITION, AGFA WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY DELAY IN DELIVERY OR FURNISHING THE SOFTWARE OR SAID SERVICES. AGFA'S LIABILITY UNDER THIS AGREEMENT FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL AND/OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, RESTITUTION, WILL NOT, IN ANY EVENT, EXCEED THE LICENSE FEE PAID BY YOU TO AGFA UNDER THIS AGREEMENT.

7.4 **ALLOCATION OF RISK.** The provisions of this Section 6 allocate risks under this Agreement between You and AGFA. You acknowledge and recognise that AGFA's pricing reflects this allocation of risks and limitation of liability accordingly.

8. INDEMNIFICATION

8.1 INFRINGEMENT INDEMNITY. AGFA represents it has no reason to believe that the Software infringes upon any copyright or any other intellectual property right of any third party. In the event of a claim that the Software infringes upon, or violates, a third party's copyright AGFA will indemnify and hold You harmless against any action brought against You based on a claim that the unmodified Software, when used in accordance with this Agreement, infringes a European copyright, patent or other proprietary rights, and AGFA shall pay all costs, settlements and damages finally awarded, except for consequential damages. However, AGFA will not be obligated to indemnify or hold You harmless from any such action unless You (i) notify AGFA in writing of any claim within 10 (ten) business days after You learn of such a claim, (ii) give AGFA sole control of the defence and settlement thereof, (iii) provide all reasonable assistance in connection with the defence and settlement thereof, and (iv) have not yet compromised or settled in any way any such losses, claims or damages for which indemnity is sought. If the Software is finally adjudged to so infringe, or in AGFA's opinion is likely to become the subject of such a claim, AGFA shall, at its sole option expense, either (1) apply its best efforts to procure for You the right to continue using the Software, or (2) apply its best efforts to modify or replace the Software to make it non-infringing, or, if neither (1) or (2) is commercially practicable (3) terminate this Agreement, and repay to You a portion of the License Fee equal to the amount paid by You less reasonable depreciation. AGFA shall have no liability regarding any infringement claim arising out of: (i) use of other than a current, unaltered release of the Software; (ii) Use of the Software in combination with non-AGFA software, data or equipment, if the infringement was caused by the Use of such combination; (iii) any modification or derivation of the Software not specifically authorised in writing by AGFA; or (iv) use of third party software.

8.2 EXCLUSIVE REMEDY. The foregoing states the entire liability of AGFA and the exclusive remedy for You with respect to infringement of any patent, copyright, trade secret or other proprietary right.

9. CONFIDENTIALITY

9.1 CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION. Each party acknowledges that the Confidential Information constitutes valuable trade secrets and each party agrees that it shall use Confidential Information solely in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement and will not disclose, or permit to be disclosed, the same, directly or indirectly, to any third party without the other party's prior written consent. Each party agrees to exercise due care in protecting the Confidential Information from unauthorized use and disclosure. However, neither party bears any responsibility for safeguarding information that (i) is publicly available, (ii) already in the other party's possession and not subject to a confidentiality obligation, (iii) obtained by the other party from third parties without restrictions on disclosure, (iv) independently developed by the other party without reference to Confidential Information, or (v) required to be disclosed by order of a court or other governmental entity.

9.2 INJUNCTIVE RELIEF. In the event of actual or threatened breach of the provisions of Section 8.1, the non-breaching party will have no adequate remedy at law and will be entitled to immediate and injunctive and other equitable relief, without bond and without the necessity of showing actual money damages.

10. TERM AND TERMINATION

10.1 TERM. This Agreement will take effect on the Effective Date and will remain in force for as long as any copyright in the Software exist, subject to termination in accordance with Article 9.2

10.2 TERMINATION. This Agreement may be terminated by AGFA upon written notice to You if (i) You fail to pay any undisputed amount due within thirty (30) days after You have been given written notice of such non-payment; (ii) You are in material breach of any non-monetary term, condition or provision of Agreement, which breach, if capable of being cured, is not cured within thirty (30) days after You have been given written notice of such breach; or (iii) AGFA elects to do so in accordance with Article 6.1 or 7.1. Except for a termination pursuant to Articles 6.1 or 7.1, no such termination will entitle You to a refund of any portion of the License Fee. You may terminate this Agreement at any time for any reason by submitting written notice to that effect to AGFA.

10.3 EFFECT OF TERMINATION. Upon expiration or termination of this Agreement, You shall promptly uninstall and return to AGFA the Software, any derivative works, all copies thereof, including computer memory or storage copies, the associated Dongle, all related Documentation and all copies thereof, and any other Confidential Information in Your possession. You shall furnish AGFA with a certificate signed by an executive officer verifying that the same has been done. Termination or Expiration will not affect the provisions regarding the treatment of Confidential Information, provisions relating to the payment of amounts due, or provisions limiting or disclaiming AGFA's liability, which provisions will survive termination of this Agreement.

10.4 NON-ASSIGNMENT. Neither this Agreement nor any rights under this Agreement may be assigned or otherwise transferred by You, in whole or in part, whether voluntary or by operation of law, including by way of sale of assets, merger or consolidation, without the prior written consent of AGFA, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. Subject to the foregoing, this Agreement will be binding upon and will inure to the benefit of the parties and their respective successors and assigns.

11. MISCELLANEOUS

11.1 WAIVER. Any waiver of the provisions of this Agreement or of a party's rights or remedies under this Agreement must be in writing to be effective. Failure, neglect, or delay by a party to enforce the provisions of this Agreement or its rights or remedies at any time, will not be construed and will not be deemed to be a waiver of such party's rights under this Agreement and will not in any way affect the validity of the whole or any part of this Agreement or prejudice such party's right to take subsequent action. Except as expressly stated in this Agreement, no exercise or enforcement by either party of any right or remedy under this Agreement will preclude the enforcement by such party of any other right or remedy under this Agreement or that such party is entitled by law to enforce.

11.2 SEVERABILITY. If any provision, or part of any provision, of this Agreement is invalidated by operation of law or otherwise, that provision or part will to that extent be deemed omitted and the remainder of this Agreement, or applicable attachment, will remain in full force and effect. In place of any such invalid provision or part thereof, the parties hereto undertake to agree on a similar but valid provision the effect of which is as close as possible to that of the invalid provision or part thereof. If the parties fail to agree on such an amendment, such invalid term, condition or provision will be severed from the remaining terms, conditions and provisions, which will continue to be valid and enforceable to the fullest extent permitted by law.

11.3 STANDARD TERMS. No terms, provisions or conditions of any purchase order, acknowledgement or other business form that You may use in connection with the licensing of the Software will have any effect on the rights, duties or obligations of the parties under, or otherwise modify, this Agreement, regardless of any failure of AGFA to object to such terms, provisions or conditions.

11.4 RIGHT TO AUDIT. AGFA shall have the right upon its expense to inspect compliance of You with this Agreement, upon a ten (10) working days prior written notice. Such audit shall not be more frequently than once per year, during normal business hours by an accounting firm designated by AGFA. In the event such audit should reveal a substantial non-compliance with this Agreement, You shall reimburse AGFA for the full out-of-pocket costs in respect of any professional charges incurred for such audit or inspection, in addition to any other right or remedy available to AGFA hereunder.

11.5 AMENDMENTS TO THIS AGREEMENT. This Agreement may not be amended, except by a writing signed by both parties.

11.6 HEADINGS: Headings to the sections of this Agreement are for convenience only and shall not affect the interpretation or construction of this Agreement. Use of the singular includes the plural and vice versa.

11.7 AGFA'S PRIOR CONSENT. Unless expressly provided otherwise in this Agreement, any prior consent of AGFA that is required before You may take an action may be granted or withheld in AGFA's sole and absolute discretion.

11.8 THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY. If and insofar parts of the Software are supplied and licensed to AGFA by Other Owners, such Other Owners are third party beneficiaries of this Agreement and are with respect to such parts of the Software entitled to enforce directly against You the terms and conditions of this License Agreement.

11.9 APPLICABLE LAW. This Agreement is made in Belgium and shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of Belgium, excluding its rules for choice of law.

11.10 PUBLIC ANNOUNCEMENTS. You acknowledge that AGFA may desire to use Your name in press releases, product brochures and financial reports indicating that You are a customer of AGFA, and You agree that AGFA may use Your name in such a manner.

11.11 ENTIRE AGREEMENT. This Agreement (including any addenda hereto signed by both parties) contains the entire agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter of this Agreement and supersedes all previous communications, representations, understandings and agreements, either oral or written, between the parties with respect to said subject matter.

Contents

About This Reference Guide

This Reference Guide offers you a complete description of the Asanti Client interface, and provides procedures and settings to help you work efficiently.

NOTE: Visit the *Tutorial* page on the *AsantiNetwork* for detailed procedures on working with Asanti.

Intended Audience

This document is designed for operators and administrators who will use one of the Asanti Client products to create tickets, manage jobs, and configure and monitor the Asanti System.

The Client software should already been installed, as described in the Asanti installation documentation.

Related Documentation

The following documents can be referred to for further information:

- Asanti Tutorial: On the Help menu, choose **Asanti Online > Asanti Tutorial** to open the *Tutorial* page on the *AsantiNetwork.* This page provides detailed procedures for working with Asanti.
- Asanti Quick Installation Guide: This document is provided with your installation and also available on the *Tutorial* page on the *AsantiNetwork*.
- Asanti Installation Guide: This document is provided with your installation.

AsantiNetwork

Please visit the *AsantiNetwork* website for additional information.

Starting and Navigating Help

The online Help is viewed in the standard browser set for your operating system and uses a responsive design to accommodate a wide range of screen sizes. This means that some navigation features may be displayed or hidden, depending on the size of the screen you are viewing this documentation on. For example, the table of contents may be hidden if you are viewing the documentation on a small screen. Use the buttons in the top navigation bar to browse through the documentation.

You can view topics in the online Help by expanding the sections in the **Contents** panel and clicking a heading. You can continue to read in sequence by pressing the **Next** button in the navigation tool bar.

As you progress, the hierarchy of each specific topic is indicated at the top of the topic pane in the breadcrumb trail. You can click any one of these levels to go back to a higher level in the hierarchy.

You can also jump to **Related Topics**, to additional information within the documentation set and to internet sites. All these links are highlighted in red. In these cases, you navigate back and forward by clicking the **Back** and **Forward** buttons on the browser tool bar.

▷ Starting the online Help

- In Asanti, press F1

  OR

  Choose **Help** > Asanti **Help**.

  The online Help opens on the first page.

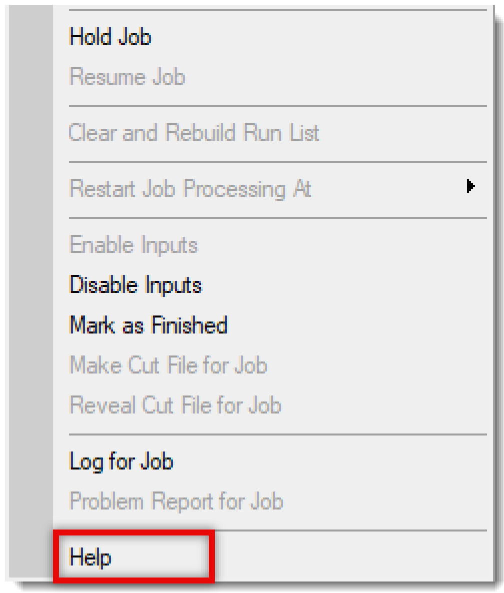
  OR

  Choose **Help** > **Icons, Keyboard Shortcuts** or **Variables** to jump directly to one of these sections in the Help.

▷ To open context-sensitive Help

Context-sensitive Help provides specific information about the window or panel you are working in.

- In Asanti, context-click in a window or a section of a window, or on an icon, and click Help at the bottom of the context menu.



OR

Choose **Help** > **What's This?** and click in the panel that you require help for.

The Help opens on the relevant page.

▷ To view and print the icon, shortcut and variable overviews

1. Choose **Help** > **Icons.**

   A new browser window opens, containing an overview of all icons.

2. Click the **Print** button in the top right corner.

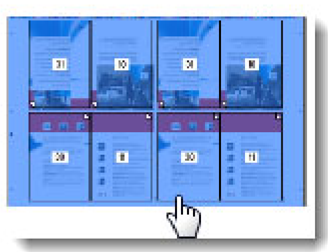
   You can use the printed version of the Icon Overview as a Quick Reference Card. It is recommended to print the overview on a color printer.

   You can use this same procedure to view and print the Keyboard Shortcuts and Variables overviews.

▷ Illustrations and Animations

Large images have been reduced in size to display properly in the Help topics.

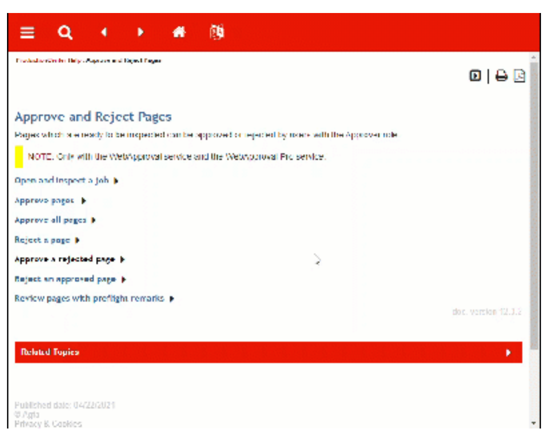
- Hover over an image and if the cursor changes to a *hand* you can click the image to view it full size. Click the **X** to close the image and return to the Help topic.



▷ Expanding topics

Headings with a triangle are collapsed to provide a better overview of the information.

- Click the heading or the triangle to expand the topic.



Search

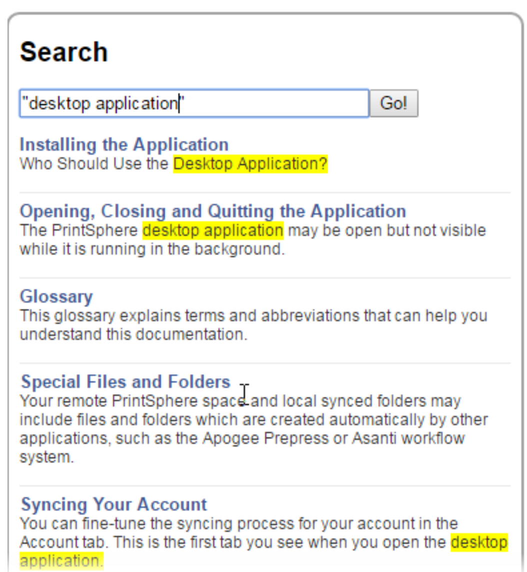
The Online Help has a search-as-you-type feature for finding information quickly in the Help topics. The following queries can be made:

- Simple search with a single word: Enter a single word for a list of all topics that contain that word.
- Advanced search for all words: For example, enter *disk space* for a list of all topics that contain *disk* AND *space* in the same topic. Try to avoid using common words such as “a”, “the”, etc. in your search query.
- Advanced search for an exact phrase: For example, enter “*disk space*” in quotes for a list of topics that only contain this exact phrase.

1 If the search box is not visible, for example if you are working on a small screen, click the **Search** button to go to the Search page.

2 Type a word or phrase in the Search box.

The search results appear as you type and the word or phrase are highlighted in yellow – also as you type.



3 Click a search result to jump to the topic.

You will see the search term or phrase highlighted in yellow in the topic. You may need to expand sections of the topic to see the word or phrase you queried.

Search limitations

- Do not ask questions in the search box, only enter your keywords. Enter "edit profile" and not "How can I edit my own profile".
- Search is case-insensitive.
- Search queries must be at least 3 characters. For example, searching for "QR" will not produce any results; you should search for "QR codes".

Printing Help

If you want to print information from the Online Help, two options are available:

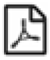
▷ Print individual topics

♦ Click the **Print** button in the navigation bar or choose **File > Print** from the browser menu bar.

▷ Print the whole document

All the information in the Online Help is also provided in a printer-friendly PDF document.

1 Click the **PDF** button in the navigation bar to open a PDF document.



2 Print the whole document or specific sections as required.

This feature is only available if your browser has the Adobe Acrobat plug-in.

NOTE: You may need to set up browser functionality in Adobe Acrobat.

Navigation Overview

Show/hide the table of contents

Switch on Google Translate (translations are generated on the fly but may not be reliable)

Show/hide the search panel

Previous topic

Next topic

Print a PDF of the whole document

Print the current topic

Display a section

Display collapsible (expandable) text or images

Go to the title topic of the online Help

Conventions

Images and Documents

Asanti can process documents as well as images. Where this documentation refers to *images*, this should be understood as meaning images or documents. See “File Types” on page 76 for more information.

Keyboard and Mouse

All key names are shown in capital letters. For example, the Control key is shown as CTRL.

Keys are frequently used in combinations or sequences as shortcut keys. For example, SHIFT+F3 means that you have to hold down the SHIFT key while pressing F3.

The following mouse conventions are used:

To...	Do this...
Click	Point to an item, and then quickly press and release the mouse button without moving the mouse.
Double-click	Point to an item, and then quickly press and release the mouse button twice.
Context-click on Windows	Click the right mouse button.
Drag	Point to an item. Press and hold down the mouse button as you move the mouse to a new location, then release the mouse button.

Choosing Commands

Many of the Asanti Client commands can be selected in several different ways, as described below. You should choose the method(s) which best suit your way of working. Throughout this Reference Guide, wherever possible we simply indicate which Menu item and/or Tool bar button you require.

- Selecting a Menu item using the mouse

  The Asanti Menubar is available in each of the Client windows, and is organized according to the commands you will need. In Windows, the menus or sub-menus change in accordance with the currently selected Asanti window. Menu items are disabled when they are not applicable, and the menu item texts reflect the currently selected item.

- Context-clicking an item

  A context menu is often a subset of the global Asanti menu items. It contains only those items that are applicable to the selection. The way you activate a context menu varies according to the platform you are working on (see “Conventions” on page 24). For a complete summary of all available context menus, refer to “Context Menu Commands” on page 551.

- Clicking a Tool bar button

  The Asanti Tool bar also offers a subset of the Menu bar commands. The Tool bar is defined per window to offer the most frequently used commands. It may also include disabled tools.

- Entering a Shortcut key combination

  Some commands can be selected by entering only a shortcut key combination. Where available, these items are displayed next to the commands in the menus.

CHAPTER 1

Getting Started

This section guides you through the main work areas of Asanti. It provides general information on the user interface and main windows.

Starting the Client

To start the Client, you need to open a session with the Asanti System. A session is a continuous series of user interactions between the Client application and the Asanti System. You need to log in to a secured session before running certain portions of the application. Each successive interaction in the session is tracked and recorded by Asanti.

▷ To open a new Asanti session

1 Do one of the following:

- PC users: Choose Start > Programs > Asanti > Asanti Client.
- Double-click the Asanti Client icon on your desktop.

The Asanti Logon dialog box appears.

TIP: PC users can add the Client icon to the Windows taskbar to start the Asanti Client even quicker.

2 Type your user name/password in the appropriate text boxes.

The user name must be a valid Windows account on the Asanti server on your network. Add a domain prefix (e.g. domain\username) if the server name is different. User names cannot be configured in the Asanti Client.

3 Select your Asanti System from the list.

If you do not know to which system you should connect, ask your Asanti administrator.

4 Select the 'Connect to selected system at startup' check box.

The next time you start the Asanti Client, the Logon dialog box will be bypassed. You can reset this option in your Preferences. For more information, see "Logging On" on page 52.

NOTE: If you have a DNS server, you can connect using the server host name. This is recommended for complex networks such as multiple networks, VPN, etc. Click the cogwheel and select the option.

5 Click Log On.

The Asanti Client is started, and a connection is made to the selected Asanti System. The Jobs Window is then displayed.

▷ To view network information

You can view network information to troubleshoot network issues when logging on.

1. Start the client and click the cogwheel in the Logon dialog.
2. Choose View Network Information.

   The Network Information dialog is displayed.
3. Enter the server credentials and a client-server connection test is performed.

   The information for the selected Asanti System is displayed with warnings and errors if the connection fails.
4. Click OK to close the Network Information dialog.

Adding/Removing Asanti Systems

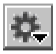
Additional Asanti Systems may be available on your network but may not be visible. This happens when the Asanti Client and Server applications are not installed on the same network segment, but are connected via a router. In order to access these Asanti Systems, you first need to manually add them to the list of systems displayed in the Logon dialog box. To do this, you must know the IP address of the Asanti System you want to add.

▷ To manually add an Asanti System

1. Start the Client.

   NOTE: If the Client is already open, choose File > Log Off to access the Logon dialog box. You will have to close your current System connection.

   ---
2. From the Asanti Logon dialog box, click the cogwheel button and choose Add System.

   The Add System dialog box is displayed.
3. Enter the Asanti System IP address or host name, and click Find.

   The Client starts to search for the specified system on your network. When it is found, the system name is displayed in the dialog box.
4. Click Add to add this system to the list,

▷ To remove an Asanti System

1 Start the Asanti Client.

NOTE: If the Client is already open, choose File > Log Off... to access the Log on dialog box. You will have to close your current System connection.

---

2 Select the Asanti System you want to delete from the list, click the cogwheel button and choose Delete System.

NOTE: You can only remove Systems that were added manually, as described above.

---

3 Click OK to confirm this operation.

The selected system is removed from the list.

The Management Windows

The Asanti Client includes three management windows:

- The Jobs Window, for viewing and managing jobs.
- The Hot Tickets Window, for viewing and managing Hot Tickets.
- The System Overview Window, for viewing and configuring the system components (Task Processors and Resources), managing the Asanti System, and managing individual Task Processor activities.

You can switch between these three windows using the Navigation Bar, which is located at the bottom of each window.

The Jobs Window

The Jobs Window gives you a complete high-level overview of your workflow. In a single window, you can see the complete list and status of jobs in the system and the output devices that are available.

You can track the progress and activity of jobs, and view information about specific processing parameters. Powerful viewing features let you preview rasterized jobs. This allows you to check trapped, imposed, and screened bitmaps before imaging a proof, film, or plate. A Message Board keeps all users up to date about jobs that require attention.

You can also interact with the displayed information. By context-clicking jobs you can set priority handling for rush jobs, hold and resume jobs, approve or reject jobs, resubmit jobs, process quick remakes, or open the Ticket Editor.

The Hot Tickets Window

This is where you monitor, view, and manage the Hot Tickets that are created by the Asanti System. Unlike Job Tickets, which appear in the Jobs Window together with the jobs they are used to create, Hot Tickets appear only in the Hot Tickets window.

Hot Tickets comprise only 3 tabs: Administration, Options, and Plan. There are no Pages or Results tabs.

- There is no Pages tab because Hot Tickets do not require Run Lists to specify which pages make up the job: The Run List is generated automatically, based on the number of pages in the input document.

- There is no Results tab because Hot Tickets are never associated with the results of a single job: Hot Tickets are used to generate multiple jobs.

Jobs created by Hot Tickets appear in the Jobs List, together with the jobs created by Job Tickets.

The System Overview Window

The System Overview provides centralized system management, allowing you to monitor key components and tasks.

Exactly what you will see in the System Overview window depends on your Access Level, as specified in your Preferences. However, all users can view and configure workflow and process settings, including input channels, normalizing, preflighting, screening, trapping, rendering, and output options.

If you have the necessary Access Level, you can also view and configure the following system elements for optimal performance:

- Global system settings, such as archiving, logging and administration.
- Any available processing resources, including fonts, screens, calibration curves, imposition profiles, ICC profiles, and more.

Work Area Commands and Indicators

The Client contains a number of global tools and indicators that are accessible in some or all of the main and editing windows.

- Menus
- Toolbar
- Navigation Bar
- Message Indicator
- Tab Area
- Preferences

Menus

The Asanti Menubar is available in each of the main Client windows. It includes the following menus:

- File Menu
- Edit Menu
- Control Menu (Not available in System Overview)
- Processor Menu (Available in System Overview only)
- View Menu (Not available in System Overview)
- View Menu for Raster Preview
- Window Menu
- Help Menu

NOTE: See “Layout Editor Menus” on page 172 for information on the Layout Editor menus.

Not all items included in these menus are available in every window. The active menu or sub-menu items vary according to the window you are working in.

TIP: Some of the menu options can be accessed more quickly by context-clicking on jobs in the Job List, and selecting an item from the context menu.

File Menu

This menu provides commands that apply to sessions (logging in and out), and documents (job tickets and archives).

File Menu Item	Description
New from Templates	Opens the Ticket Template dialog box. When used from the Hot Tickets window, the Tickets tab is shown and the default Hot Ticket template is selected. Otherwise, the Jobs tab is shown and the default Job Ticket Template is selected.
New From Selected	Opens the Job Ticket Editor with an empty Administration tab but with the same plan, imposition, etc.
New Wide Format Job/ Hot Ticket	Opens the Layout Editor.
Create StoreFront Hot Ticket	To create a hot ticket for integration with the web-to-print application.
Save As Template	Allows you to save the ticket as a Ticket Template.
Close	Closes the current window.
Upload Document	Allows you to add a file or a folder containing files to a job, Hot Ticket or Public Page Store. When you upload a folder, Asanti uploads all files and folders in that folder recursively. The uploaded folder appears as a subfolder in the Page Store.
Invite PrintSphere Uploader	Shows the dialog box where you can invite someone to upload documents via PrintSphere.
Put Job(s) Offline	Puts the selected job(s) offline.
Offline Jobs	Opens the Offline Jobs dialog.
Archive Job	Allows you to choose a location and file name in order to archive the selected job.
Import Job Archive	Allows you to select and restore a previously saved job archive (*.arch) or create a new job from a selected archive.
Stop Archiving/ Importing	Stops archiving or importing the selected job.

File Menu Item	Description
Export	• <selected item> From - Exports the item from a selected point in the flow (Latest, Run List, Normalize, etc.). Document - Saves a PDF document outside Asanti, where the document can be edited, and then dragged back into Asanti (Page Store PDF files only). • Job Dump - Similar to Archive Job, but only accessible by administrators for troubleshooting purposes (only for jobs, not for Hot Tickets). • Export Job Log - Exports the log file for the selected job. • Export CAD Files: Exports the current original CAD file without any changes you may have made.
Open in Production Dashboard	Opens the selected job in the Production Dashboard web application.
Reveal Supplementary Files	Opens the Supplementary Files folder of the job in the system's File Browser.
Log on / Log off	Allows you to log on to an Asanti System, or to log off from one. When logging on, the Connect to System dialog box is displayed. If you are already logged on to an Asanti System, you are asked to confirm before proceeding. Note that Log on always ignores your "automatically log on" preference.
Quit / Exit	Closes the Asanti Client .

Edit Menu

This menu allows you to find, select, and edit job items. In Windows, you can also access the Preferences from here.

Edit Menu Item	Description
Undo / Can't Undo	Undoes the last Cut, Copy, or Paste operation (only enabled when editing).
Cut	Deletes the selected text, and copies it onto the clipboard.
Copy	Copies the selected text onto the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the contents of the clipboard at the selected location.
Delete <selected item>	Deletes the current selection.
View Item From	Displays the selected item using the default viewer. You cannot edit the item.
Edit <selected item>	Displays the selected item using the default editor, where you can modify the item.
Duplicate Job	Duplicates the selected job.
Merge Jobs	Merges the selected jobs.

Edit Menu Item	Description
Rename	Renames the selected item.
Select	• All - Selects all items in the current view. • Even Positions - Selects all even placeholders/pages (Page Store Only). • Odd Positions - Selects all odd placeholders/pages (Page Store Only). • Empty Positions - Selects all empty placeholders (Page Store Only). • Different from Expected - Selects all pages in the Run list which have a different size from the expected page size specified in the job. • Fronts - Selects all front sides when the view is set to “Fronts and Backs” (Results tab only). • Backs - Selects all back sides when the view is set to “Fronts and Backs” (Results tab only). • Flat - Selects flat (both front and back sides). • Signature - Selects all sides in the signature when the view is set to “Fronts and Backs” (Results tab only).
Preferences	Opens the Preferences .

Control Menu

This menu allows you to control the processing of jobs, results and Task Processors. These items are active only after you have selected a job in the Job List. This menu is not available for the System Overview.

Control Menu Item	Description
Rush Job	Upgrades the selected job to a Rush job.
Hold <selected item>	Suspends all processing of the selected job(s), result(s) or Task Processor(s) after the current activity for the items has been allowed to finish. This option is disabled if all items are already on hold.
Resume <selected item>	Resumes processing of the selected job(s), result(s) or Task Processor(s) This option is disabled if all items are already running.
Continue <selected item>	Continues all or part of a job that has stopped. The job may have stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error.
Discard	Prevents specific pages, flats or separations from being printed, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. Available only when the items are waiting on a Hold action or when finished.
Include	Includes discarded items.

Control Menu Item	Description
Re-render <selected item>	Remakes all the existing job results which follow the selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to re-render a job if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.) or if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when no raster data is available.
Re-image <selected item>	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on your output devices. This feature is available only for flows that have an imaging output device and finished raster data.
Re-export <selected item>	Re-exports previously exported results (when resources have changed or exported files have to be recreated).
Re-print <selected item>	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on a digital press. This feature is available only for flows that have a digital press and finished raster data.
Restart Job Processing At	Restarts processing the selected items from a point in the flow. Jobs offer the full list of Task Processors from the main flow: Documents only offer the Task Processors up to and including the Run List.
Remake InkDrive	Remakes InkDrive files for the selected items.
Enable Inputs	Re-activates all input channels for the selected job(s) or Hot Ticket(s). By default, input channels are enabled. This option is disabled if all job(s) or Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs enabled.
Disable Inputs	De-activates all input channels for the selected job(s) or Hot Ticket(s). This option is disabled if all job(s) or Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs disabled. A Ticket cannot produce any jobs while disabled.
Mark as Finished	Marks the selected job as finished, aborting all current processing and removing all outstanding tasks.
Make Cut File for Job	Makes the Cut file(s) for the selected item(s). Job must use cutter that expects cut files.
Reveal Cut File for Job	Open the directory containing the cut file and select the cut file(s) for the selected item (Disabled if there is no cut file for the selected item).

Processor Menu

This menu allows you to control the operation of Task Processors (System Overview only).

Processor Menu Item	Description
Start	Starts the selected Task Processor(s). This option is disabled if all Task Processor(s) are active.
Stop	Stops the selected Task Processor(s). This option is disabled if all Task Processor(s) are stopped.
Restart	Restarts the selected Task Processor(s).

Processor Menu Item	Description
Put Offline	Disables the scheduling of tasks for the selected Output Task Processor. This option is disabled if all Output Task Processors are offline.
Put Online	Enables the scheduling of tasks for the selected Output Task Processor. This option is disabled if all Output Task Processors are online.
Configure	Allows you to access the Configuration settings of the selected output device. Administrator access level required,
Resources	Allows you to quickly access the resources of the selected Task Processor.
New Group	Creates a Task Processor group for the selected Task Processor.
Edit Group	Edits the selected Task Processor group.
Delete Group	Deletes the selected Task Processor group.

View Menu

This menu allows you to control what information is displayed and how it is displayed. This affects the look of the current window, but does not open or close windows. View Menu items are only active after you have selected the Results tab in the Jobs Window, or in the Ticket Editor.

View Menu Item	Description
Flats Only	Displays only the flat outlines in the Job Layout Pane. In this mode, you cannot select individual pages.
Thumbnails	Displays thumbnail images of all pages in the Job Layout pane.
Page Labels	Displays/Hides the Page Label column in the Run List.
Run List Indexes	Displays/Hides the Run List indexes in the Run List.
Extended Page Adjustments	Extends the Adj column in the Run List to display extra icons (up to 4 icons) which indicate specific page adjustments in the job.
Highlight Unplaced Pages	Highlights against a green background the pages in the Page Store that have not been placed in the Run List.
Extras	Displays checked items from the Show menu.
Show	• Page number - Shows the position of the page in the Run List (Results tab only). • Hold States - Shows pages and flats in blue when on hold (Results tab only).

View Menu Item	Description
Scale	• Small - Displays small thumbnails (Results tab only). • Normal - Displays normal thumbnails (Results tab only). • Large - Displays large thumbnails (Results tab only). • Fit to Window - Scales the results in the Job Layout pane so that they fit horizontally within the width of the pane - otherwise a fixed scaling is used (Results tab only). In the Run List on the Pages tab, these commands scale the page labels for versioning jobs.
Columns	• Front and Back - Displays two columns of pages/flats, and “front”, “back” and “signature” labels in the Job Layout pane. • Fill Width - Displays as many columns of pages/flats as will fit in the width of the Job Layout pane. • 1-10 - Displays the pages/flats over the specified number of columns in the Job Layout pane.
Flow	• Results tab only. Selects the results from the selected flow for viewing.
Panes	• Devices: Opens or closes the Device pane (Hot Ticket and Job Lists only). • Job List: Opens or closes the Job List. • Flow Activity: Opens or closes the Activity pane (Job list/ Results tab only). • Systems: Shows/hides the Hardware pane (System Overview only). • Production Sets • Separations • Resources: Shows/hides the Resources pane (System Overview only).

View Menu for Raster Preview

The Raster Preview View menu groups all commands that relate to the Preview window. Most of these commands are also available as tools and/or keyboard shortcuts.

Preview Menu Item	Description
Zoom In	Zooms in on the image in the Preview window. Each time you click the Zoom In tool, the zoom factor is doubled, until you reach the maximum zoom-in level (32:1).
Zoom Out	Zooms out on the image in the Preview window. Each time you click the Zoom Out tool, the zoom factor is halved, until you reach the maximum zoom-out level (1:128).
Size To Fit	Selects a zoom level that fits the entire image in the Preview window.

Preview Menu Item	Description
Actual Pixels	Sets the zoom level to 1(each raster pixel is represented by a single display pixel).
Full Screen	Toggles full screen mode.
Next Sheet	Displays the next sheet in the job.
Previous Sheet	Displays the previous sheet in the job.
First Side	Displays the first side in the job.
Last Side	Displays the last side in the job.
Turn Sheet	Raster Preview always groups results which have 2 sides (front and back). When viewing results, use this option to toggle the view (front or back).
Color Managed	Displays the raster data using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space, based on ICC profiles.
Light Table	Displays blended front/back viewing, allowing you to check the registration of the front and backs, or view whether you have problematic ink coverage.
Annotations	Displays annotations.
Rule-Ups	Displays the rule-ups you specified in the Rule-Ups floating palette. This allows you to display additional layers of information on top of the Raster Preview image. These include: Art Box, Trim Box, Crop Box, Bleed Box, Media Box.
Boxes	Allows you to directly toggle on or off any of the following indicators which may be displayed over the raster data: • Art Box • Trim Box • Crop Box • Bleed Box • Media Box • Expected Page Size • Press Sheet Size
Press Sheet	Displays raster data as if it were a press sheet.
Device Output	Displays raster data as it would appear output from an imaging device.
Transform	• Rotate 90 CW: Rotates the current view 90 degrees clockwise. • Rotate 90 CCW: Rotates the current view 90 degrees counterclockwise. • Flip Horizontal: Flips the current view horizontally. • Flip Vertical: Flips the current view vertically. • Invert: Inverts the current view (negative).
Rulers	Toggles on or off the Ruler in the Preview window.
Grid	Toggles on or off the Grid in the Preview window.

Control Menu for Raster Preview

Preview Menu Item	Description
QuickProof	Opens the QuickProof dialog box.

Window Menu

This menu allows you to open, rearrange, and switch between the Asanti windows. You can also hide or show any subsidiary windows, and bring any currently displayed window to the front. This menu also lists the titles of all open windows (in order of creation). The currently active window title has a checkmark.

Window Menu Item	Description
New Window	Opens a new Jobs or Raster Preview window.
System Overview	Opens or switches to the System Overview window.
Jobs	Opens or switches to the last Jobs window.
Message Board	Opens or switches to the Message Board.
Go to ProductionCenter	Opens the ProductionCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to manage WebApproval and PrintSphere users.
Go to PrintSphere	Opens the PrintSphere file-sharing application in your default internet browser, for example, to manage PrintSphere users.
Go to SphereCenter	Opens the SphereCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to set up a PrintSphere subscription.
Go to StoreFront	Opens the StoreCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to create StoreFront online web stores.
Activity for Task Processor	Opens an Activity window for the selected Task Processor(s). You can open multiple Activity windows.
Log for <selected item>	Opens a Log window for the selected item(s). You can open multiple Log windows.
Problem Report for <selected item>	Opens a Problem Report window for the selected item(s). You can open multiple Problem Report windows (PDF documents only).

Help Menu

This menu allows you to access the Help system. In Windows, it also includes additional application-specific commands.

Help Menu Item	Description
About Asanti	Displays the splash screen and software version number. Click anywhere in the About box to dismiss it.
Check for Client Updates	Checks whether you have the latest version of the Asanti client. See the Installation Guide for more information on Client Updates.
Asanti Help	Opens the first page of the Asanti Reference Guide.
What’s This?	Allows you to access context-sensitive help on the selected item.
Icons	Displays help information on the Asanti icons.
Keyboard Shortcuts	Lists the Asanti keyboard shortcuts.
Variables	Lists the Asanti variables.
Asanti Online	Launches your web browser to view: • Asanti Network: the Asanti Network home page • Asanti Tutorials: practical lessons to help you work with Asanti • Download: links to download various files to help you work with Asanti.
Asanti Report	• Basic - Uses your browser to display a summarized overview of the Asanti System. • Extended - Uses your browser to display a detailed report of the Asanti System.
Licenses	• Load License File... - Allows you to select and open an Asanti license file. The license file is then sent to the system for evaluation. • Save Fingerprint File... - Allows you to save an Asanti license file in a specific location.
Configuration Wizard	Launches the configuration wizard.

Toolbar

The Toolbar allows you to quickly apply common commands. The buttons displayed vary from window to window, and are available only after you have selected a job in the Job List or job results in the Results tab.

Most of these commands can also be accessed from the Control and Edit menus.

 Submit job or submit changes to a job.

 Delete the selected item.

 Edit Ticket.

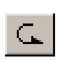
 View <selected item> (Job Ticket Editor only).

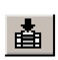
 Make Blank (page in Run List - Job Ticket Editor only).

 Hold job, or put device offline (System Overview).

 Resume a job on hold, or put device online (System Overview).

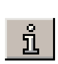
 Continue processing <selected item>.

 Reprocess job from first.

 Re-image <selected item>.

 Enables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).

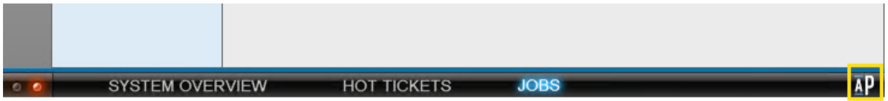
 Disables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).

 Display information about <selected item>.

Navigation Bar

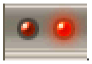
You can switch between the three management windows by clicking in the Navigation bar, which is located at the bottom of each window.

At the bottom right-hand side of the Navigation bar, you will see the Activity Indicator. This indicator is visually active whenever the Client is busy retrieving data from the Server.



Message Indicator

The Message Indicator flashes when one or more of the jobs or devices needs attention. You can click the Message Indicator to open the Message Board and find out what has caused the alarm. The Message Indicator will continue to flash until you acknowledge the event that caused the alarm.



If all the messages in the Message Board have been acknowledged, the Message Indicator stops flashing, but maintains a steady red glow. This is turned off when there are no messages to report.

Even when the Message Indicator is not flashing, you can click it to quickly access the Message Board.

If the Asanti Client is minimized or hidden, your Operating System's alert mechanism will notify you of any messages with a flashing button in the Taskbar.

Tab Area

The Tab Area appears in the Jobs window, and in the Ticket Editor. In the right of the Tab Area are the tabs you can select to view or edit the selected job (Administration, Options, Plan, Pages, Results.). These tabs are active only after you have selected a job in the Job List.

In the left of the Tab Area you will see the name of the selected job.

Viewing Messages

The Message Board is your troubleshooting tool within Asanti. It provides information on jobs, devices, or systems which need attention, and gives you a number of correction options. You can access the Message Board from anywhere in the Asanti Client. You can also filter it based on a number of different criteria, and on combinations of criteria.

▷ **To open the Message Board**

- Do one of the following:
  - Click the Message Indicator in any of the management windows.
  - Choose Window > Message Board.

Message Board

The Message Board consists of a Filter pane, Message List, Acknowledge Pane, and Interaction pane.

- The Filter and Message List work together: The messages displayed are determined by the filter (if any) you apply.
- The Acknowledge and Interaction panes work together: They display detailed information on the selected message, and let you decide how the alert should be handled.

Filter pane

The Filter pane allows you to specify which types of messages are displayed in the Message Board. For example, you may only want to see critical warnings, or be notified when user intervention is required. You apply a filter by clicking the Filter icon, and specifying your filter options.

The Filter pane also indicates how many messages have been generated, and how many of these messages have been selected, read, and acknowledged.

When a filter has been used, you will see the text:

Notice that the Filter icon is colored green when the filter has been applied.

By default, all messages are displayed (i.e. no filter is applied).

For example, if you see the text:

```
18 new messages, 21 messages displayed
```

This means there are 21 messages in total, of which 3 have been read and acknowledged. In this case, no filter is applied.

Message List

The Message List displays the status, date, location, and description of each message.

Message status One of the following status symbols is displayed:

 The Asanti system issued a critical message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

 The job has generated an information message.

NOTE: These status symbols also appear in the Job List.

Date occurred Displays the time and date at which the message was generated. You can sort the messages according to date by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled between ascending and descending order.

Location Displays the name of the job, device, or system which generated the message. If this is a job, then the job order number is also displayed in parentheses. You can sort the messages according to location by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the message. You can view the full message by selecting it. You can sort the messages according to description by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Message background color Each message row has a colored background:

Pink: The message has not yet been Acknowledged.

Yellow: This is the currently selected message.

Gray: The message has been Acknowledged.

Acknowledge pane

The Acknowledge pane displays information and the acknowledgement status of the currently selected message in the Message List.

Message summary Displays the summarized message text from the Message List Description column.

Reported by Indicates which Task Processor generated the message, and when, in the format "Reported by <Task Processor> at <time and date>".

Acknowledgement status Indicates who (if anybody) first acknowledged the message, and when, in the format "acknowledged by <user> at <time and date>".

Acknowledgement button Click this button once you have read the message. Any Errors or Warnings that you acknowledge are removed from the Message List. User Interaction messages remain in the list until the required action has been taken.

Notification/Interaction pane

Notification message Displays a more detailed version of the message. Some messages are followed by a suggested course of action, such as:

```
"There is no location for exporting the system log. The default
       C:\Apogee Prepress\SysLog\$DATE.log will be used"
```

Interactive dialog buttons. Some messages include interactive dialog buttons which allow you to correct the cause of the error or warning. For example, Retry, Abort Task, Update, Don't Update, or Yes/No buttons.

The Edit Job button always appears for job notification messages. You can click this button to edit the job directly, and correct the problem. The Edit Job button is not available for System messages.

NOTE: If you select more than one message, you will see no specific message information, only “x messages selected”.

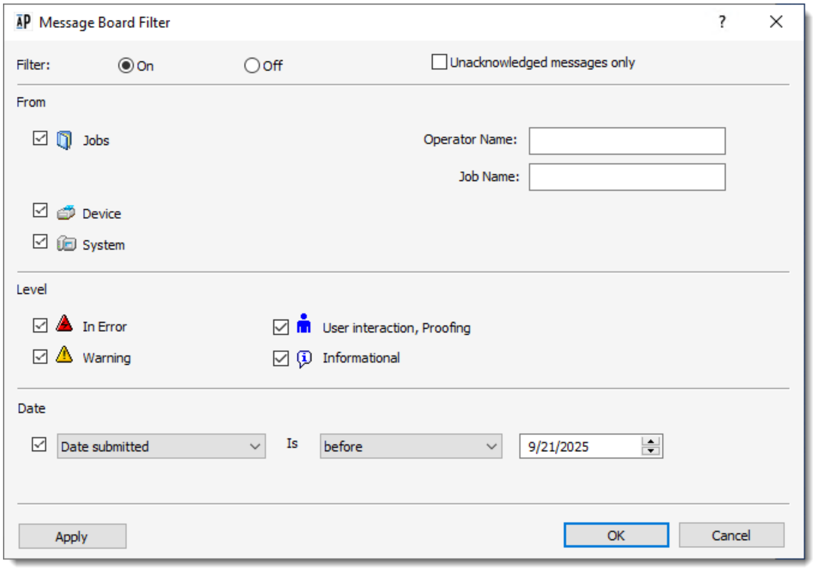
Filtering Messages

You can filter the Message Board based on a number of different criteria, and on combinations of criteria.

▷ To filter messages in the Message Board

- Click the Filter icon.

The Message Board Filter dialog box is displayed.



Any filters you specify are cumulative. Only the messages which match all the specified criteria are displayed.

Message Board Filter

You can apply three types of filters. The options you select in each type are combined to produce a highly customizable filtering mechanism:

- From: Shows only messages generated by the selected module(s).
- Level: Shows only messages of a specific level(s) of importance or urgency.
- Date: Shows only messages from a specific time frame.

Filter

On/Off Activate or deactivate the filter by clicking the Filter On or Off radio button.

Unacknowledged messages only Select this check box to display only the messages which have not yet been acknowledged.

From

Jobs To filter messages based on a particular operator or job name, select the Jobs check box, click the associated list box, and choose one of the following:

- Operator Name contains: This is the name of an operator as specified in the Administration tab of one or more tickets. Enter the operator's name here. When you apply the filter, all messages which relate to jobs belonging to this operator will be displayed.
- Job Name contains: This is the name of a job as specified in the Administration tab of a ticket. Enter the job name here. When you apply the filter, all messages relating to this job will be displayed.

Device **Administrator access level only!**

To filter messages based on a particular output device, select the Devices check box, click the associated list box, and choose one of the available output devices (such as printers, imagesetters, proofers, etc.).

When you apply the filter, all messages which relate to the selected device will be displayed.

System **Administrator access level only!**

To filter messages based on those generated by the Asanti System (such as Task Processors, Asanti Client, etc.), select the System check box.

Level

To filter messages by type, select one or more of the Level filtering check boxes.

In Error Filter on jobs which have generated an error.

Warning Filter on jobs which have generated a warning.

User interaction, proofing Filter on jobs which require user intervention or proofing.

Informational Filter on jobs which have generated a message (information only).

Date

To filter messages by date, select the Date filtering check box, and use the three associated list boxes to choose a specific date or time window.

Apply and OK

Click Apply to save your settings. Click OK to close the Message Board Filter.

TIP: Simply clicking OK will both apply your changes and close the Message Board Filter.

The filter is applied immediately. This is confirmed by the message "(Filter Applied)" in the Filter pane.

Critical Messages

If the Asanti system detects a situation that jeopardizes the proper functioning of the system (for example, low disk space), it issues a critical message.

A critical message is a high-priority message that cannot be filtered or acknowledged. Because these messages require immediate action, the client intercepts them and displays a special alert window. The client also checks the presence of critical messages at startup.

The Critical System Alert window is a floating window that can be moved but cannot be closed until the particular problem is resolved. This window does not prevent interaction with the client, but normal operation may be affected because of the critical condition of the server (slow response, processing on hold, etc.). The window lists the critical messages and corresponding timestamps. It also includes a 'Review' button which you can use to open the Message Board to view only the critical messages.

Preferences

Your Preferences are divided into the following categories:

- General
- Logging On
- Viewers
- Imposition Editor
- Validation
- Layout Editor

General

Display units

Select the unit of measurement that you want Asanti to display and the Precision of the measurements.

- millimeters
- inches

Notifications

Select the check box to hear a sound when critical system messages are generated.

User Interaction

- Enable double-clicking a job to Edit: Select the check box if you want to open a job in the Job List by double-clicking it. The job will open in the Job Ticket Editor or the Layout Editor, depending on the type of job.
- Open Layout Editor when imposition is Layout: Select if you always want to open packaging jobs in the Layout Editor.
- Open Product Editor when double-clicking a product (in stead of Preview): Select the check box to open the Product Editor when you double-click a product in the Product panel of the Layout Editor (default). Clear the check box if you want the product to open in the Raster Preview module and automatically create a preview.
- Prompt for details when adding artwork files: Select this option if you want to control how products are named when you select artwork to add products in the Layout Editor. See “Adding Products from Artwork” on page 66.

Language

Lists all the languages in which the user interface is available. The available languages were selected when the Asanti System was installed.

JDF Sheet Names

Show MIS press sheet names when present: Select this option to display JDF sheet names instead of Asanti names, in the Results tab and main Apogee Impose windows.

Job Operator

The job operator receives notifications that pertain to his/her jobs. This option determines whether the operator field in a job can be edited at anytime, or whether it is locked after a job has been submitted.

Lock operator name after submitting the job: The Operator field is locked and cannot be edited after the job has been submitted. This is the default setting.

Always allow changing the operator name: The Operator field remains editable at all times. Note that the operator field is always editable if it is empty or when it contains a 'JDF' string, regardless of the preference.

Create color-managed Previews

Select the check box to automatically create color-managed previews and calculate final output CMYK values when you add new images to a layout job, in the Layout Editor. It is recommended to leave this option off unless you always need color-managed previews in the Layout Editor.

Logging On

The Logging On tab defines your access rights, and allows you to specify how the Client selects and logs on to an Asanti System.

User name

Enter the name supplied to you by your Asanti administrator.

Preferred system

Enter the name of the system you want to connect to at startup. You can also click the Browse button and select a system from the displayed list.

Password

Enter the password supplied to you by your Asanti administrator.

Automatically log on at startup

Select this check box if you want to automatically log on to your preferred Asanti System each time the Client is started.

Viewers

There are two viewers: PDF Viewer, for checking PDF job results and Raster Preview, for checking raster job results.

PDF Viewer/Editor

If you want to be able preview PDF job results in the Pages or Results tabs of the Jobs window, you must specify where your viewing application is located. This tab defines the applications that can be used for viewing and/or editing PDF files.

You can add applications using **Add** button (+). This opens a standard File Open dialog where you can select an executable file. To remove an application, select the application, and click the **Delete** button (x).

Use as Default Viewer: Select that option, if you want to use an application as the Default Viewer. Default Viewer Application is shown in bold text.

NOTE: Acrobat Reader will always display the first page of the job. To directly view a specific page within the job, you need to use Acrobat Professional.

Raster Preview

These fields allow you to specify the settings that will be used by Raster Preview. You can temporarily override any of these settings while you are previewing pages. However, this does not change the default settings.

Gridline every: Sets the default units of measurement of the grid (cms, inches, mms, picas, pixels, or points), and the distance between the major gridline divisions.

Subdivisions: The grid displays gridlines for every major and minor division of the ruler. Major divisions are drawn in solid blue, subdivisions in light blue. This parameter sets the distance between the gridline subdivisions.

Auto-switch zoom factor: Select the switchover point from low resolution (contone) viewing to high resolution viewing when previewing a job (4x, 2x, 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8).

Display single separation in color: When you view a single separation (a single separation selected in the Raster preview Inks palette), it is by default displayed in grayscale. If you select this check box, it is displayed in color. If more than 1 separation is selected in the Raster Preview, these separations are always displayed in color.

When preview is color managed

You can choose from the following for color-managed previewed results:

Rendering Intent: The following Rendering Intents available, although not all profiles contain Look Up tables (LUTs) for each of them. In this case often a duplicate of one Look Up table is used for missing Render Intent LUT. The Rendering Intent defines the way the source colors are mapped to the destination space.

- Relative Colorimetric: A colorimetric conversion, tries to maintain the exact relationship (Smallest Delta E), between in-gamut colors, while out of gamut colors will be clipped. With Relative Colorimetric RI the white point from source color space is mapped to the white point of destination, this means that white stays white. No ink will be placed in white areas.

- Absolute Colorimetric: Absolute Colorimetric rendering intent is similar to Relative except that here the white point of the two profiles is preserved. White of source color space is simulated with CMYK values from the destination color space. The consequence is that every white object/area is covered with certain ink amounts.

Accurate Spot Color Mixing: In this enhanced mode, spot color visualization is superior to the standard color-managed mode. You can choose from the following:

- Off
- Max. 2 colors
- Max. 3 colors

Use Press Paper White: Pantone\spot color inks are transparent and appear differently when printed on different substrates. Normally, you should select this option when creating a proof which will be used by the printer to print a spot color on the Press (when the simulated spot color on proof needs to resemble the final printed result). In this case, the paper white from the press profile is used in the color calculation.

If this option is not selected, the measured paper white of the color book is used in the calculation of the spot colors. The option should therefore be deselected when the simulated spot colors on the proof are compared to the color book reference prints (with a measurement device, for example).

NOTE: A spectral press profile is required for this option.

Line Appearance

Display design lines using: Selects the Line Appearance Set used by the Layout Editor and Product Editor to draw the Operations. The following options are available from the drop-down list:

- Fixed: Draw the Operations using the fixed colors (default option).
- <list-of-line-appearance-sets>: The list of all available Line Appearance set resources, sorted alphabetically in ascending order.
- Manage Line Appearance Sets: Opens the Line Appearance Set resource editor.

Imposition Editor

This tab is used to set your preferences for Apogee Impose.

When closing the Imposition Editor Choose your preferred behavior for when you close the main Apogee Impose windows.

Assembly View Choose how you want the Product assembly to be viewed in the Assembly pane.

Apogee Impose Client License Select 'Make this an Apogee Impose editing station' if you want an Apogee Impose license to be assigned to this particular user.

Auto Fit Enter the time in seconds to allow Apogee Impose to search for an Auto Fit rule in automatic imposition mode.

Validation

These validation checks only performed for Apogee Impose jobs.

Product Intent Select the **Warn when amount of Kept spot colors doesn't match the Part's spot colors** check box to generate warnings when the number of spot colors in the parts is not equal to the kept spot colors in the Separation operation.

Apogee Imposition Select the option to allow the job to be submitted with imposition errors. This means that the press sheets must be inspected before further processing.

Layout Editor

These preferences are used by the Layout Editor.

Fitting Options This field allows you to control Fitting Options for any frame that is created in the Layout Editor.

Auto-fit: Select the **Enable Auto-fit for new frames** check box to enable Auto-fit option when a new frame is created. This check box is selected by default.

NOTE: This option is only applicable when you create a new frame in the Layout Editor. Frames which are present in the existing Jobs, Ticket Templates and Sheet Layout are not affected.

You can select the **Show Auto-fit option in Position bar** check box when you want to show the Auto-fit option in the Position bar. You can use that option to prevent the change of the Auto-fit option accidentally.

Snapping and Guides This field groups the preferences for snapping and the guides in the Layout Editor.

Snap distance: The threshold distance (in pixels) at which the items will be snapped to the nearest item. The default value is 10 pixels.

Check alignment distance: The threshold distance on a sheet at which the frames will be checked for alignment to the guide(s). The default value is 3 mm.

▷ To open your Preferences

- Choose Edit > Preferences.

Customizing Your Work Area

When you start the Asanti Client, the Jobs window is automatically opened. From here, you can open the other Main windows (Hot Tickets and System Overview), and arrange all three windows on your desktop.

You can reposition and resize each window, and adjust the panes inside the windows. Most of these panes can be resized by dragging the pane borders. Some panes also have an expansion triangle. This is a small triangular icon in the centre edge of the pane pointing either to the right or left. For example, the Job List pane in the Jobs window has an expansion triangle on the right edge. You can close the pane, and open it again by clicking on this expansion triangle.

When you quit the Client, any adjustments you have made to the positions and sizes of the windows and panes are saved. The next time you start the Client, The Jobs window will open with these new settings. When you open the other Main window, these too are restored with the last settings used (position and size).

▷ To adjust the width of a pane

1. Select a pane, and position the mouse pointer over the one of the borders.

   If the pointer changes to a two-headed arrow, you can adjust it.

2. Click and drag the pointer to the left or right, and release the mouse button.

CHAPTER 2

Working with Asanti

NOTE: Visit the *Tutorial* page on the *AsantiNetwork* for detailed procedures on working with Asanti.

CHAPTER 3

Layout Editor

The Layout Editor is a dedicated workspace for setting up wide format jobs, which are printed on Wide Format printing devices, packaging jobs and any flat jobs that require an intricate layout.

Overview

The Layout Editor is used to create packaging, security, and wide-format jobs for printing on Wide Format devices. These jobs open immediately in the Layout Editor from where they are set up and submitted. In addition, the Layout Editor can also be used to prepare the imposition of other unbound flat jobs that require an intricate arrangement of products on the sheet, such as packaging and security jobs. The latter jobs can be opened in the Layout Editor using the Imposition Mode selector in the Products tab.

NOTE: The Layout Editor workspace does not display all the tabs and inspectors as described in the following sections when it is used for packaging jobs or regular prepress jobs.

Layout Editor Modes

The Layout Editor has two modes when working with wide format jobs:

- Sheet Layout mode: for uploading, placing and arranging products on *sheets*
- Print Layout mode: for organizing sheets on the *print layout*, i.e. the printer bed or belt of wide format printers

The products you want to print are first placed on one or more sheets in Sheet Layout mode, and these sheets are placed on print layouts that you can see if you switch to Print Layout mode. The print layout represents the printer bed (flat-bed devices) or the printer belt (roll-fed devices), which can accommodate multiple sheets and has the dimensions of the chosen device. A print layout is created automatically for each sheet that you prepare in Sheet Layout mode, with the sheet positioned by default in the printer's home position. You only need to switch to Print Layout mode if you want to inspect how the sheet is arranged on the print layout, or if you need to combine multiple sheets on one or more print layouts.

The workspace is similar in both modes, except for a few tools and inspectors that are only relevant in the respective modes. To switch between Sheet Layout mode and Print Layout mode, click the Sheets or Print Layouts tabs respectively above the Products panel. You can also edit a placed sheet by double-clicking it on the print layout.

NOTE: Print Layout mode is only available for jobs using wide format printers, i.e. wide format jobs.

Open and Close the Layout Editor

The Layout Editor is opened when you create or edit a wide format job or a packaging job. Alternatively, you can open the Layout Editor from the Jobs window:

- Choose File > New Wide Format Job.

  The Layout Editor opens and a new wide format job is created using the default template.

  OR

- Drop an image or document on a supported output device, or context-click a device and choose New Wide Format Job.

  The Layout Editor opens and a new wide format job is created using the default template for the device.

  OR

- Select a job in the Job List and click the Edit Job icon in the Jobs window toolbar or choose Edit Job in the context menu.

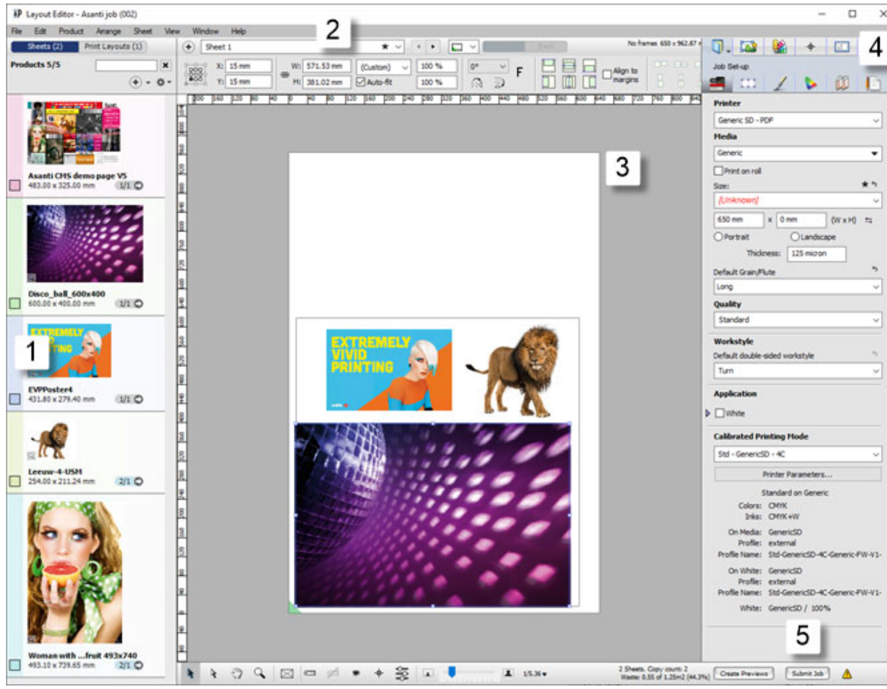
  The Layout Editor opens and a new wide format job is created using the default template.

To exit the Layout Editor, submit the job and choose Delete Job (new job), or Discard (existing job). See “Applying Changes and Submitting a Job” on page 156 for more information.

Related topics:

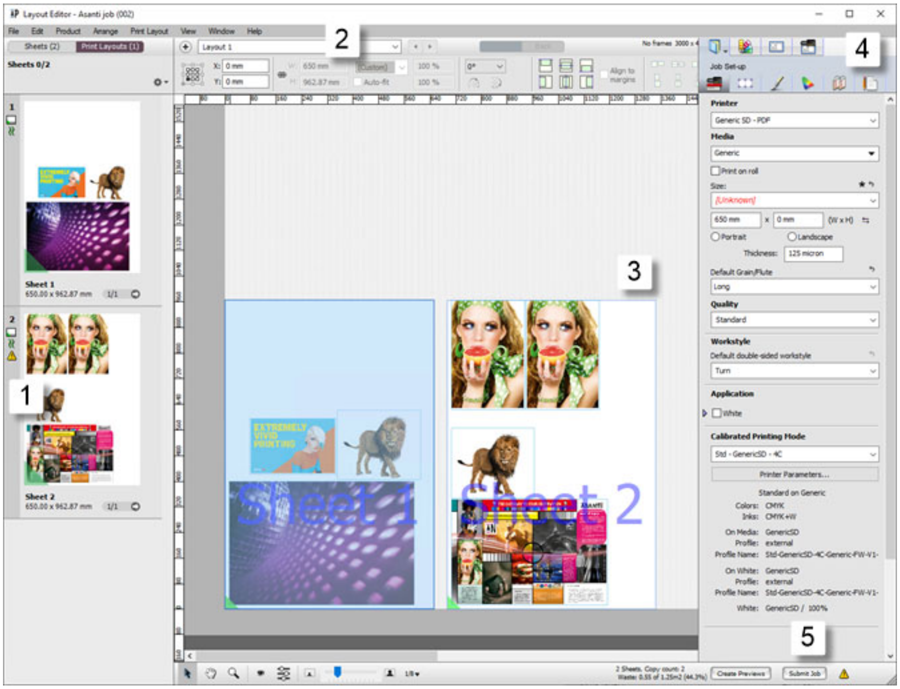
- Creating Templates for Wide Format Jobs on page 484
- Templates on page 480
- The Jobs Window on page 234

Figure 3.1: Sheet Layout mode with different products placed on a sheet



1 Product panel
2 Mode buttons and Sheet tabs
3 Sheet panel
4 Inspectors
5 Edit in Job Editor, Submit and Apply Changes buttons

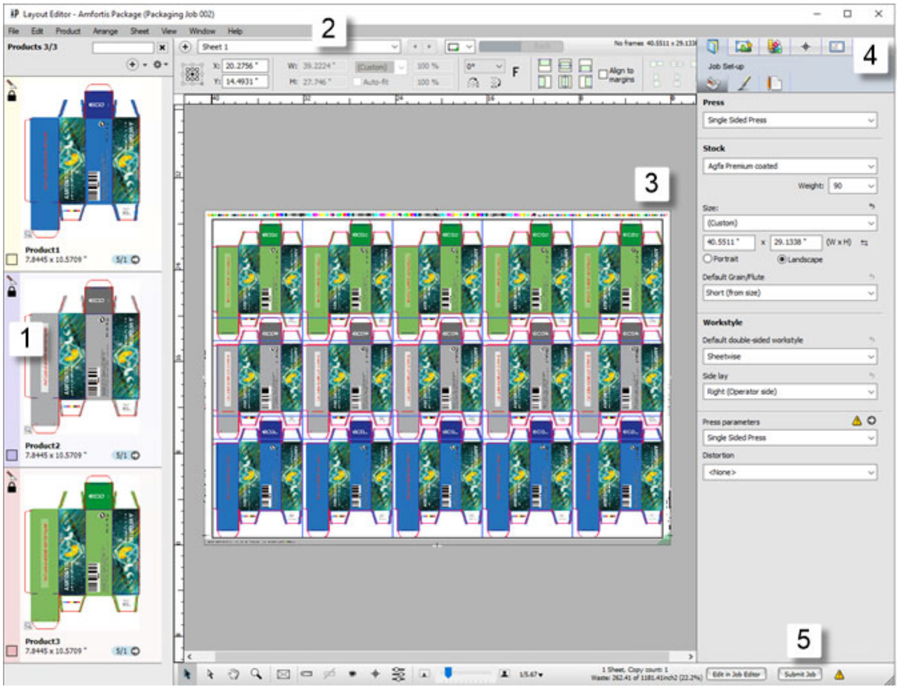
Figure 3.2: Print Layout mode with different sheets placed on a print layout



1 Sheet panel
2 Mode buttons and Layout tabs
3 Print Layout panel
4 Inspectors
5 Submit and Apply Changes buttons

NOTE: The Print Layout Editor is only available for Wide Format jobs.

Figure 3.3: Layout Editor with different products placed in an offset job



1 Products list
2 Mode buttons and Layout tabs
3 Products panel
4 Inspectors
5 Submit and Apply Changes buttons

Product Panel

The Product panel displays thumbnails of the products that you upload and want to place on the sheet for printing.

You can upload artwork files (images and documents) and CAD files to create products.

NOTE: Many of the features in the Product panel only apply for the Sheet Layout mode. Remember that you have a Sheet Panel that contains all your sheets when working in Print Layout mode.

Adding Products

Use the following methods to add products to the Product panel:

- Drag and drop one or more products onto the Product panel.
- Drag and drop one or more products onto a sheet.
- Drag and drop one or more products onto a printing device in the Jobs list.
- Click the **+** button in the top right corner of the Product panel and select one or more files from the location of your choice.
- Choose File > Add Products and select one or more products from the location of your choice.

If you add a product with the same file name, you are prompted to cancel, update or just add the new product:

- Update: Adds the file as a revision of the previous one. This replaces all placed products of the existing file with the new one.
- Just Add: Adds the file to the job as a new file with the same file name but with a `copy` suffix.
- Cancel: Cancels the action.

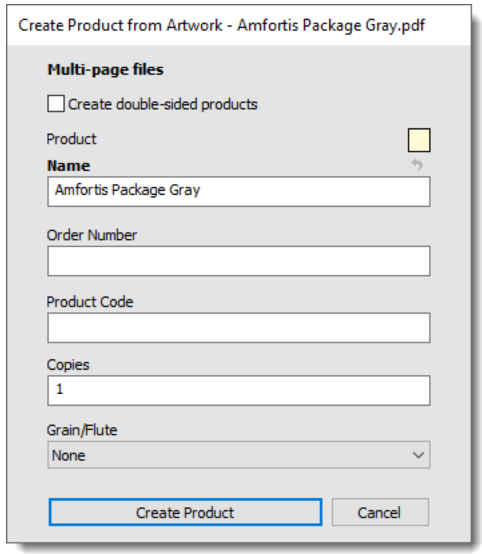
Thumbnails of the uploaded products are displayed in the Product panel.

Product Processing Status

While an uploaded product is being processed, you will see a product icon with a green background. When the processing is finished, you see a thumbnail with the file name and physical dimensions of the product.

Adding Products from Artwork

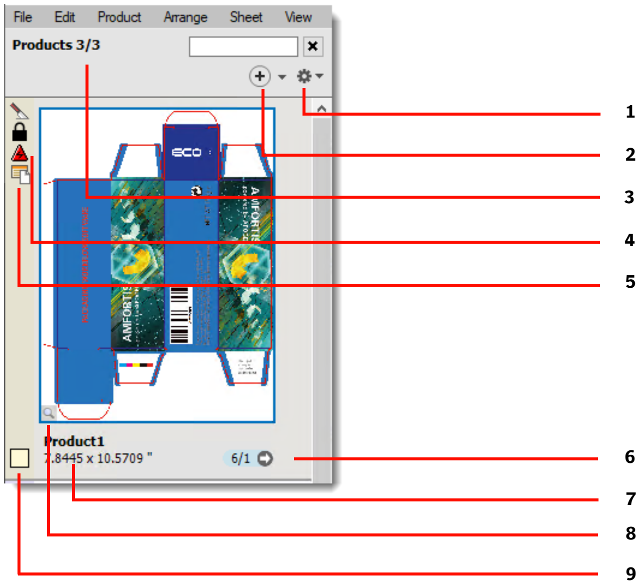
When choosing artwork files to add products to the Product panel, you can change the default information and provide additional information.



NOTE: This needs to be selected in your Preferences. See “General” on page 51.

Organizing Products

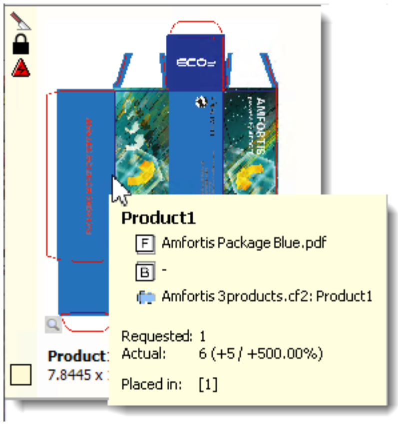
Click the cogwheel to display a menu for organizing and filtering the products you see in this panel.



1 Cogwheel menu
2 Add Products button
3 Number of products displayed according to the chosen filter
4 Product status icons, errors and warnings
5 Remarks
6 Instances of a product on all the sheets of a job
7 Product details: file name and physical dimensions
8 Product preview status
9 Product color

Tool Tip

A tool tip appears when hovering over the entire area of the product's cell.



The tool tip shows the following information:

- Product name
- Artwork and design sources names with alignment values (snap-values)
- Requested and actual copy counts
- Content IDs, when the product is assigned to frames with content ID.

Add Products

The following commands are available on the Add Products button:

- Add Products: Creates products from a content file (e.g., PDF).
- Add Products From CAD: Creates products from a CAD file.
- Add Product(s) From Frame(s): Create product(s) from the selected frame(s).
- Duplicate Product(s): Duplicates the selected product(s).
- Place CAD layout: Creates a sheet from a CAD layout file or place a CAD layout on a sheet.

Cogwheel Menu

The following commands are available on the cogwheel menu:

- Show all: Shows all products in the job.
- Show placed: Shows only the products that are placed.
- Show placed on current sheet: Shows only the products that are placed on the current Sheet Layout.
- Show not placed: Shows only the products that are not yet placed.
- Has artwork: Shows products that have artwork assigned.
- Has no artwork: Shows products that do not have any artwork assigned.
- Single-sided: Shows products that are single-sided.
- Double-sided: Shows products that are double-sided.

- Sort by Creation Time: Sorts the products in the Product list in order of creation time.
- Sort by File Name: Sorts the products alphabetically by their names, in ascending order.
- Sort by Type: Sorts the products alphabetically by the file type of its artwork, in ascending order.
- Sort by Width: Sorts the products by their widths, in descending order.
- Sort by Height: Sorts the products by their heights, in descending order.
- Sort by Largest Dimension: Sorts the products by their largest size (i.e., the maximum of the width and height), in descending order.
- Show small thumbnails: Shows smaller thumbnails.
- Show large thumbnails: Shows larger thumbnails.
- Fit to largest: Shows thumbnails with a dynamic scale, where the widest thumbnail determines the scale.
- Fit each: Shows thumbnails with a dynamic scale per image, where each image is fit individually to the width of the panel.
- Show Product Colors: Colorizes the backgrounds of the cells using the product’s colors and draws a color picker to select the color.
- Show Both Sides: Shows a thumbnail that combines the front and back sides of the product side by side.

Managing/Editing Products

In the Product panel, context-click a product to display the following commands for this product:

- Get Info: displays the Info dialog box with information about the original product file organized in the General, Dimensions and Resources tabs; the Resources tab lists the fonts, products and spot colors used in the original product.
- Show Preflight Report: opens a PDF with a preflight report for the selected product, if available.
- Export Original File/Normalized PDF: exports the original file or normalized PDF to a location of your choice.

- Proof Product: opens the QuickProof dialog to proof the selected products. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 169.
- Delete Product: deletes the selected products from the Product panel, not from your disk.
- Duplicate Product(s): creates an exact copy of the products. See “Duplicating Products” on page 103.
- Assign Artwork: opens the file explorer to select artwork to add to an empty product.
- Front/Back: changes the front/back artwork of a product:
  - From Available: selects a previously uploaded page from the sub-menu; list of all artwork that is available in the Page Store.
  - Open: browses the file system and loads the artwork from a file.
  - Blank: selects to have a blank side.
  - Mirror: mirrors the current artwork, disabled when there is no current artwork.
  - Swap with back: swaps the assignment with that of the other side (front/back).
  - None: selects to have no artwork on that side.
  - Get Info: shows the Get Info window for the assigned artwork.
  - Show Preflight Report: creates and opens the Preflight Report for the document that is assigned to the current side.
  - Check Out and Edit Document: edits the document in the selected editor.
- Design: changes the design of a product:
  - From Product: lists the sub-menu with the other products.
  - Open: browses the file system and loads a design from a CAD file.
  - From Front: the artwork assigned to the front, disabled when the front has no artwork.

  - From Back: the artwork assigned to the back, disabled when the back has no artwork.
  - Mirror: mirrors the current design.
  - None: sets the design to a rectangle with the size specified by the Product size, disabled when the Product size is From design.
- Turn Over: turns over the product(s) contained in one or multiple frames.
- Mirror Product: mirrors the front and back artwork and mirrors the design.
- Convert to Single-sided Product(s): creates two single-sided products from a double-sided product (front/back) with the artwork assigned to the respective sides.
- Convert to Double-sided Product(s): combines two products (or multiple pairs of products selected in the Product panel) into double-sided products.
- Open in Product Editor: opens the selected product in the Product Editor.
- Edit with Preview: opens the product in Preview; this feature is useful for soft-proofing images which are color managed; you can perform color adjustments and contrast curve adjustment; see “Previewing Job Results” on page 325 for more information on working with Preview.
- Check Out and Edit Document: opens images and documents in Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application such as the Amfortis Editor, from where they can be checked in after editing.
- Auto-Layout Product: opens the Auto Layout dialog box, see “Placing Products with Auto-Layout” on page 109.
- Auto Fill Products: opens the Auto-Fill dialog box, see “Placing Products with Auto-Fill” on page 113.
- Create Grid: opens the Create Grid dialog box, see “Create Grid” on page 106.
- Collapse Tiles: collapses the tiles of a tiled image, see “Expand or collapse a tiled image” on page 230.
- Expand Tiles: expands a tiled images to see the individual tiles, see “Expand or collapse a tiled image” on page 230.
- Fitting: opens the Fitting Options dialog box where you can set the cropping, see “Fitting Options Dialog Box” on page 91.

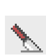
- Revert Product Size: reverts the size of the original product back to the size it initially had when you added it to the Product panel.
- Locate Product on Sheet: highlights all the instances of a product/sheet on the current or first available sheet/print layout.

In the Print Layouts panel, context-click a product to display the following commands for this sheet:

- Delete Sheet: deletes the selected sheets from the Print Layout. panel. Deleting a Print Layout does not delete the Sheet Layouts that it contains.
- Duplicate Sheet: duplicates a Print Layout. This creates an exact copy of the current Print Layout, including all Sheet Layouts. See "Duplicating Products" on page 103.
- Edit Sheet: switches to Sheet Layout panel to allow editing the sheet.
- Locate Sheet on Print Layout: locates the placed instance of a sheet on the Print Layout.
- Proof Sheets: opens the QuickProof dialog to proof the selected sheets. See "QuickProof Products and Sheets" on page 169.

NOTE: The Print Layout Editor is only available for Wide Format jobs.

Product Status Icons

 The design of the product has a contour-defining operation (other than the frame or trim-box).

 The product is double-sided.

 At least one of the product's artworks was rejected. In addition, the thumbnail of the rejected artwork is shown with a red diagonal line.

  At least one of the product's artworks has remarks other than rejected.

 At least one of the product's artworks could not be aligned to the design.

 At least one of the product's artworks could not be aligned to the design with great confidence.

 The product is placed in a frame with a different size, unless the frame has an embedded design.

 The product is Locked or Uniform.

The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute and there are no placed instances that violate that requirement.

The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute, but at least one placed instance violates that requirement.

The product has white content, either from the artwork or generated.

The product has varnish content, either from the artwork or generated.

The product has primer content, either from the artwork or generated.

The image is being edited via an external editor.

Indicates that full-gamut color management is applied.

'F' shows the effects of the rotation and mirror attributes (here shown with 90 degrees rotation and no mirroring).

Indicates a preflight report has been generated for the image.

Image preview has been generated (gray) or is being processed (green).

Color adjustments (saturation, contrast, curves) have been made in Preview.

The product has Image Operations that prevent changing the product's size (tiling, canvas extensions, etc.).

There is a notification or snag message present on the product. The icon depicts the severity of the status: error, warning or intervention required.

Sheet Status Icons

The design of the sheet has a contour-defining operation.

The sheet is Locked.

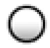
The sheet's workstyle and sidelay.

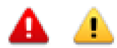
The sheet has Grain/Flute running in the specified direction (either can be long or short).

The sheet has a custom bleed mask. The mask is up-to-date (white) or needs reviewing (yellow).

The sheet has white content, either from the artwork or generated.

The sheet has varnish content, either from the artwork or generated.

 The sheet has primer content, either from the artwork or generated.

 There is a notification or snag message present on the sheet. The icon depicts the severity of the status: error, warning or intervention required.

Clicking the status icon opens the message(s) for that sheet/product in the Snag List.

Inspecting Products

You can use the Product inspector to inspect one or more products in the Product panel before placing them on a layout. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 145 for more information.

You can also use some of the tools in the positioning toolbar for a product selected in the Product panel: size, scale, mirror and rotate the product. See “Positioning and resizing products with the positioning toolbar” on page 85.

Changes you make to the original in the Product panel do not affect products that are already placed on the sheet and vice versa.

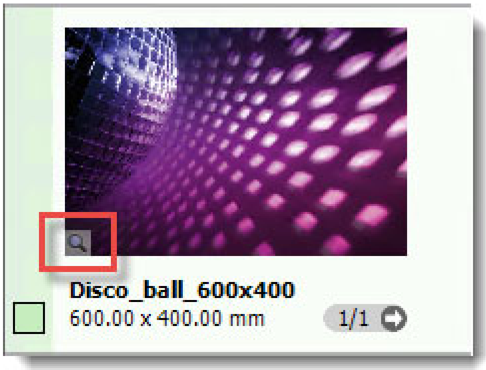
Product Previews

When you upload products to the Product panel, Asanti does not process product previews automatically by default.

NOTE: You can change the default behavior and let the system create previews automatically when you add products to the Product panel. See “Preferences” on page 51.

When products are added to the Product panel, the Create Previews button appears in the bottom right corner of the Layout Editor. Click this button when you are ready to create the previews.

Products with a preview are indicated in the Product panel with a magnifying glass icon. This icon is grey if the preview has been generated and green while the preview is being processed.



Create product previews

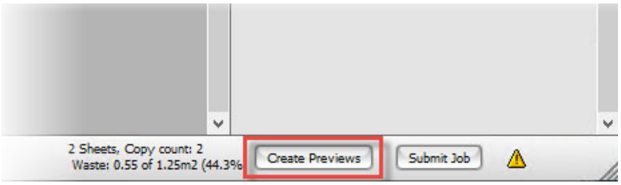
If automatic product previews are not selected in your Asanti client Preferences, you can create previews as required as you work in the Layout Editor.

- Context-click one or more products in the Product panel and choose Edit with Preview.

  This creates a color-managed preview of the selected products and opens the preview immediately in the Raster Preview module when the processing is finished. The magnifier status icon in the Product panel changes from green to gray to indicate the previews are ready.

  OR

- Click the Create Previews button in the bottom right corner to create product previews of all the products in the Product panel.



  Previews of all the products in the Product panel are generated in the background. The magnifier status icon is gray when the previews are ready. The previews can be opened immediately in the Raster Preview module.

OR

- Double-click a product in the Product panel.

  You can change the default behavior so the Raster Preview module is opened and previews are created instead of opening the Product Editor. See “Preferences” on page 51.

  If you change settings that modify the preview (for example, choose a different printer), the Create Preview button re-appears and you can choose whether you want to update the previews or not. See also “Applying Changes and Submitting a Job” on page 156.

Previewing white and special colors

The Raster Preview module has special features for previewing white ink and other special colors such as varnish and primer.

1. In the Raster Preview module, make sure the Inks palette is shown.
2. In the Ink table, ALT-click the eye icon next to the white ink.

   The white ink is drawn in grayscale with 100% white drawn as 100% black. The other inks are hidden.
3. ALT-click the eye icon again to show all the colors.

   Alternatively, you can choose to show white in a different color, as a mask.

1. Click the color patch for the white ink and in the Viewing Options dialog box, choose As Mask.
2. Choose a color and an opacity with the slider.
3. Click OK.

   The white layer is drawn in the selected color and opacity on top of the other layers.

Related topics:

- Previewing Job Results on page 325

File Types

The following file types can be processed:

- Content files: Files that contain the content to be printed. In some cases, such files may also contain structural (non-printing) information that can be used by Apogee.
  - Image file types: TIFF, JPG, PNG, BMP

  - Adobe PhotoShop (PSD) and Illustrator (AI)
  - PDF, PS, PSB, EPS, GRS
- CAD files: Files that contain structural information but no content.
  - CFF2, DXF

All file types are converted to an internal PDF file format in the background, but they keep their original name and file extension.

NOTE: If you upload a PDF document that consists of several pages, each page is displayed in the Product panel as an individual product. The page no. is suffixed to the file name.

Placing and arranging products on a sheet

NOTE: Some of these shortcuts can also be used for placing sheets on printer layouts.

To	Drag the product and
Place one or more products at the cursor position without ganging them.	Hold SHIFT and release
Switch between snapping to margins (magenta snap guides) and snapping to edges (blue snap guides).	Press ALT
Restrain movement horizontally and vertically.	Hold SHIFT
Cancel the product placement.	Press ESC
Rotate one or more products 90° counterclockwise, while moving them.	Press space bar once
Copy a selected product.	Press CTRL + C
Paste a copied product.	Press CTRL + V
Center a product on the current sheet or on a new sheet if the current one is not empty. Multiple selected products are centered on individual sheets.	Press C
Center a product on the current sheet even if it is not empty. Multiple selected products are centered on individual sheets.	Press SHIFT + C
Duplicate one or more selected products according to the copy count and gang the products on the current and new sheets.	Press N
Duplicate one or more selected products according to the copy count and gang the products on the current and new sheets but starting at the cursor position.	Press SHIFT + N

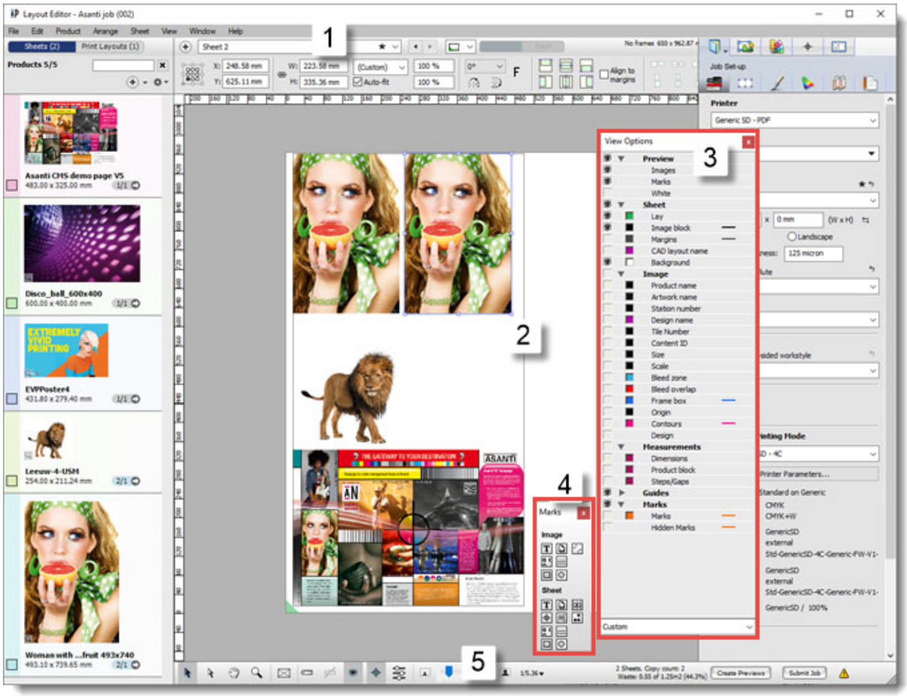
To	Drag the product and
Duplicate one or more selected products according to the copy count and center the products on the current sheet if empty and on new sheets.	Press N + C or Press SHIFT + N + C
Duplicate the selected product and fill the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each product if multiple products are selected.	Press F
Duplicate a selected product and gang the products with existing products on the current sheet to fill the sheet. Selecting multiple products fills multiple sheets.	Press SHIFT + F
Duplicate the selected product and fill and center on the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each product if multiple products are selected.	Press F + C or Press SHIFT + F + C
Rotate the selected product or products clockwise.	Press R
Rotate the selected product or products counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + R
Mirror the selected product or products clockwise.	Press M
Mirror the selected product or products counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + M

Layout Panel

NOTE: Most of the features in the Layout Panel apply for both the Sheet Layout mode as well as the Print Layout mode. Remember that you work with sheets on a print layout when in Print Layout mode.

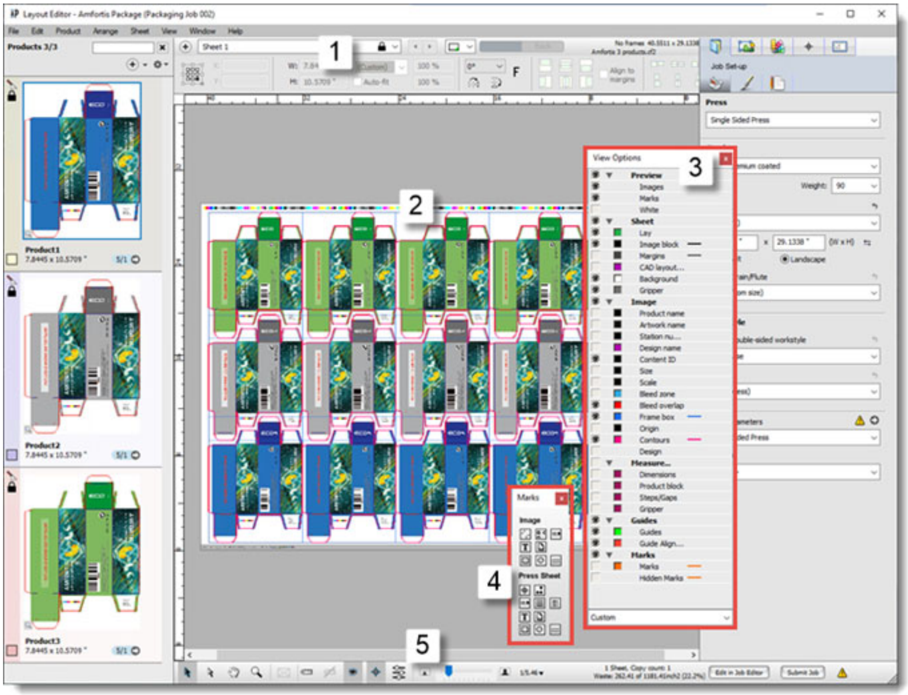
The sheet layout panel consists of one or more sheet tabs where products are placed, positioning tools to position the products on the sheet, and palettes for inspecting the sheet in more detail.

Figure 3.4: The layout panel (Sheet Layout mode)



1 Positioning toolbar
2 Sheet with placed products
3 View Options palette
4 Marks palette
5 Layout toolbar

Figure 3.5: The layout panel with different products placed in an offset job



1 Positioning toolbar
2 Products panel
3 View Options palette
4 Marks palette
5 Layout toolbar

Add a Sheet

- Click the + button next to the Sheet 1 tab.

  OR

  Drag a product onto the + button

  OR

  Choose **Sheet > New Empty Sheet**.

NOTE: If sheet media is used, layouts are added automatically to accommodate products that you add to an existing layout that does not have sufficient space for the product.

▷ Delete a Sheet

- Context-click the Sheet tab you want to delete and choose **Delete Current Sheet**.

  OR

  Select the Sheet Layout and choose **Sheet > Delete Current Sheet**.

Default Product Placement

Products are placed on the sheet by dragging and dropping. They are arranged automatically in a logical sequence. This initial placement of products is referred to as the default product placement or ganging.

- Select one or more products in the Product panel and drag them onto the sheet.

  The first product is placed against the sheet lay, which is an indication of the leading edge of the printer. For Anapurna printing devices, this is the bottom right corner of the sheet; for Jeti printing devices, this is the bottom left corner of the sheet.

  Subsequent products are ganged adjacent to the placed products, row by row. When the sheet is filled, a new sheet is added automatically.

  Products are placed on the sheet at their native size and they are enclosed in a blue frame.

The resolution of a product is checked when you place it on a sheet. If the resolution is too low, a warning icon appears in the Product panel. Click this warning icon to open the Snag List. See “Snag List” on page 128.

If you want to print several instances of the same product and you have set the copy count, you can fill the sheets while dragging the products onto the sheet.

- Select one or more products in the Product panel and press “n” or “N” while dragging them onto the sheet to duplicate the products in accordance with the copy count.

  The sheet is filled with the products in accordance with the copy count. Additional sheets are created if necessary to accommodate the copy count. If multiple products were selected, the sheets are first filled with the first product in the Product panel and then with the second product, and so on, until the copy count for all the products is obtained.

NOTE: The default placement of sheets on the print layout can be specified in the Media Layout tab.

Placing Products Interactively

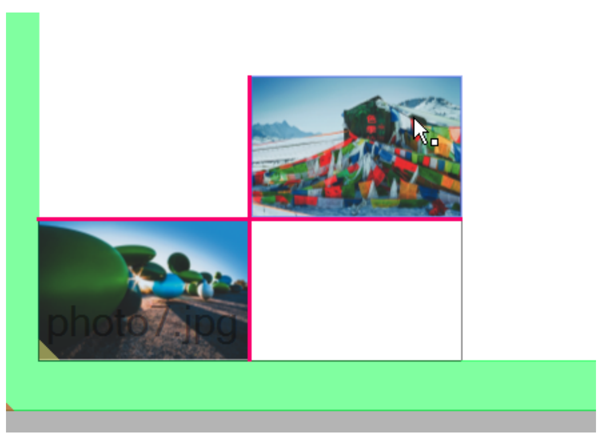
The default product placement can be modified extensively.

Moving Products

- To move one or more products on the sheet, select them with the selection tool and drag them randomly on the sheet.

You can also restrain the dragging to a horizontal and vertical movement by pressing SHIFT as you drag. Snap guides can be activated to help you align products or bounding boxes with each other and with the edge of the sheet.

Figure 3.6: Snap guides to align products on a sheet



Centering Products

- Press “c” or “C” to move one or more selected products to the centre of the sheet.

  If you select multiple products, the group of products is centred. Selecting multiple products consecutively will superimpose the products on top of each other.

▷ Snapping to Margins or Edges

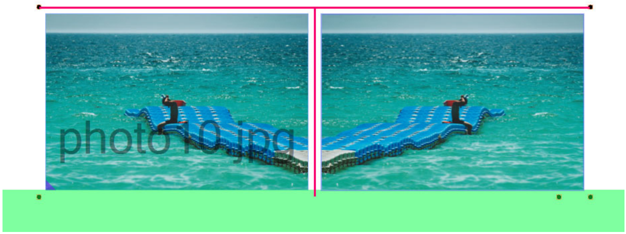
- Choose **View > Guides > Snap to Margins** or **Snap to Edges** to display magenta or cyan snap guides as you move products on the layout.

With either of these options selected, you can switch between snapping to the finishing margins of a product or snapping to its edges by holding down the ALT key. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 145 for information on setting finishing margins for products.

The following color codes are used for the snap guides:

Snapping	snap guide color
Finishing margin of the product to the margin of another product or to the edge of the sheet	solid magenta
Finishing margin of the product to the margin of the sheet	dashed magenta
Edge of the product to the edge of another product or to the edge of the sheet	solid cyan
Edge of the product to the margin of the sheet	dashed cyan

Figure 3.7: Snapping to product finishing margins (magenta snap guides)



▷ Grouping products

- You can select multiple products using conventional Windows key combinations. Multiple, selected products are enclosed in a blue bounding box. To keep these products together, choose Arrange > Group.

  The bounding box changes to black. The group of products can be moved on the layout interactively by dragging or with the positioning tools.

▷ Rotating products

- While placing or moving one or more products on the sheet, press the SPACE bar once to rotate the product 90° counterclockwise, twice for 180° counter-clockwise, etc.

  OR

  Select a placed product and press the SPACE bar or use the rotation tool in the positioning toolbar.

▷ Restoring the default placement

- After moving products interactively, you may want to restore the default placement of one or more products. Select the product you want to reset and choose Layout > Rearrange Frames.

  The selected products are ganged according to the default placement.

▷ Copy products to another sheet

1. Select one or more products on the active sheet and press CTRL+C to copy them
2. Go to another sheet and press CTRL+V to paste the copied products on this sheet.

▷ Removing Products

- To remove one or more products from the sheet, select them with the selection tool and press the Delete button, or press CTRL+X.

  The product or products are removed from the active sheet.

Removed products are not deleted from the Product panel and can be placed again on the same or a different sheet.

▷ Shortcuts for overriding the default product placement

- Use the following keyboard shortcuts to override the default placement of the products when dragging them onto the sheet or moving them once they are placed on the sheet:

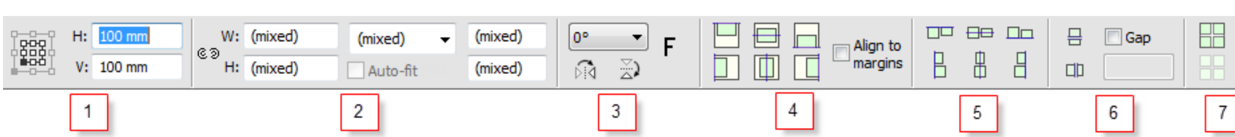
NOTE: Some of these shortcuts can also be used for placing sheets on printer layouts.

To	Drag the product and
Place one or more products without ganging them.	Hold SHIFT and release
Switch between snapping to margins (magenta snap guides) and snapping to edges (blue snap guides).	Press ALT
Restrain movement horizontally and vertically.	Hold SHIFT
Cancel the product placement.	Press ESC
Rotate one or more products 90° counterclockwise, while moving them.	Press space bar once
Copy a selected product.	Press CTRL + C
Paste a copied product.	Press CTRL + V
Move a selected product to the center of the sheet.	Press C or c
Duplicate a selected product to accommodate the copy count.	Press N or n
Rotate the selected product or products clockwise.	Press R
Rotate the selected product or products counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + R
Mirror the selected product or products clockwise.	Press M
Mirror the selected product or products counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + M

Positioning and resizing products with the positioning toolbar

The positioning toolbar provides tools for arranging and resizing products on the sheet interactively.

Select one or more products on the sheet to activate the tools.



1 Horizontal and vertical coordinates relative to the chosen reference point
2 Set size with aspect ratio lock; set Auto-fit option
3 Rotate/mirror one or more products on the sheet
4 Align in sheet
5 Align multiple products with each other
6 Set the gaps horizontally or vertically
7 Group/ungroup multiple products

Depending on whether you have one or more products selected, the positioning toolbar activates the relevant tools.

1 Select one product.

You can now either position the product by filling in a **H**orizontal and **V**ertical position (1)or you can choose one of the **Align in Sheet** options (4) to align along the top, left, right, bottom, center of the layout. If you select the

Align to margins check box, the reference edges are the layout margins as set in the finishing inspector.

Select a rotation angle in the **Rotation** drop-down box (3) to rotate the selected product, or click the horizontal or vertical **Mirror** buttons (3) to mirror the product along its horizontal or vertical axis.

2 Select two or more products.

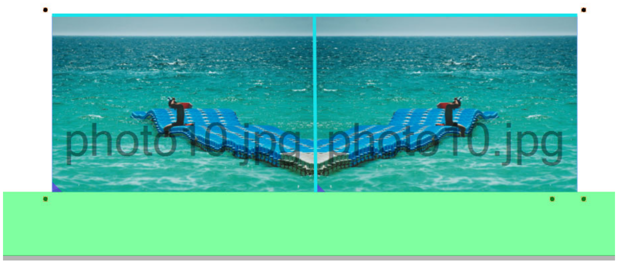
You can now **Group** the products (7) and align the group in the sheet (top, left, right, bottom, center) (4), or align the selected products with each other (5).

You can also use the **Set Gaps** tools (6) to distribute selected products vertically, horizontally, or both, so that the gaps between the elements are the same. If the gap size is not specified (Distribute), the outermost elements keep their positions and the elements in between move; if a gap size is specified (fixed), the left most or bottommost elements remain in position and the others move.

3 Select one or more products.

With the **Size** tool (2) you can set the size of the product frame. See "Inspecting Frames" on page 89 to read how you can fill a resized frame with the product. If you selected multiple products (i.e. product frames), all the products in the bounding box are modified accordingly.

Figure 3.8: A product which is copied, mirrored and snapped to product edges (cyan snap guides)



▷ Using alignment pins

When placing sheets on a print layout, you can use alignment pins for certain printing devices to ensure the sheet aligns with the media.

1 In Print Layout mode, go to the Media Layout inspector.

2 In the **Horizontally** drop-down list, select the Alignment Pin Set that you want to use, at the bottom of the list.

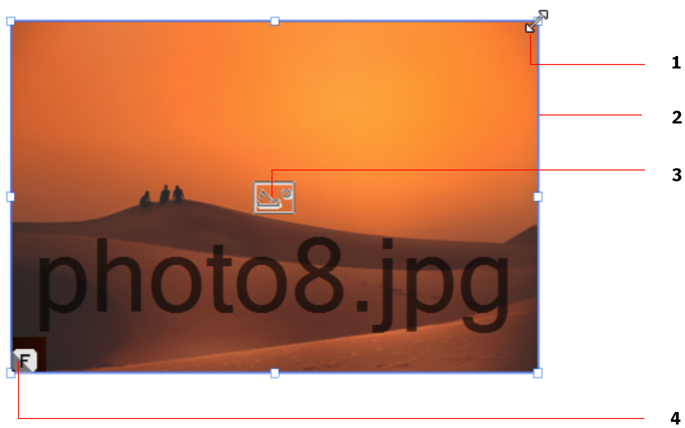
3 In the second drop-down list, select the pin configuration you want to use. See “Alignment Pin Sets” on page 357 for creating alignment pin sets.

The alignment pins are shown on the print layout and you can now position your sheets against these pins with the snap feature.

Working with Frames

A product placed on a sheet is always enclosed in a frame and most actions you perform in the Layout Editor actually affect the frame, not the product. For placed products, the Auto-fit check box is selected by default in the Positioning toolbar to ensure that the product fits the frame. You can clear the Auto-fit check box if you want to manipulate the frame independently from the product, for example to crop the product disproportionately. The parts of the product that are outside the frame are not printed, except for the bleed.

Figure 3.9: A placed product with its frame highlighted for resizing

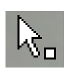


1 Product resize handle
2 Frame
3 Product icon
4 Product origin (indicates rotation/mirroring)

The frame and the product can be resized independently of each other, for example to crop a product.

Figure 3.10: A placed product, selected and enlarged beyond its own frame

A product is selected within its frame by clicking the product icon. The cursor state changes when you do this, as follows:

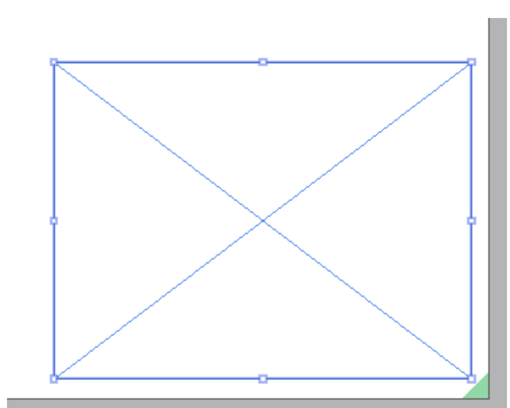
 Product frame is selected.

 Product is selected.

NOTE: Context-clicking a product within a frame provides access to the product-specific commands. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 69.

Empty frames are frames without a product, which are the result of either deleting the product from the frame of a placed product or drawing a new frame on the sheet.

Figure 3.11: An empty frame



Empty frames can be arranged on a sheet interactively just like placed products, using the Positioning toolbar and commands such as Step and Repeat, Duplicate, etc., and snap guides for aligning. You can also set fitting options to control how products must fit in empty frames. Frames also give you more flexibility when creating sheet templates. There is no Auto-Layout feature for empty frames.

NOTE: Empty frames are saved with a job but they are not processed as content when you submit the job. So you will not see frame boxes, etc. in the output.

Related topics:

- Sheet Layout Templates on page 158
- Fitting Options Dialog Box on page 91

Inspecting Frames

The following commands can be performed by context-clicking a frame:

- Add Products From Frame: When one or more frames are selected on the sheet, creates products with the dimensions of the selected frames and adds them to the Products list.
- Cut: Removes the frames from the sheet.
- Copy: Places a copy of the selected frames on the clipboard.
- Delete Frame: Removes the frame and its product from the sheet.
- Remove Frame: Deletes the product from the frame.
- Duplicate Frame on Sheet: See “Duplicating Products” on page 103.
- Step and Repeat: See “Step & Repeat” on page 104.
- Add Product From Artwork: Creates product by assigning artwork to a frame.
- Assign Artwork: Opens the file explorer to select artwork to add to a frame. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 69.
- Front/Back: Changes the front/back artwork of a product in a frame. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 69.
- Design: Changes the design of a product in a frame. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 69.
- Open in Product Editor: Opens the selected product in the Product Editor.

- Edit with Preview: Opens the product in Preview. See "Previewing Job Results" on page 325 for more information on working with Preview.
- Check Out and Edit Document: Opens images and documents in the selected Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application.
- Group/Ungroup: Groups or ungroups the selected frames.
- Fitting: This sub-menu provides the following options:
  - Fit Product in Frame Proportionally: Resizes the product proportionally to fit within the frame.
  - Fill Frame With Product Proportionally: Scales the product proportionally to fill the entire frame.
  - Fit Frame to Product: Resizes the frame to fit the product.
  - Fill Frame With Product: Scales the product to fill the entire frame, but not proportionally.
  - Center Product: Centers the product, in its current size, in the frame.
  - Reset Fitting: Sets the fitting options of the frame to those of the original product in the Product panel.
  - Fitting Options: see "Fitting Options Dialog Box" on page 91.
- Turn Over: Turns over the product(s) contained in one or multiple frames.
- Size Frame to Sheet: Fills the sheet with the product; this may change the proportions.
- Size Sheet to Frame: Sizes the sheet to the selected product frame which can be empty or filled.
- Revert Frame: Reverts the frame and product to the size of the original product.
- Scale for Bleed: Extends the product beyond the frame to accommodate the specified bleed.
- Rearrange Frame: Re-positions the frame to the default placement on the sheet and applies modified inspector settings.

- Assign Content ID: Assigns a content ID to the selected frame or all frames if none is selected. The frames must be filled.
- Clear Content ID: Clears the content IDs of the selected frames or all frames if none are selected.
- Locate Product in Product List: Highlights all the instances of a product on the current or first available print layout.

Fitting Options Dialog Box

The Fitting Options dialog box gives you more detailed control for fitting a product within the frame.

- With one or more product frames selected on the sheet, choose Arrange > Fitting > Fitting Options to open the Fitting Options dialog box.

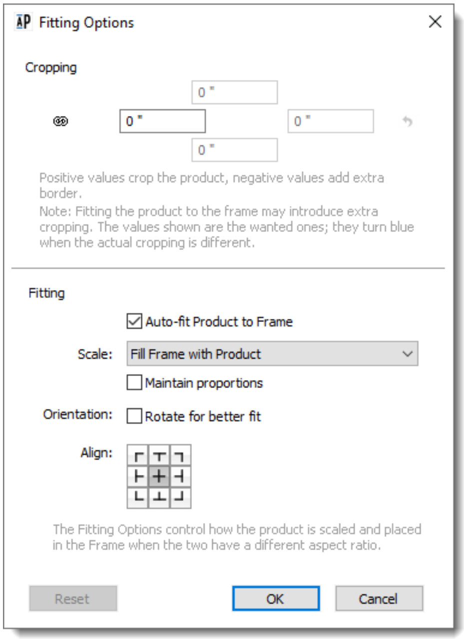
  OR

- Right-click a frame and choose Fitting > Fitting Options.

  OR

- Context-click a product in the Product panel and choose Fitting > Fitting Options.

NOTE: You can only set the crop values for products in the Product panel.



Cropping

The values that you want to apply to products in the frame. If the product fits in the frame exactly, the four values are zero, for example when you drag a product onto a sheet. Positive values crop the product by shifting the product outside the frame. Negative values create more space, a border, between the product and the frame. Values in blue mean the Auto-fit settings have introduced extra cropping.

Fitting

Here you specify the Auto-fit settings for fitting the product inside the frame.

Auto-fit Product to Frame Select this check box to choose a Scale and Orientation for fitting the product automatically in the frame. The check box is selected by default for placed products (i.e. products that you dragged on the sheet).

Scale The following options are available to scale the product when Auto-fit is selected:

- Fit Product to Frame: scales the product so it fits completely in the frame which is not necessarily filled.
- Fill Frame with Product: scales the product so it fills the frame and crops the product if necessary.

- Fill Product to Frame Width: scales the product so its width fits that of the frame.
- Fill Product to Frame Height: scales the product so its height fits that of the frame.

Maintain proportions Keeps the width and height scale factors the same when scaling.

Orientation/Rotate for better fit Rotates the product to match the aspect ratio of the frame when Auto-fit is selected.

Align Sets the alignment of the product in the frame.

Reset Button Resets the product to fill the frame.

Related topics:

- Sheet Layout Templates on page 158

▷ Adding frames to a Sheet

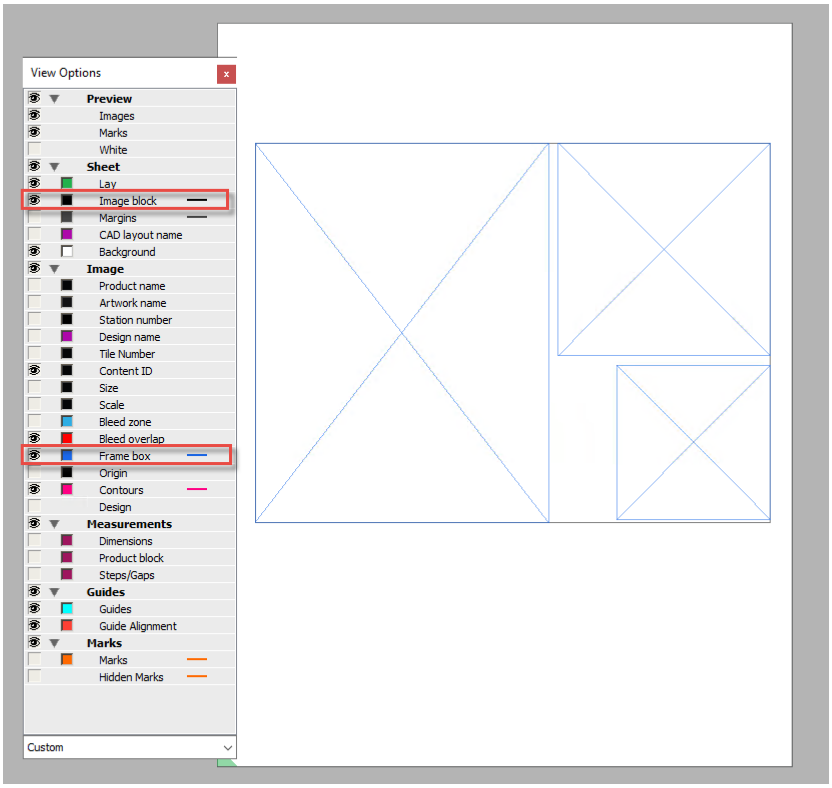
1 On the sheet where you want to draw a new frame, select the Frame tool on the toolbar at the bottom of the Layout Editor.

2 On the sheet, click, drag and release the mouse to draw the frame.

A frame has an outline and two diagonals from corner to corner. The color depends on your View Options settings.

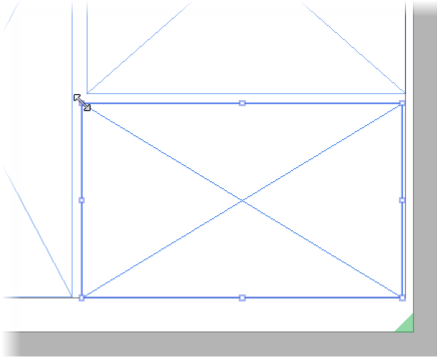
3 With the Frame tool still selected, you can draw additional frames on the sheet.

Figure 3.12: Unnamed frames inside the product block, on a sheet



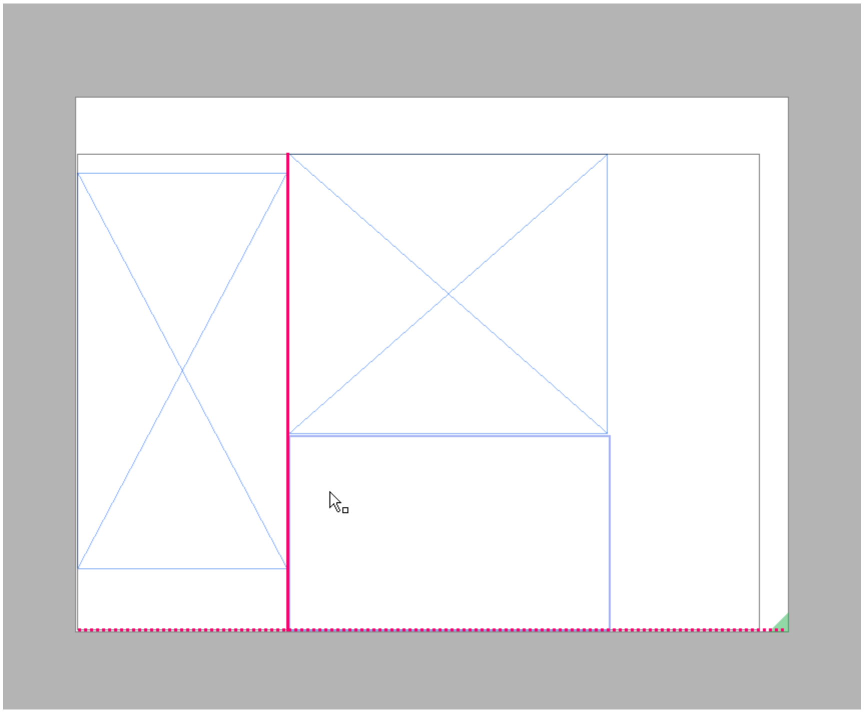
The product block expands accordingly as you add more frames.

4 To position your frames, click the Selection tool in the toolbar and now you can select the frames.



The outline is thicker and has resizing handles.

5 Use the Positioning toolbar to arrange the frames just like you would do with products.



The same snap guides are available to help you align frames with edges and margins.

Related topics:

- Placing Products Interactively on page 82

▷ Rearrange frames

The Rearrange command reverts the placed products on a sheet to the default placement. Depending on the printing device, the products are ganged from left to right or right to left on the sheet. You cannot rearrange locked sheets.

1 Select the products or frames that you want to rearrange on the sheet.

2 Choose Layout > Rearrange Frames.

The selected products or frames revert to the default placement. Some products may be placed on a new sheet if the current sheet cannot accommodate the rearranged products.

NOTE: If no products or frames are selected, then everything on the sheet is rearranged.

Naming frames (content IDs)

Frames that you draw on a sheet are initially so-called *unnamed frames*. Frames created by dragging products on the sheet are also unnamed. It is possible to assign content IDs ([A[, [B], [C], etc.) to frames for automation purposes, and these frames are called *named frames*.

Named frames allow you to use the same product in multiple frames by simply dragging the product once onto the sheet. Each product is placed in the position and with the size, frame rotation, and fitting options specified for the different frames.

NOTE: Content IDs do not work across multiple sheets. For example, placing a product in a frame with Content ID [A] on Sheet 1 does not fill frames with the same ID on Sheet 2.

Named frames are extremely useful when creating sheet layout templates.

Related topics:

- "Sheet Layout Templates" on page 158

▷ Naming empty frames (interactively)

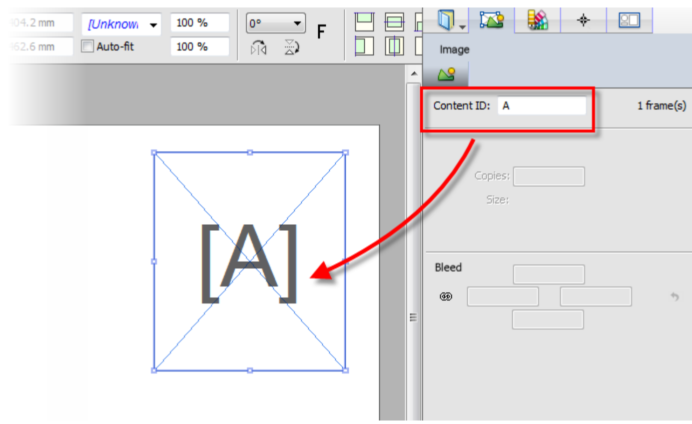
Empty frames on a sheet can only be named manually because they have no content.

1 Draw the frame on the sheet with the Frame tool.

2 Switch to the Selection tool and select one or more frames.

3 In the Product Inspector, enter an ID in the Content ID box.

4 Click outside the ID box, and the ID is displayed in the center of the frame.



If you selected multiple frames, the same ID is assigned to each frame.

You can edit the content ID as long as no products are placed on the sheet.

▷ Naming filled frames

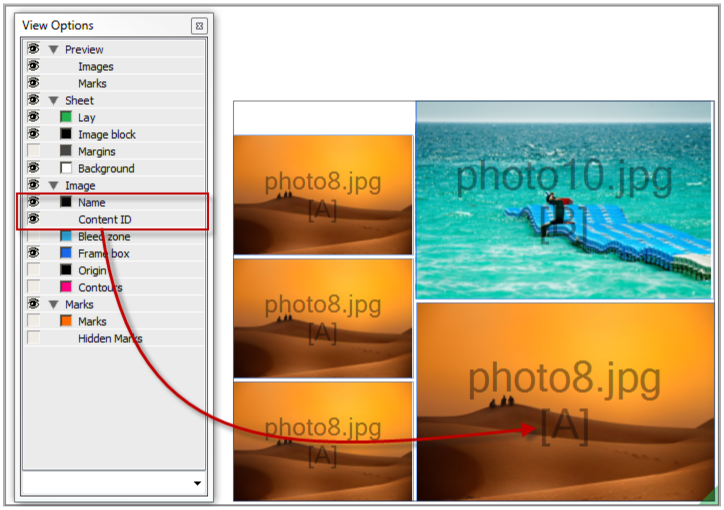
If a sheet contains at least one product, you cannot use the Product Inspector to assign content IDs interactively. You would have to clear all the frames first.

However, there are two methods for naming filled frames automatically: by saving the sheet layout as a template (see "Sheet Layout Templates" on page 158), or by using the Assign Content IDs command. This command lets you assign IDs to filled frames without clearing all the products from the sheet.

1 Select the products you want to name on the sheet.

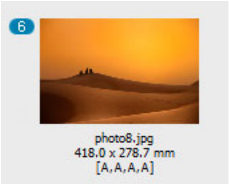
2 Choose Layout > Assign Content IDs.

The selected products are assigned unique IDs and instances of the same product have the same unique ID. If you didn't select any products, then all the frames with products on the sheet are assigned IDs, and empty frames are not assigned IDs.



The content ID is displayed under the product name if this is set to *show* in the View Options.

The content IDs are also displayed under the thumbnail of the original product in the Product panel.



In this example you can see that the product has been assigned to 4 frames with content ID [A].

NOTE: The same product can also be assigned to frames with different IDs, for example, [A,A,B,C,D,D].

---

3 You can repeat the Assign Content IDs command if you drag more products on the sheet. New, unique IDs will be assigned and this is also the case if you add the same original product.

4 You can clear the IDs of selected products or all the IDs by choosing Layout > Clear Content IDs.

NOTE: If all of your frames have IDs, it's not possible to re-assign IDs, for example when you have deleted a product from the sheet.

Create Guides

The Create Guides allows you to create multiple guides (guidelines) at specified locations.

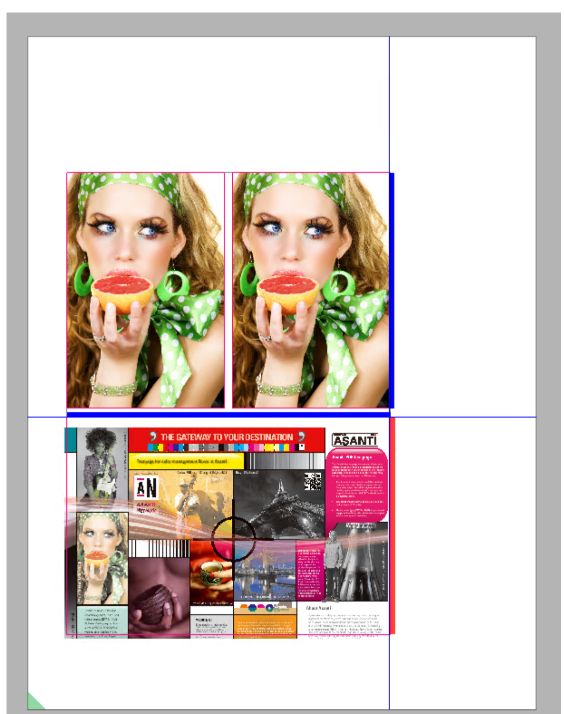
You can create guides as follows:

- Drag from the ruler
- Choose View > Guides > Create Guides command to open the Create Guide dialog box.
- Choose View > Guides > Create Guides From Frame(s).

NOTE: You cannot add guides to a locked sheet.

▷ To create guides dragging from the ruler

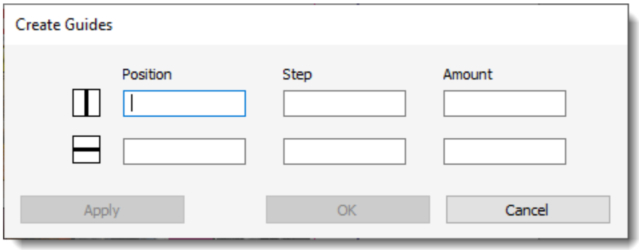
1. Make that the ruler is displayed.
2. Click and hold the mouse inside the top or left ruler. Drag the cursor into the layout pane while holding down the mouse.
3. Release the mouse where you want the guide to be placed. The guide(s) are displayed.



▷ To create guides from the dialog box

1. Choose View > Guides > Create Guides.
2. The Layout Editor opens the Create Guides dialog box. Specify the guides in horizontal/vertical direction(s).
3. The Layout Editor previews the guides in the layout pane. Click the **Apply** button to save the changes, or the **OK** button to apply the changes and close the dialog box.

Create Guides Dialog Box



Position (Horizontal/Vertical) Enter the position of the guide you want to create. You can leave this field empty, if you do not want to create a guide in that particular orientation.

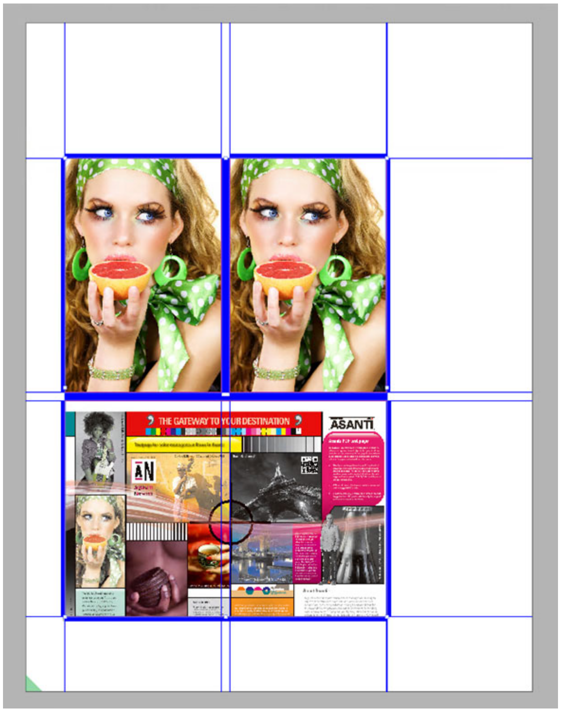
Step (Horizontal/Vertical) Enter the step distance between each guide to create multiple guides across the entire sheet.

Amount (Horizontal/Vertical) Specify the total amount of guides when you want to create multiple guides.

▷ To create guides from frame(s)

1. Select a frame or more frames to use as reference guide(s).
2. Choose View > Guides > Create Guides From Frame(s).

   The Layout Editor creates guide(s) along every edge in the selection, using the default guide color.



▷ To remove guides

- To remove a guide from the sheet, select the guide and choose View > Guides > Remove Guide(s), or context-click the guide and choose Remove Guide.

  OR

  Select the guide and press the Delete button.

- To remove all guide from the sheet, choose View > Guides > Remove All Guide(s).

NOTE: You can set the colors for the Guides and the Guide Alignment through their respective entries in the View Options palette. See “Place Station Numbers” on page 119.

Copy Count, Cropping, Scaling

You can use the Product inspector to prepare products before placing them on the sheet. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 145 for more information.

- With one or more products selected in the Product panel, select the Product inspector and set the Copies, Size, Bleed and Finishing operations as desired. Drag the products onto the sheet.

  The selected products are placed on the sheet and modified accordingly.

Duplicating Products

The Duplicate feature allows you to either create a copy of one or more products that you select in the Product panel, or duplicate and/or fill a sheet with one or more products that you have selected on the sheet.

- Select one product in the Product panel and choose Edit > Duplicate Product.

  OR

  Context-click a product and choose **Duplicate**.

  A copy of the selected product is added to the Product panel and the `Copy` suffix is appended to the file name of the duplicated product.

- Select one or more products or empty frames that have been placed on a sheet and choose Edit > Duplicate Frames on Sheet.

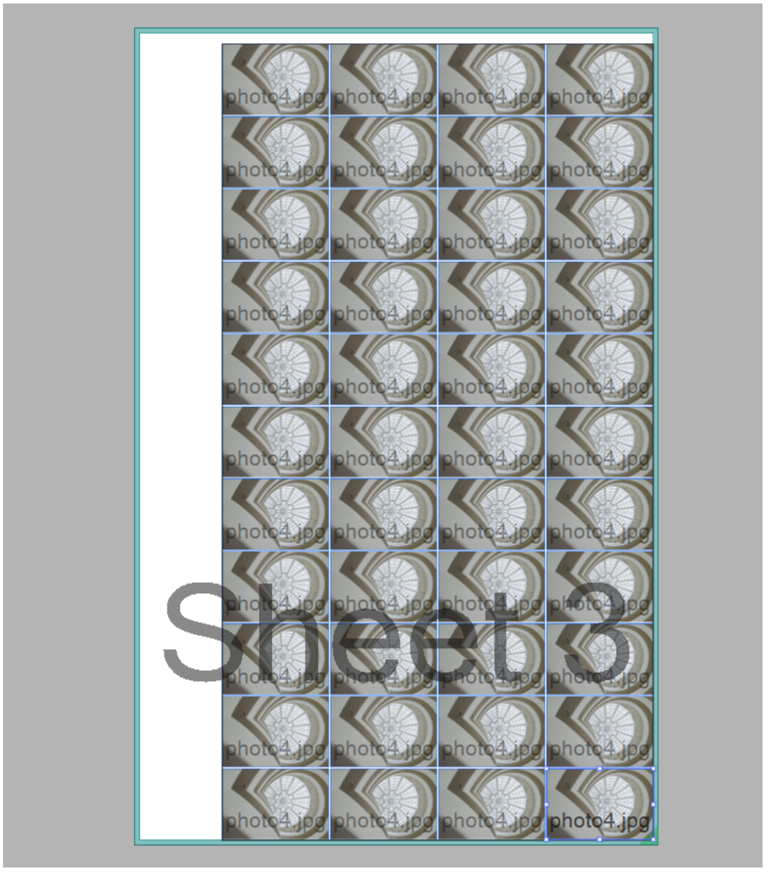
  OR

  Context-click a product and choose **Duplicate Frames on Sheet**.

  You can enter the number of copies you want to make on the sheet, or let Asanti fill the sheet.

Step & Repeat

Figure 3.13: A product which is stepped and repeated to fill the entire grid of a sheet



- Select a product which has been placed on the layout and choose **Edit > Step and Repeat** to display the Step and Repeat dialog box.

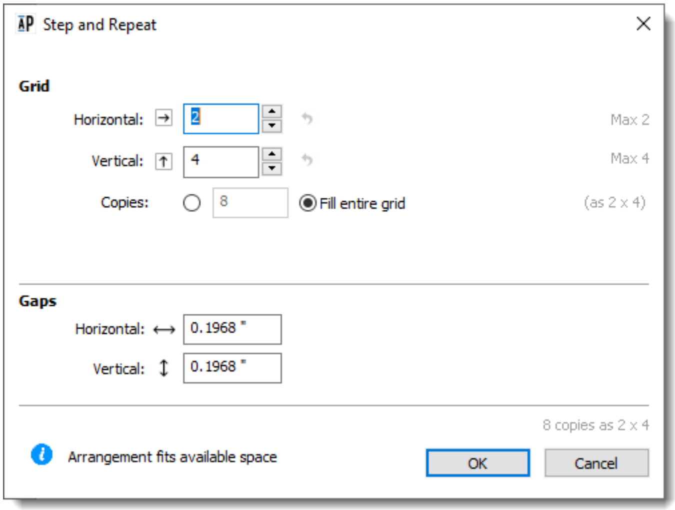
  OR

  Context-click a placed product and choose **Step & Repeat**.

Step and Repeat Dialog Box

Grid

The maximum number of horizontal rows and vertical columns for placing copies are indicated in gray but you can also set the number of rows and columns. A message is displayed if these maximum values are exceeded.



Horizontal Enter the number of copies you want to repeat horizontally. Click the revert button to reset the value to the maximum.

Vertical Enter the number of copies you want to repeat vertically. Click the revert button to reset the value to the maximum.

Copies Enter the number of copies to fill the layout as required; the number of copies should not exceed the number of horizontal rows multiplied by the number of vertical columns; a message is displayed if you exceed this maximum.

Fill entire grid Choose this option to fill the grid you defined. The number of copies is entered automatically (horizontal rows x vertical columns).

Fill Direction If you choose the option to enter the number of copies yourself, you can also choose how the grid is filled: horizontal rows first or vertical columns first.

The total number of copies is indicated in gray in the bottom right corner of the dialog box.

Gaps

Horizontal Enter a value for the horizontal gaps between repeated products.

Vertical Enter a value for the vertical gaps between repeated products.

Create Grid

Create/Edit Grid feature allows you to create a grid or modify the existing one using the Create/Edit Grid commands. The Layout Editor numbers the frames in the grid according to the row/column based order and the last used numbering scheme.

NOTE: In **Step & Repeat** Grid, user-defined parameters fix the frames, preventing removal, resizing, rotation, or mirroring. **Grid**, however, allows global frame orientation, including 180 degree rotation in alternating rows or columns for more compact layouts, especially with alternating gaps.

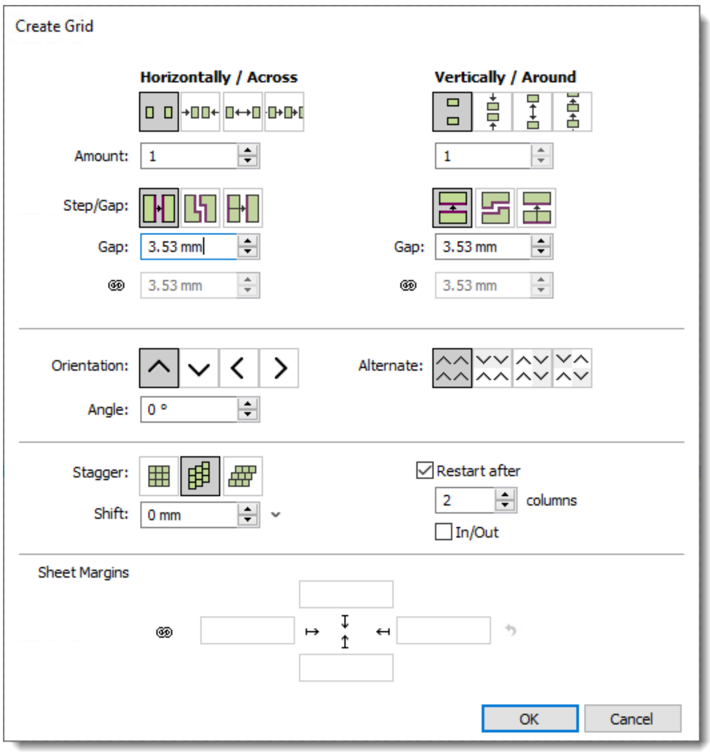
Select a product in the Product panel and open the Create Grid dialog box as follows:

- Choose Arrange > Create Grid

  OR

  Context-click the selected products and choose Arrange > Create Grid.

Create Grid Dialog Box



Create/Modify Grid dialog box consists of the Row/Column layout, Orientation, Staggering and Sheet Margins options.

Row/Column Layout

Horizontally/Across Vertically/Around Select the arrangement of the frames: Manual, Center, Distribute, or Repeat:

- Manual: Place the specified amount of frames with the specified gap/step
- Center: Place as many frames as possible and center
- Distribute: Place as many frames as possible and spread out
- Repeat: Place as many frames as possible for continuous printing

Amount The number of frames in the first row or column.

Step/Gap Select how to specify the distances between two adjacent frames: Gap between bounding boxes, Gap between contours or a Step size. When you change the mode, the Layout Editor displays the corresponding gap value(s).

- Gap between bounding boxes: Specify the minimum distance between the frames
- Gap between contours: Specify the minimum distance between the contours
- Step size: Specify the minimum step size

(Minimal) Step/Gap The sizes of the odd and even gaps or steps.

NOTE: The caption changes depending on the selected fill mode and step/gap mode.

Link icon The link icon keeps the odd/even values in synchronization. Click the link icon and re-enter values if you want to specify different values for the odd/even values.

Orientation

Orientation Select the orientation of the first frame. The Up orientation is the current orientation of the selected frame, regardless of its actual rotation (or mirroring).

Angle Specify a rotation. When you set a rotation that is a multiple of 90 degrees, the Grid dialog box highlights the corresponding orientation button. If you specify any other value, the dialog deselects all orientation buttons.

NOTE: This option requires a special license. It is also disabled when the selected product is protected.

Alternate Select whether to alternate the orientation for rows and/or columns:

- All the same: Keep the orientation the same in all rows and columns.
- Alternate rows: Rotate the even rows by 180 degrees.
- Alternate columns: Rotate the even columns by 180 degrees.
- Alternate both: Rotate all even rows and columns by 180 degrees. Stations that are in an even row and even column have the same orientation as the first.

Staggering

Stagger Select whether to stagger and in which direction: No Stagger, Stagger Vertically/Around, or Stagger Horizontally/Across.

Shift Specify the how far to shift the next row or column. You can use an absolute value or a value that is relative to the frame's size, either as a ratio (e.g., 1/3) or as a percentage (e.g., 25%). Shift is disabled, when staggering is off.

Restart after Select the check box to restart the staggering after a specified number of columns or row. It is disabled when staggering is off.

Restart value and unit Select the value to restart shifting the column/row. If you specify a value which is larger than the current number of frames, there will be no restart. The unit is displayed either in columns or rows, depending on the stagger direction.

In/Out Select whether to reset the shift and then start shifting again, or to shift back until the original position is reached.

Sheet Margins

This section displays the top, bottom, left and right sheet margins. The link icon keeps all the sheet margins in synchronization. Click the link icon and re-enter values if you want to specify different margins. When you close the link icon, the left margin value is copied into the other margins.

Placing Products with Auto-Layout

The Auto-Layout feature places and arranges all the selected products automatically on the sheet according to the chosen layout strategy. The products are placed on all the sheets of the job, including locked sheets.

CAUTION: Products already placed on sheets are cleared, even if the sheet is locked.

Select one or more products in the Product panel and open the Auto-Layout dialog box as follows:

- Choose Arrange > Auto Layout Products

  OR

  Context-click the selected products and choose Auto-Layout Products.

  NOTE: If no products are selected, Asanti auto-layouts all the products in the Product panel.

Auto-Layout Dialog Box

Size

Media size By default, the size of the media as defined in the job set-up. Choose a size from the drop-down list or enter a custom size. You cannot change this if you have already placed products on a sheet.

Products

Copy Count Here you can set the number of copies you want to print of each placed product. Asanti calculates the number of sheets that need to be printed to obtain the entered copy count. See “Sheet Inspector” on page 152.

Layout

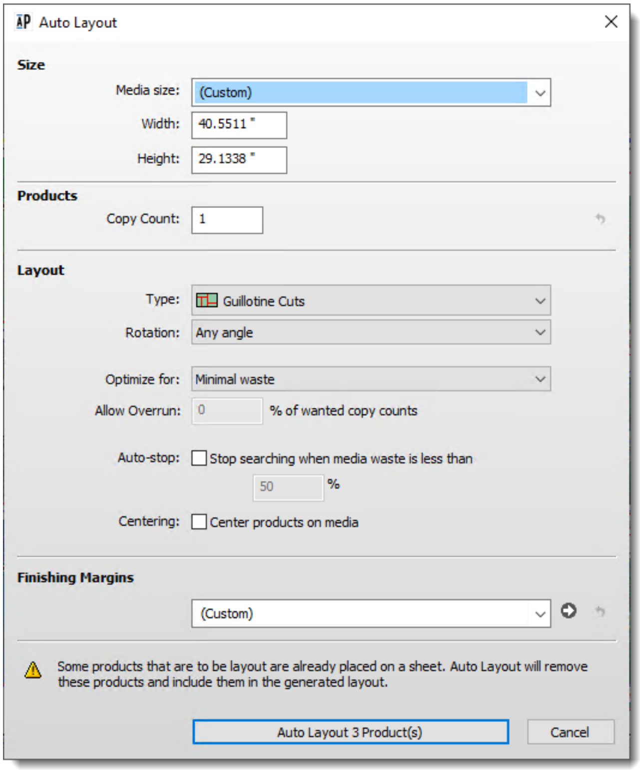
Here you specify the layout strategy.

Type Selecting a layout type shows options which are specific to each type.

True-Shape Nesting: to nest products more intricately based on the cutting path of each product.

Rectangular Nesting: to nest products in an intricate layout that may not be suitable for guillotine cutting.

Guillotine Cuts: to nest products in a sheet that is suitable for guillotine cutting.



Rotation It's possible that more products can be arranged on the sheet by allowing Asanti to rotate them. Choose one of the following:

None: No rotation is allowed. Places the products in their original orientation.

90 degrees: Rotates the products sideways to the left (90 degrees).

180 degrees: Turns the products upside down.

270 degrees: Rotates the products sideways to the right (270 degrees).

90 or 270 degrees: Rotates the products sideways to the left (90 degrees) or to the right (270 degrees).

0 or 180 degrees: Keeps the products at their original orientation or turn them upside down.

Any angle: Allows to rotate the products when that yield a better fit. You cannot control in which direction they are rotated. This option rotates products to meet the grain/flute requirements. If rotation is needed, it rotates the product by 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

Optimize for Choose whether you want the fitting strategy to reduce waste or reduce the number of sheets:

Minimal waste: Reduces the waste (including the overrun, treating off-cut as non-waste).

Minimal sheets: Reduces the number of different sheets, at the expense of producing a little overrun.

Single sheet: Places all products on a single sheet, using the copy counts of the products as a ratio. This method may produce more waste or overrun.

Single sheet per layout: Places as many copies of a single product on a single sheet. As such, there will be as many sheets as there are products. This method may produce more waste or overrun.

Allow Overrun % Allows you to set a percentage for the number of extra copy counts to achieve the chosen fitting strategy.

Auto-stop Asanti stops searching for the best arrangement once the specified waste level is obtained (default is 50%).

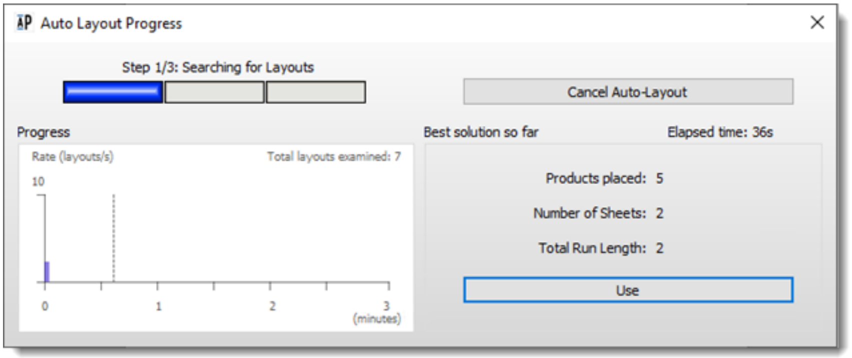
Centering Select to center the resulting product block on the media.

Finishing Margins

In this panel you can change the default finishing margins, i.e. the spacing between products and the edges of the sheet, as defined in the job set-up. See “Finishing” on page 138.

Auto-Layout Progress

This dialog box is displayed when you click the Auto-Layout button and it shows the progress of the auto-layout process. If the layout is complex and the system requires a lot of time to arrange the products, you can click the **Use** button to accept the **Best solution so far**. Otherwise, wait until the process is complete and the Auto-Layout Progress dialog box closes. The longer you wait, the better the proposed sheet.



Progress The diagram shows the total number of layouts found so far.

Best solution so far The proposed number of sheets and the total run length to accommodate the fitting strategy and your copy count as best as possible.

Elapsed time The elapsed processing time to search for possible layouts.

Auto-Layout Progress Steps

The complete Auto-Layout process can be represented in three different steps. Each step clearly marks if something is available that can be 'used' for the next step.

- **Step 1 - Searching for Layouts:** This step generates different combinations of products and examine whether that combination can be fitted onto a sheet, by taking into account the requested copy counts, adjusting some copy counts to allow more and better combinations. Every combination is examined. When a combination is successful, Auto-Layout shows it as a possible candidate, and continues searching for a better one. As soon as a candidate layout is found, Auto-Layout shows some information and enables the **Use** button. When you click it, or press the Enter key, process stops searching for alternative layouts and moves to the next step. If the candidate layout matches the criteria, Auto-Layout process immediately proceeds to the next step with that layout.

- **Step 2 - Optimizing Layouts:** Once a layout has been found and accepted, Auto-Layout process tries to compact the layout to provide more off-cut. If the current solution is acceptable, Auto-Layout automatically proceeds to the next step. If you consider the gain to be good enough, you can then click the **Stop Optimizing** button, or press the Enter key.

- **Step 3 - Finalizing:** This last step checks and adjusts the clipping paths between the products that have overlapping bleed.

Placing Products with Auto-Fill

The Auto-Fill feature places the selected products (or all products if there is no selection) in the layout that is on the current sheet.

CAUTION: Products already placed on sheets are cleared, even if the sheet is locked.

Select one or more products in the Product panel and open the Auto-Fill dialog box as follows:

- Choose Arrange > Auto Fill Products

  OR

  Context-click the selected products and choose Auto Fill Products.

NOTE: Auto-fill can only be used on a rectangular grid layout with unnamed, identical frames.

When the sheet has one or more placed products that are part of the selection, they will be removed from the sheet when you apply the Auto-Fill. The sheet will not be changed when you cancel the Auto-Fill.

Products that are part of the selection and that are already placed on other sheets will be removed from those sheets in the same way Auto-Layout removes them. Those sheets will not be changed when you cancel the Auto-Fill.

When the sheet has one or more placed products that are not part of the selection, you have to remove them, or to keep the current sheet and make new sheets before you apply the Auto-Fill.

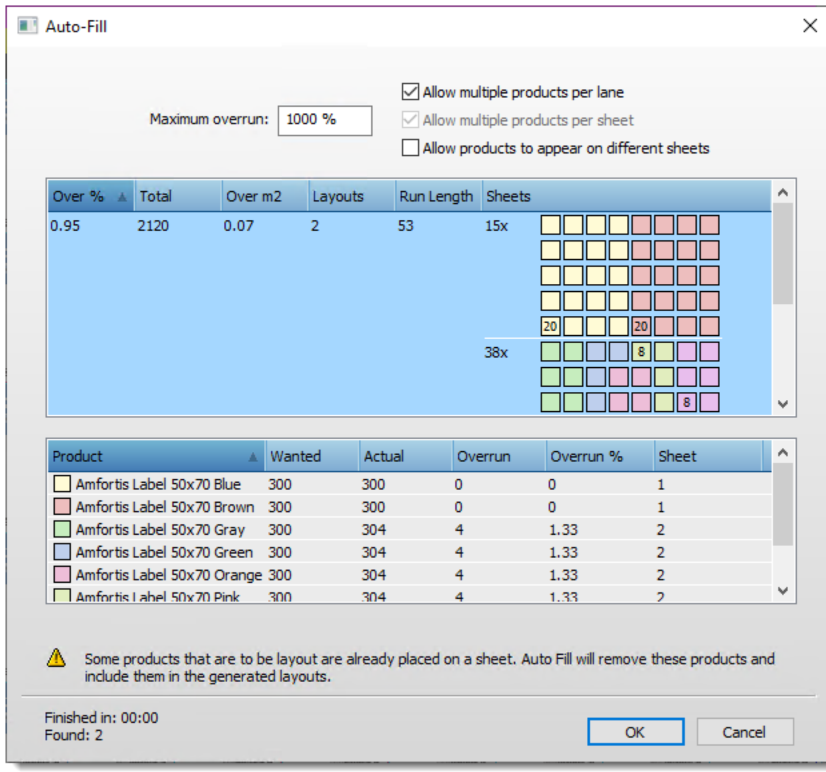
Auto-Fill Dialog Box

Auto-fill starts searching for solutions as soon as the dialog opens, using the options as they were set during the previous session.

The Solutions table shows the solutions that are found. It updates dynamically while the search continues. The search stops when there are no more combinations to try or when you apply a solution. The search restarts when you change the options. This clears the found solutions.

You can sort the solutions by clicking the columns and select a solution to show the product break-down in the Products table. The selected solution remains selected, even when the table gets updated.

Click the **OK** button to apply the selected solution. Apogee applies the selected solution using the current sheet and as many duplicates of it as needed. This includes the station numbers and marks that are on the sheet. In a Wide Format job, the extra sheets are placed on a Print Layout as instructed by the Layout Defaults inspector.



Max overrun
The allowed overrun, both per product and for the overall count, expressed in %. Default value is from the last session, 10% on the run.

Allow multiple products per lane
Defines whether each lane can have different products or not. Basically, this is the switch between sheet-printing and label-printing. This option is only enabled when **Allow multiple products per sheet** is on.

Allow multiple products per sheet
Defines whether a single sheet can have multiple products or not. Default value is from the last session, allow on first run.

Allow products to appear on different sheets
Defines whether a product may be placed on different sheets. This option is only enabled, when **Allow multiple products per sheet** is on. Default value is from the last session, allow on first run.

The Solutions table presents various aspects of each solution, including the product mix per sheet:

- Columns 1–3: Show the relative overrun, the total number of products printed, and the area used by the overrun.
- Columns 4–5: Indicate the number of layouts (i.e. different sheets) and the total run length.
- Last Column: Displays the layout, which depends on the type of filling:
    - In label printing, each column is represented by a single entry, meaning the entire sheet is shown as one row. The first cell in a range of identical products is numbered to indicate how many columns that product occupies.
    - In sheet printing, the solution is shown as a grid representing each frame.

The Product table displays each product's color patch, name, and requested copy count. Additional columns show the actual copy count, overrun (waste), and the sheet(s) on which the product appears in the selected solution. A "#" icon appears next to products that differ in size from the frame.

The bottom part of the Auto-Fill dialog box shows the search status and any warnings related to size differences.

Fix Bleed Overlaps

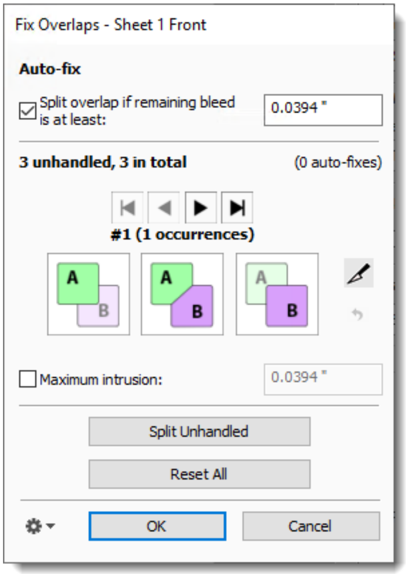
The Layout Editor by default splits the bleed area between products in the middle if the products are located too close to each other. In some cases you may want to override this behavior, e.g. the bleed of product A needs to be printed inside the flap of product B. This is done with the Fix Overlaps feature.

- Choose Sheet > Fix Bleed Overlaps to open the Fix Overlaps dialog

  OR

  Context-click the selected sheet and choose Fix Bleed Overlaps.

Fix Overlaps Dialog Box



The dialog shows the total number of times products overlap and the number of occurrences for each product overlap. You can cycle through the overlaps and choose whether A must overlap B, split A and B (no overlap), or B overlaps A. Choosing one of these options will fix all the occurrences of the overlap, and the wizard takes you to the next overlap. You can cut up a too large bleed zone into smaller ones by using the Slice tool. Click the **Split Unhandled** button, if you want to apply the second option (no overlap) to all the overlaps. Click the **Reset** button to start all over again. Open the cogwheel menu to continue fixing overlaps on other sheets (other side, next sheet, previous sheet).

Auto-fix

Auto-fix options specify how to split the overlaps, when the remaining bleed after fixing is at least the specified size. This allows the Layout Editor to handle most of the overlaps automatically.

Split overlap if remaining bleed is at least Select to split the overlap in two equal parts, if the remaining amount of bleed is at least equal to the specified minimum bleed.

Minimum bleed The minimum amount of bleed that is acceptable. The value must be smaller than or equal zero. This value does not affect manual splits. The minimum bleed is used to eliminate a number of overlaps to be reviewed.

Fixing the Current Overlap

This section allows you to handle the current overlap. The header shows the number of unhandled, total, and auto-fixed overlaps.

Navigation buttons Navigate between the overlaps. Using navigation buttons, you can select the first, previous, next or the last overlap.

Current overlap The sequence number of the current overlap and the number of identical overlaps on the sheet.

NOTE: The sequence numbering ignores the fixes that are made by auto-fix, if the Hide auto-fixes is set.

Method Define how to fix the current overlap. When you are on an overlap that is already handled, the button that corresponds with the selected action is selected. If the fix was made automatically, the label appears below the split-button.

- A over B: Adjust the bleed mask of frame B.
- Split: Adjust both masks.
- B over A: Adjust the bleed mask of frame A.
- Slice tool: Activate the Slice tool.

Slice tool You can slice an overlap that is too large to be handled with a single fix into two or more smaller ones. To slice a bleed overlap zone, navigate to the zone that needs cutting, activate the Slice tool, move to the location where you want the zone to be split and click at the location you want to slice the overlap zone. You can revert a sliced overlap by using the Revert icon.

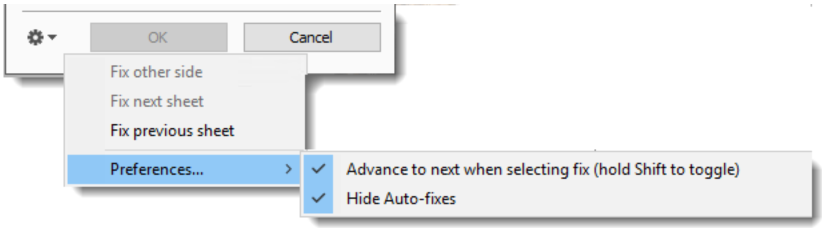
Maximum intrusion When set, allow the overlapping station to bleed into the station that is being overlapped, but not more than the specified value.

Split Unhandled Splits all unhandled overlaps. It is disabled, if all overlaps are handled.

Reset All Restores the working bleed mask to the raw bleed mask, e.g., it brings back all possible overlaps.

Cogwheel menu

You can open the cogwheel menu to continue fixing overlaps.



Fix other side The Layout Editor applies the selected fixes on the current side and moves to the other side of the sheet, option is disabled for a single-sided sheet.

Fix next sheet The Layout Editor applies the selected fixes on the current size and moves to the front of the next sheet, option is disabled when you are at the last sheet.

Fix previous sheet The Layout Editor applies the selected fixes on the current size and moves to the front of the previous sheet, option is disabled when you are at the first sheet.

Preferences

- Advance to next when selecting fix: When set, advance to the next overlap when you fix the current one. Otherwise, stay at the current fix.
- Hide Auto-fixes: When set, the overlaps that where fixed automatically are not included in the navigation. You can uncheck this option, if you want to review them.

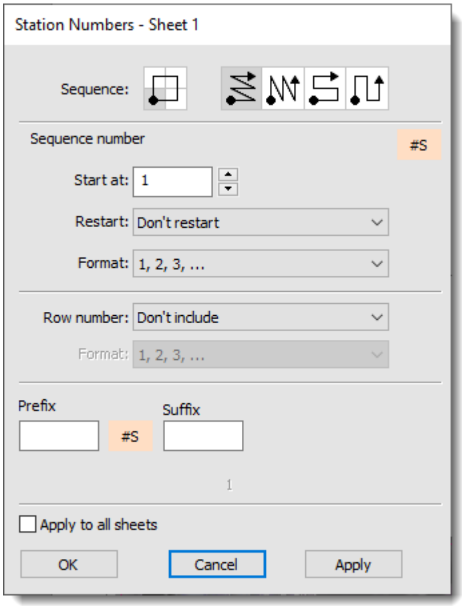
Place Station Numbers

Station numbers are sequence numbers that identify the stations (frames) on a sheet. They can be used to identify, after cutting, where a product was originally positioned on a sheet. The numbers appear in station number marks on the content (see "Station Number Mark Details" on page 418). Station numbers can be imported with a CAD file, defined in a template or set manually in the Product Editor (see "Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector" on page 210).

Station Numbers Dialog Box

This dialog allows you to specify a sequence for numbering stations and what the number consists of.

- Go to the sheet you want to number and choose Sheet > Station Numbers to open the Station Numbers dialog.



Sequence Click in the first icon to specify in which corner of the sheet the sequence will start. The other four icons will change accordingly. Click one of these four icons to specify the sequence horizontally and vertically and whether the numbering starts at the beginning of a row or column.

Start at Set the sequence number to be used for the first station and for the first station of each group, when you select to restart the numbering per row/column or product.

Restart Select one of the options to restart the sequence numbering:

- Don't restart: Do not restart the numbering. All stations will have continuous sequence numbers.
- Every (main direction): Restart the numbering per row or column, depending on the main direction (row/column) of the traversal sequence.
- Every product: Restart the numbering per product.

Format Select whether to print the sequence numbers as numbers or as letters (lower or uppercase).

Row/Column/Product number Select one of the following options to form the station number by combining the sequence number and the group number (row/column/product):

- Don't include: Do not include the row/column/product number.

  (prefix) (sequence-nr) (suffix)

- Before sequence: Print the row/column/product number before the sequence number.

  (prefix) (group-nr) (betweenix) (sequence-nr) (suffix)

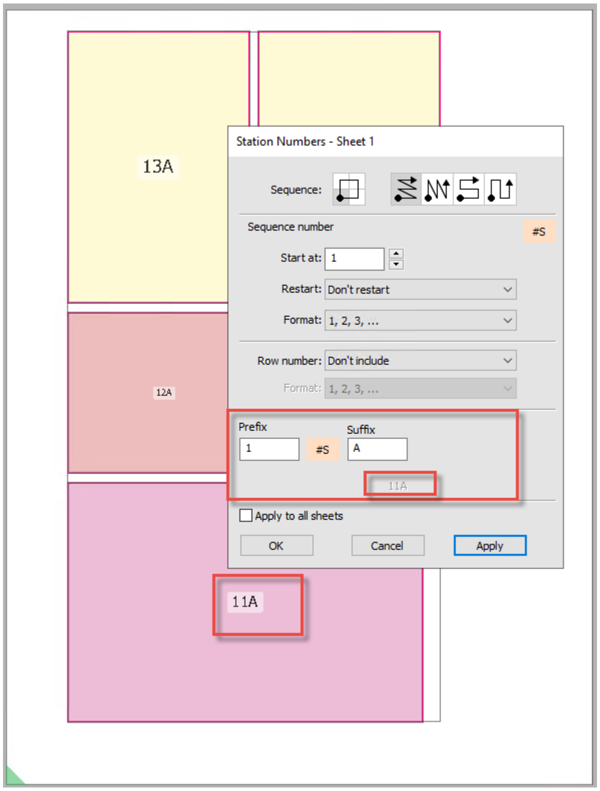
- After sequence: Print the row/column/product number after the sequence number.

  (prefix) (sequence-nr) (betweenix) (group-nr) (suffix)

Format Select whether to print the group (row/column/product) numbers as numbers or as letters (lower or uppercase).

Template Enter the Prefix and Suffix text. Default value is both prefix and suffix fields are empty. The **#S** and **#R/#C/#P** show the position of the sequence and group numbers.

An example of the station number of the first station in the sequence appears below the template field, using the specified formatting and template. Click the **Apply** button, to see how the rest of the frames will be numbered and apply the changes to the sheet.



Apply to all sheets Select this check box to apply the same station numbering to all sheets in the job.

View Options Palette

The View Options palette is used to show and hide the various components on the layout. The list of available options you see in the palette depends on the layout mode you are working in.

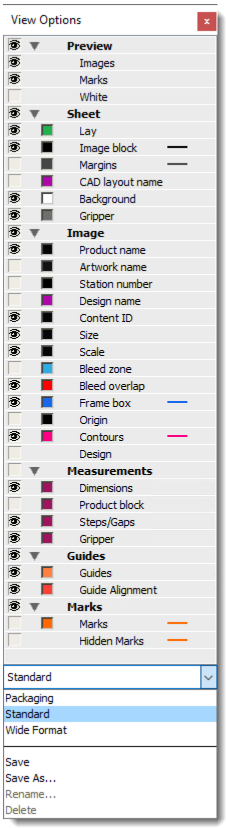
NOTE: Hiding content or marks with the View Options palette does not mean they will not be printed.

The following elements can be shown/hidden:

- Preview
  - Images: the content of the products placed on the sheet
  - Marks: the cutting marks selected for finishing, or other marks

  - White: the white layer of an image (or generated white)
  - Varnish: the varnish layer of an image (or generated primer)
- Sheet
  - Lay: triangle icon indicating the lay of the sheet
  - Image block: the bounding box enclosing all the products
  - Margins: the margin around the sheet as set in the Finishing inspector
  - CAD Layout name: the name of the CAD layout file or of the Sheet layout template
  - Background: the area of the sheet where no products are placed
  - Ink zone: the area on the print layout where printing will effectively occur, similar to the product bleed zone (only for Print Layout mode)
  - Gripper: the gripper zone of the selected Generic Press (hidden for Wide Format jobs)
- Image
  - Product name: the name of the product
  - Artwork name: the base name of the artwork on the currently viewed side, as shown in the Source list of the Product Editor.
  - Station number: the Station number of the frame
  - Design name: the name of the design as shown in the Source list of the Product Editor.
  - Tile number: on a tile, the tile number, row and column numbers
  - Content-ID: the content-ID of the frame, if set.
  - Size: the size of the frame on the sheet as (w) x (h) (units), with units being the same units as those in the Position bar.
  - Scale: the scale of the placed product, relative to its original size, as (hscale) x (vscale) %.

  - Bleed zone: the bleed path the Layout Editor always draws the actual bleed content)
  - Bleed overlap: the overlaps of the working bleed path
  - Frame Box: the bounding box of the frame (the frame box is always shown when the frame is empty, regardless of the state of this option).
  - Origin: the lower-left corner of the frame
  - Contours: the contour that is used for clipping. When an image has no contour-defining Operations assigned or when its **Clip to contour** option is off, the contour follows the frame.
  - Design: the paths and texts that associated with Operations that are present on the sheet and its products, using the appearance as defined in the Line Appearances set that is selected in the Client preferences.
- Printer (only for Print Layout mode)
  - Lay: the lay of the print layout that indicates the leading edge of the layout and the home position of the printer shuttle.
  - Background: representation of the surface of the printer bed or belt and more specifically the area where no printer sheets are placed
- Measurements
  - Dimensions: the dimensions of the printer's sheet or frames
  - Product block: the dimensions of the product block and the distances to the sheet edges
  - Steps/Gaps: the distance between the frames of two neighboring products, per pair of elements.
  - Gripper: the size of the gripper (only for Offset jobs)



- Guides
  - Guides: the guides on the sheet.
  - Guide Alignment: how closely the frames align to the guides
- Marks
  - Marks: the bounding box of the marks
  - Hidden Marks: marks that will not be printed due to conflicts; displayed in a red, hatched box

In the View Options drop-down list you can select, create, rename or delete preference sets for the View Options. These preference sets are also used to manage the Imposition Reports when generating and exporting the Job Reports. See “Job Report” on page 144.

▷ To show/hide content, rule-ups and marks

1. Click the Show/hide View Options button in the toolbar or choose Window > View Options to show the View Options palette.

2. Click the individual or group eye icons to show or hide the various rule-ups and marks.
3. Click the colored boxes to open a color editor where you can change the color of the rule-ups and measurements.
4. Click in the drop-down list at the bottom of the View Options palette to choose, create, rename or delete preference sets for the View Options.

Marks Palette

The Marks palette is used to place marks on a product or sheet interactively. In other words, these marks do not depend on the conditions of a Mark Set and they can be placed relative to any possible object on the product or sheet.

The palette contains the following marks categories:

- Image: e.g. Text, Line, Grommet, Crop
- Sheet: e.g. Text, Line, File, Cut, Registration, File

The various mark types in these categories are managed in the Mark Engraver Resource of the Impose Task Processor. Refer to “Mark Engraver” on page 395 and “Mark Types” on page 400 for more information about the different types of marks and their settings.

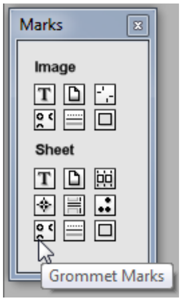
CAUTION: Marks placed interactively may be positioned at unexpected locations and on other sheets than the sheet you are working on.

▷ To place a mark interactively

1. Click the Marks button in the Toolbar or choose Window > Show Marks Palette to show the Marks palette.

   The Marks palette is displayed.



2 Hover over the icons to see what kind of marks are available.

3 Drag the required mark onto the Press Sheet and release the mouse button at the location where you want to place the mark.

If you select the Mark Inspector, you can see the default settings for the selected mark. See “Mark Inspector” on page 152.

4 Change the settings as required.

NOTE: Double-clicking a mark in the Marks palette also places the mark on the Press Sheet.

Layout Toolbar

Some of the tools described here may only be available in the Product Editor. You can also use shortcuts to activate the tools and these shortcuts are case-insensitive and some only require a single key. For example, type **Z** or **z** to activate the Zoom tool and then type **A** or **a** to return to the Selection tool.

Selection tool: To select a component or area and display its properties. This is the default tool.

Single Instance Selection tool: To select a single instance of marks which are placed at various locations, or part of a compound mark. In the Paths inspector: selects a path and its anchor points.

Pan tool: To pan layouts in the Layout Editor.

Zoom tool: To zoom into a specific area of a layout.

Frame tool: To draw empty frames on a sheet.

Measurements tool: Use this tool to make measurements on the Press Sheet.

Clear Measurements tool (only activated, if the sheet has measurements): Click to remove all measurements displayed on the Press Sheet.

View Options palette button: Shows/hides the View Options palette.

Marks palette button: Shows/hides the Marks palette.

Presets (licensed feature): To open the Presets dialog box.

Crop image: Activates the crop mode to crop an image (Image inspector in the Product Editor).

Split tool: Activates the Split tool to split an image into tiles (Tiling inspector in the Product Editor).

Pen tool: Activates the Pen for drawing free-form paths on an image and adding/deleting points of existing paths (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Ellipse Path tool: Activates the Ellipse Path tool to draw ellipse and circle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Rectangle Path tool: Activates the Rectangle Path tool to draw rectangle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Zoom slider with Zoom to fit and Zoom to maximum buttons, and drop-down list with zoom presets.

Snag List

The Snag List shows conflicts (errors and warnings) relating to the products in the Product panel or the placement of products on the sheet. These conflicts should be checked before submitting a job.

- The Snag List is opened by clicking a yellow warning icon or a red error icon

  The Snag List contains the following information:

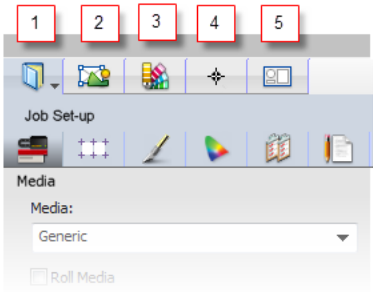
  - Left column - top pane: summary of all conflicts.
  - Left column - bottom pane: conflict categories sorted by severity with errors at the top and OK at the bottom.
  - Right column: conflicts of the selected category; some conflicts can be clicked to open a detailed report.

Inspectors

NOTE: Some of the inspectors may not be visible with your license.

NOTE: Most of the inspectors are available for both the Sheet Layout mode as well as the Print Layout mode, except where indicated otherwise.

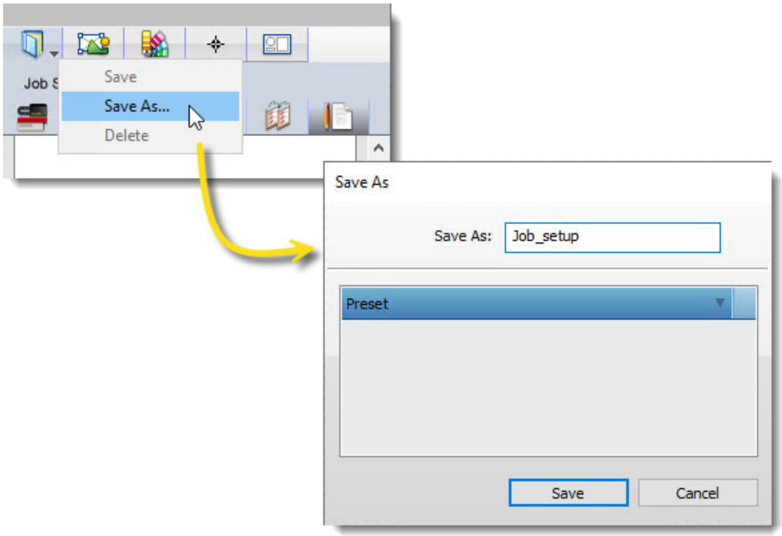
The panel on the right of the Layout Editor consists of a number of tabs and sub-tabs which are referred to as inspectors.



1. Job Set-Up Inspector
2. Frame/Product Inspector
3. Colors Inspector
4. Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only)
5. Sheet Inspector/Print Layout Inspector

Save, Save As and Delete Job Set-Up

- Click the black triangle next to Job Set-up icon to open a menu where you can save and delete a job set-up.



Job set-ups that you already saved appear at the top of the menu and can be applied to the current job.

Job Set-Up Inspector

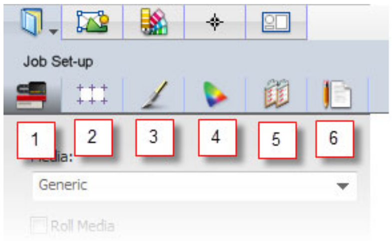
In the Job Set-Up tab, you define the job settings for all the sheets of a job.

- Click the open book icon to display the Job Set-Up.

This tab consists of the following inspector panels:

- Printing Set-Up (for Wide Format jobs)
- Layout Sheets (for Wide Format jobs))
- Finishing
- Color Management (for Wide Format jobs)
- Preflight (for Wide Format jobs)

- Job Identification



1 Printing Set-Up
2 Layout Sheets
3 Finishing
4 Color Management
5 Preflight
6 Job Identification

Printing Set-Up

In the Job Set-Up inspector, you choose the media, printing quality and printing device for your job.

NOTE: The Printing Set-up is only available for wide format jobs and wide format hot tickets.

Printer

In this panel you select the printing device.

Device A list of the printing devices which are available in your printing environment. The device you used for the last submitted job is displayed when you create a new job.

Media

In the Media panel you choose the media you want to print the job on and set its size.

Media This drop-down list displays all the available media, i.e. media for which Calibrated Printing Modes exist. See “Media Hub” on page 432. The media you used for the last submitted job is displayed when you create a new job.

Print on roll Select this check box if you want to use roll media. This disables the Height setting for the Size of the media as this is defined by the printing device, and filters the sizes you see in the Size drop-down list. When you add products to a layout, the height increases accordingly.

Size A drop-down list with all available sheet sizes. The last item in the list, Manage Sheet Sizes, is a shortcut to the Sheet Sizes resource. The width and height (W x H) of the sheet, and page orientation (Portrait or Landscape) are displayed under the drop-down list. You can also edit these fields to create a custom sheet size and save this custom size by choosing Save As in the drop-down list. When you change the size, the preview in the Layout Editor zooms the new size to fit the available preview area. See “Sheet Sizes” on page 485.

NOTE: Only one size can be set for the different sheets of a job.

NOTE: Choose a size which is smaller than the maximum size for the printing device to combine multiple sheets on a single print layout.

Thickness The thickness of the media. The default unit is micron; context-click in the box to change the unit: micron, mil, mm, inch.

Default Grain/Flute Choose the grain/flute direction of the current sheet; Short, Long, From size, or None.

Quality Select a quality level to suit the visual quality you expect from the printed result, depending on the selected printer (e.g. Standard or High Quality). Quality levels have corresponding Calibrated Printing Modes. See “Media Hub” on page 432.

Workstyle Select a workstyle for the selected printer:

- Sheetwise: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Sheetwise.
- Perfecting: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Perfecting.
- Turn: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Turn.
- Tumble: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Tumble.

Application

In the Application panel you choose how you want to handle printing with special colors: white ink, varnish and primer. The data for printing the special color can be generated by the printing device (on Printer) or by the system (Asanti). If you let Asanti do this, you can also set the opacity or have the ink choked or spread.

White Click the triangle to expand the panel. Select the check box if you are printing with white and choose the method:

from here:

- Fill (on Printer): The printing device fills the area of the product block (with bleed) with a solid layer of the special color.
- Mask (on Printer): The printing device prints dots under the color dots; non-ink zones in the product receive no ink. The density of the ink depends on the density of the color dots.
- Fill Entire Image (Asanti): Asanti fills the area of the product with the special color at a constant opacity. You can select the opacity.
- Solid Pixel Mask (Asanti): Asanti creates white image data underneath every pixel that is not empty (non-zero), empty pixels even surrounded with a solid pixel will not get white underneath.
- Solid Image Mask (Asanti): Asanti needs to create white image data underneath every pixel that is not empty and not surrounded by a solid pixel. Solid Image masks creates also white underneath zero (white) image pixels only if they are surrounded by a non-zero image pixel.
- Variable Pixel Mask (Asanti): Asanti creates white image data under every pixel that is not empty. Depending on the opacity of that pixel. The white layer beneath will have a similar opacity. (Pixel = density of 80%, white layer will get opacity of 80%).
- Inverse Variable Pixel Mask (Asanti): Same as Variable Pixel Mask, but with inverse white density (Pixel = density of 80%, white layer will get opacity of 20%).
- From Image (Asanti): The content of the product (usually a spot color) determines where to print and the density. The Opacity value scales the opacity values in the content file.

If one of the white printing modes is selected, you can also set how the white ink is applied:

- Pre-white: White is to be printed underneath the product. You first print the white on the media, then the product on top of the white. The most common application is to flood a non-white medium so the product can be printed on a white background.

- Post-white: White is to be printed on top of the product. You first print the product on the media, then print the white on top of the product. The most common application is to print a product on clear (transparent) material, where the white serves as the white background.

- Sandwich white: White is to be printed between a first and second print of the same product.

Spot color names can be mapped to white ink in the Colors inspector. See “Colors Inspector” on page 149.

Opacity The opacity of the special color. An opacity of 100% corresponds with the White density set in the CPM.

Apply Choke/Spread Choke and spread are deactivated by default.

Choke/Spread/Amount To change the direction and amount of choke or spread.

Opacity The opacity of the special color. An opacity of 100% corresponds with the White density set in the CPM.

Print primer Click the triangle to expand the panel. This panel is only visible if the printing device has a primer ink in its inkset. The settings are similar to the settings for white ink. Primer is printed before other layers.

Print varnish Click the triangle to expand the panel. This panel is only visible if the printing device has a varnish ink in its inkset. The settings are similar to the settings for white ink. Varnish is printed after other layers.

Calibrated Printing Mode

A list of calibrated printing modes (CPM) filtered by printing device, so you only see the modes which can be used with the specified device. Selecting a mode that has a different quality setting than what you specified in the Quality list, changes the Quality setting accordingly. See “Media Hub” on page 432 for more information about calibrated printing modes.

The following warnings in red are possible for this option:

- [Multiple]: multiple modes are suitable for the selected combination of printing device and quality, and the most suitable modes are displayed at the top of the list. Choose a mode.

- [No suitable CPMs]: no suitable modes exist for the selected combination of printing device and quality. Choose a mode and the quality and media will change accordingly.

Printer Parameters button This button is displayed when a printer and CPM are selected. Click the button to open the Printer Parameters for the selected printer:

- Print Mode Parameters
- Media Parameters

You can set and change the parameters specifically for the current job.

The gray asterisk icon next to the button turns red if the printer operator changed the printer settings on the machine. You can clear these changes made by the operator by clicking **Clear All On-Printer Changed Values**.

NOTE: Only for printers that support Asanti printer parameters.

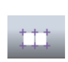
Media Deformation

Click the triangle to expand the panel. Select this check box to compensate for the stretching or shrinking of the media during printing and finishing. You must enter the percentage of stretching or shrinking and the system scales the product to compensate.

X (Shuttle) Enter the percentage that the media stretches/shrinks in the shuttle direction.

Y (Feed) Enter the percentage that the media stretches/shrinks in the feed direction.

Layout Sheets

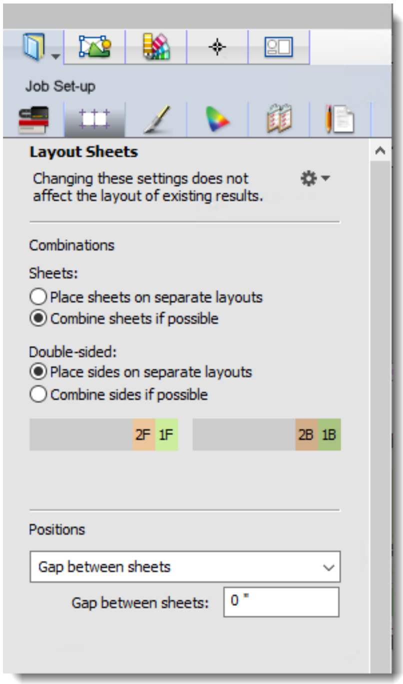


In this inspector you can modify the default placement of sheets (also referred to as ganging) on the print layout.

Any changes you make in this inspector do not affect the arrangement of sheets that are already ganged on the print layout. However, you can apply new settings to placed sheets with the rearrange or remake commands.

It is possible to specify different setting while working on the same print layout, and these new settings apply for subsequent sheets you place on the print layout.

NOTE: The Layout sheets section is only available for wide format jobs and wide format hot tickets.



Combinations

Combinations controls how the ganging algorithm combines sheets on a Print Layout.

Sheets This option defines whether different Sheet Layout can be placed on the same Print Layout (pair) or not.

- Place sheets on separate layouts: Place different Sheet Layouts on separate Print Layout (pairs).
- Combine sheets if possible: Allow to place different Sheet Layouts on the same Print Layout (pair).

NOTE: Single- and double-sided Sheet Layouts are never combined.

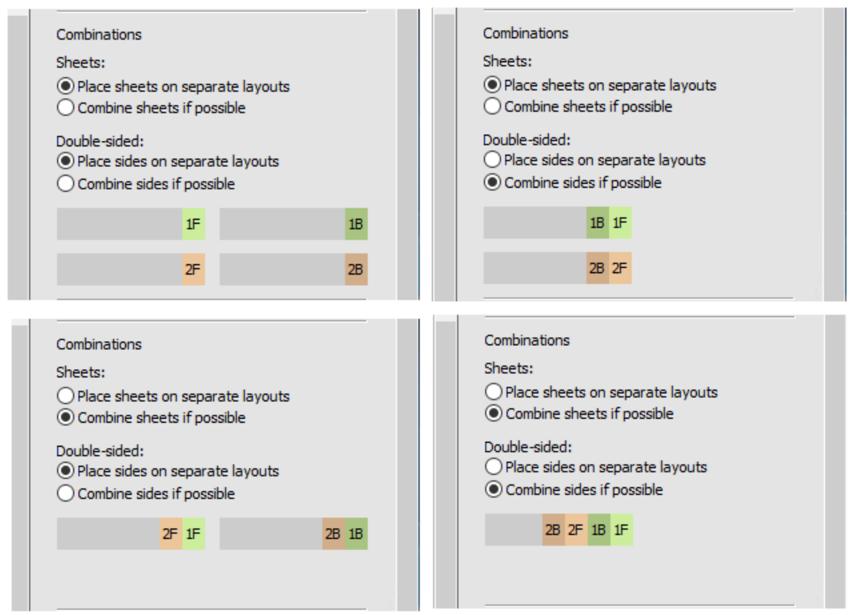
Sides This option defines whether flats of the same side (front or back) can be placed on the same Print Layout or not.

- Place sides on separate layouts: Place the front and back sides on the front- and back Print Layouts of a Print Layout-pair. The front sides are placed on the front Print Layout and the back sides are placed on the back Print Layout.

- Combine sides if possible: Combine front and back flats on the front Print Layout.

NOTE: This option is hidden, when double-sided printing is not allowed.

The default value is to place sheets and sides on separate Print Layouts. This corresponds with the Single sheet per layout in previous versions.



Positions

The Positioning selects the method that is used to define the stops, i.e., the points that can be used to align the sheets with.

Align the nearest stop

Position the sheets against a repeating set of stops, keeping a minimum distance between them, starting at the home position.

- Stops every: The distance between every stop. A stop can be a registration pin or an easy to set/measure marker on the printer’s ruler. The first stop is the printer’s lay itself.
- Minimum gap width: The distance to keep between adjacent sheets.

Gap between sheets

Position each sheet at a fixed distance from the previous one, starting at the home position. This is the default positioning method when combining items.

- Gap between sheets: The distance to keep between adjacent sheets.

▷ Rearrange and remake the print layout

The following commands are available on the cogwheel menu and Print Layout file menu:

- Rearrange Sheets: Applies the current settings in the inspector to the current layout.
- Rearrange All Sheets in Job: Applies the current settings in the inspector to all layouts.
- Remake All Print Layouts: Deletes all layouts and remakes the layouts according to the inspector settings.

Finishing

In this inspector you can choose your cutting device, set margins and generate a cutting file for a digital cutting/routing device if required. See also "Finishing Hub" on page 385 for more information about finishing.

Cutter

The drop-down list includes the cutting device brands (Fotoba, Zünd, etc.) installed with your resources. Depending on the type of cutter, Asanti either draws the necessary cutting marks on the sheet, creates a cutting file with the cutting path, or both.

Finishing Margins

Margins are indicated with magenta snap guides when you drag a product next to other products.

- ♦ Click the gray arrow button to open the Finishing Margins dialog box and set a custom value for margins on all sides or selected sides of all the products, or choose a preset from the drop-down list. The presets are created in the Finishing Hub. See "Finishing Hub" on page 385 for more information.

NOTE: Changing the margins value does not reposition products already placed on the sheet.

Cutting Files

Mirror cutting files

Select to mirror the entire layout in the cutting file, for example if the media will be cut on the back side of the sheet.

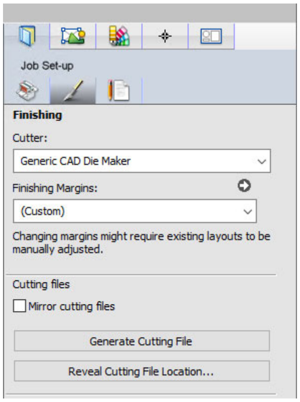
Generate Cutting File (button)

Click this button to generate a cutting file which is used to route certain cutting devices. A 1-page PDF document is created for each sheet and contains registration marks and cutting lines or a cutting path, but not the actual content.

The cutting files are saved immediately in the FinishingRoot folder in your system directory – before you actually submit the job. When you submit the job, you can choose to send the cutting file to the cutter.

Subsequent cutting files that you may create for a job are saved with an incremental suffix.

This button also allows you to generate and export a CAD file for a Packaging job which was not created with a CF2/DXF file, by selecting the **Generic CAD Die Maker** option as a cutter type.



NOTE: A cutting file is only generated for devices that require a separate file for registration and routing. For example, the Fotoba cutting lines are printed on the sheet so a cutting file with extra cutting marks is not necessary.

Reveal Cutting File Location (button)

Click this button to display the directory in which the cutting file is created.

The buttons are disabled if no cutting device is selected.

Bleed/Mask

Amount

The bleed, i.e. content that goes beyond the trim size, is the same for all products as inherited from the job ticket. You can set a different bleed that you want to render for the selected product here. Leave the link icon closed to set the same bleed on all sides or open the link icon if you want to enter specific values for Left, Right, Top or Bottom.

Content

From the drop-list you can specify when bleed is created by the system or taken from the bleed area available in the image file. These options are mainly relevant for images which have a bleed area present in the image file. Only the first and the last options are relevant if the image has no bleed area.

- None: Sets the maximum bleed to 0 even if bleed is provided in the image file. The bleed box coincides with the canvas extension box or the product size.
- From image, fixed size: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed you specified or only what is available if the bleed in the image is less than the specified bleed.
- From image, create if needed: The system uses the bleed in the image file if it is equal or greater than the specified maximum bleed; if the image bleed is less than the specified bleed, the system creates the bleed and does not use the image bleed.
- Always create bleed: The system creates the maximum bleed, effectively replacing any bleed in the image file.

Default Bleed Overlap Handling

If products are placed too close to each other on the sheet, the available area for bleed is distributed (split) evenly between the products. This is the default behavior with the **Automatically split bleed overlaps** check-box enabled.

NOTE: This default bleed overlap handling can be overridden whereby you choose which product will have its bleed run over the other product. See “Fix Bleed Overlaps” on page 116.

Color Management

Select one of the color management options to control how your products are rendered. This option is especially important for controlling the output of different kinds of products.

NOTE: The Color Management section is only available for wide format jobs and wide format hot tickets.

Full gamut Converts all input color values directly to the color space of the printing device, skipping the output intent of the product.

Simulate Allows you to choose a standard output intent or use the output intent of the product. The Simulation drop-down list displays the available output intents.

Decide per document This mode uses *Full gamut* when it's safe to do so, and switches to *Simulate* when it's not safe.

No CMS No color management is applied.

- Click the pencil icon to open the Input Tagging dialog box and edit the action list.

  In this dialog box you can control how input color values are converted to produce the actual output with the default action list. If you change any of the settings, the action list is indicated with an asterisk in the inspector. Click the Revert arrow icon if you want to restore the values to those of the action list.

Preflight

NOTE: The Preflight section is only available for wide format jobs and wide format hot tickets.

Check product resolution Select this check box to check the resolution of placed products, taking into account the scaling and the expected quality. Warnings will be displayed when necessary.

Preflight Choose a Preflight parameter set from the drop-down list to display Action lists and select/clear the action check boxes as required. Type in the search box to filter the Action List. Choose Manage Preflight Parameter Sets to edit or create parameter sets. See "Apogee Preflight Action Lists" on page 358. Click the arrow icon next to an action list to edit the action list for the current job. An asterisk indicates that the action list has been modified.

Job Identification

Name The order name identifies your job in the Job List. If you do not enter a name here, the job appears in the Job List as *Untitled* if no products have been uploaded for the job, or the name of the first file in your products list is re-used for the job name.

Order number An order number is optional but can be useful to group jobs that are assigned the same number in the Job List.

Remarks Enter any special comments that apply to this job.

Recurring job Select this check box to set the job is a recurring job to prevent deleting automatically.

PrintSphere

Select the **Allow uploading via** PrintSphere check box to enable remote users to upload files for a job via the PrintSphere service. If you choose a known company in the Customer panel, the Assign button is enabled so you can designate collaborators. Alternatively, you can specify occasional *guest* users in the Job List by context-clicking a job and choosing **Invite** PrintSphere **Uploader**.

Print Center

This option is only visible if you have the relevant license to work with multiple Print Centers. These are printing companies or other service providers belonging to the same organization and that can use Asanti independently from each other. Choose a Print Center from the drop-down list to manage the Customers, Customer's staff and Printer's staff for that particular Print Center.

Customer

In this panel you can provide information about the customer and the collaborators who will work on the job at hand (optional). You can select a known company from the Company drop-down list. A known company is a customer which has been defined with all its users and their contact details in the WebApproval (ProductionCenter) or PrintSphere applications. Your own company and staff are also set up in these applications. See the online help of these applications for more information. If you do not select a known company and the Company field is blank, you can fill in the contact details (name, email and phone no.) of the customer for this job.

Printer's Staff and Customer's Staff

After selecting a known company, you are presented a list of Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff that you can designate to collaborate on this job. If you did not select a company, you only see your own staff. Each collaborator in the Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff lists can have one or more roles which are activated by clicking the icons in the Roles column. The roles are *Approver, Uploader*, and *Viewer*. Select the **Uploader can place files** check box if you want to allow Uploaders to place files in the run list of a WebApproval job. You can change the role of the default collaborators by clicking these icons.

In addition, collaborators in the Printer's Staff list can be a *candidate Customer Service Representative (CSR)* or a *preferred CSR*. Clicking the candidate CSR icon changes the role of the collaborator to preferred CSR and vice versa. More than one preferred CSR can be assigned to a job.

Add Guest

Use this button to add guests to collaborate on this job. Enter the person's e-mail and select the **User Roles: Uploader** check-box if you want this person to upload files for the job. Click the Add Guest button to create the guest who is subsequently added to the list of Customer's Staff.

NOTE: Once the job is submitted you can no longer edit the Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff lists.

When you select a company from the Company drop-down list, Asanti looks up the name in the Accounts resource and the PrintSphere application to see if the account is active or inactive. This status is indicated at the bottom of the Customer Contact dialog box.


PrintSphere account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.


PrintSphere account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

Job Priority

This option allows you to select the job priority. The following options are available from the drop-down list:

- Low
- Normal (the default priority)
- High

You can change the priority afterwards if needed.

Milestone

This optional information can help you keep track of jobs. Selecting the check box activates the Due Date drop-down list with the following options:

- Today
- Tomorrow
- End of week
- Beginning of next week

You can fine-tune the date by clicking the calendar icon, and also change the default time.

NOTE: Setting a due date does not affect the actual processing of a job by the Asanti system.

When Job Finishes

Notify Select this check box to send an informational notification, when the job is finished.

Archive Select this check box to automatically archive this job when it has been successfully completed. The archive location is set during installation.

Delete Select this check box to automatically delete this job when it has been successfully completed. You have the following options:

- After a specified time (hours/days)
- Immediately

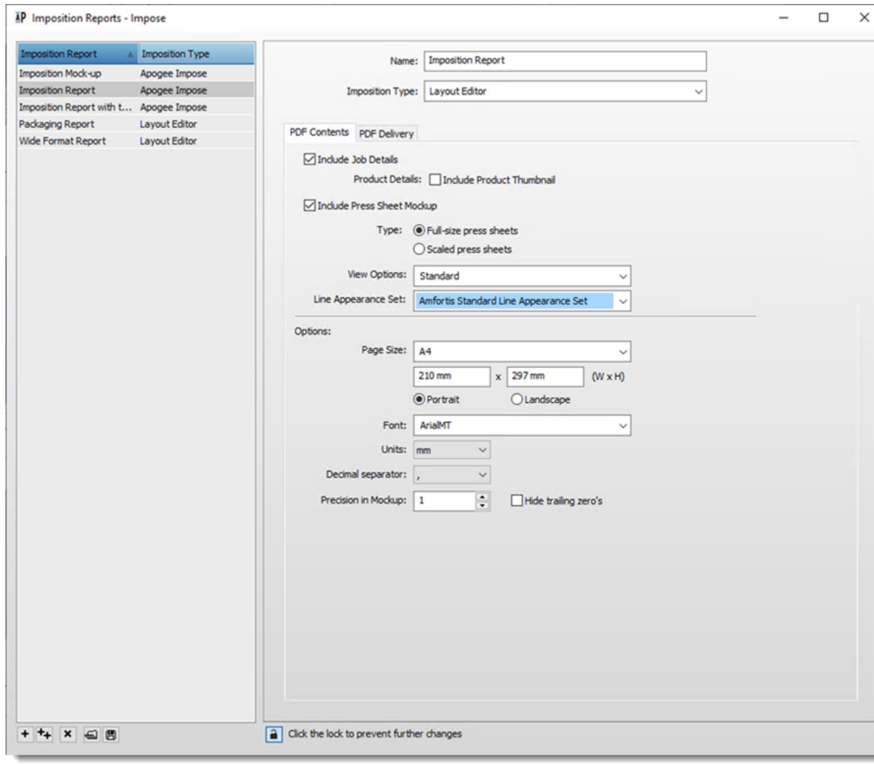
Notifications

E-mail notification to Select this check box to send an informational notification, when the job is finished. You can enter the e-mail addresses in the field that appears below, separating them with commas.

Job Report

Select one of the Imposition Report Resources from the drop-down menu to use. The last option **Manage Imposition Reports** opens the **Impose Reports - Impose** dialog box to manage the Imposition Report Resources.

This dialog box allows you to create presets that must be selected to generate an Imposition Report. You can specify whether to include a job details section, a mock-up section, or both.



Export automatically Select this check box to let the Apogee system create the Imposition Report automatically, when the job is submitted with an imposition.

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

Export and Open Click this button to create the Imposition Report interactively. The Layout Editor generates the report and opens it.

Frame/Product Inspector

The Frame/Product inspector displays the specifications of products selected in the Product panel or on a layout, and allows you to modify them.

- Click the product icon to display the product inspector.

NOTE: Modifications made in the inspector do not affect products already placed on a layout.

Selection

Title The title shows the type of the selected item(s); Product, Frame, Group, Grid, CAD group, Mixed selection, Embedded product, or No selection.

Size The size of the selected item(s). The size of a placed product can be different from that of the original product or that of other places copies, unless the product is uniform.

Design The Design shows the name of the design and its origin.

Station The station number of the frame displays the current station number. You can change the station number.

Content ID The frame content ID which is only active when a product or frame is selected on a sheet. If the frame contains a product, you cannot edit this box because the sheet is locked. In this case you will see the locked frame icon next to the box.

Original

This section shows the name, copy count, the size-breakdown and the lowest printed resolution of the product when the selected item(s) refer to a single product.

Product name The name of the product. Click the gray arrow next to the file name to open the Fitting Options where you can modify the cropping and fitting settings for a product selected on the sheet. See “Fitting Options Dialog Box” on page 91.

Copies Enter the total number of copies of the selected product that you want to print, i.e. the number of copies on all the layouts multiplied by the run length.

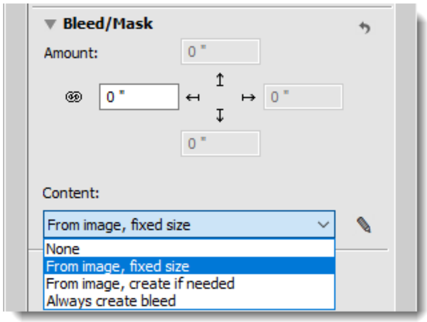
NOTE: This is not the number of products on the current sheet.

Size The dimensions of the original product. If the product has been edited in the Product Editor, the most recent product size (with crop and scale) is specified instead of the original product size.

Edit product button Opens a product selected in the list of products in the Product Editor.

Bleed/Mask

Amount The bleed, i.e. content that goes beyond the trim size, is the same for all products as inherited from the job ticket. You can set a different bleed that you want to render for the selected product here. Leave the link icon closed to set the same bleed on all sides or open the link icon if you want to enter specific values for Left, Right, Top or Bottom.



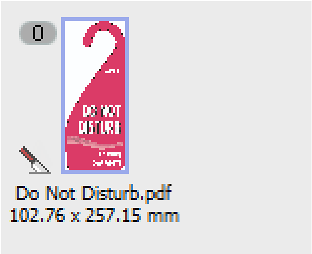
Content From the drop-list you can specify when bleed is created by the system or taken from the bleed area available in the image file. These options are mainly relevant for images which have a bleed area present in the image file. Only the first and the last options are relevant if the image has no bleed area.

- None: Sets the maximum bleed to 0 even if bleed is provided in the image file. The bleed box coincides with the canvas extension box or the product size.
- From image, fixed size: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed you specified or only what is available if the bleed in the image is less than the specified bleed.
- From image, create if needed: The system uses the bleed in the image file if it is equal or greater than the specified maximum bleed; if the image bleed is less than the specified bleed, the system creates the bleed and does not use the image bleed.
- Always create bleed: The system creates the maximum bleed, effectively replacing any bleed in the image file.

You can fine-tune or change the behavior by clicking the pencil icon next to the bleed types to open the Bleed Generator dialog box. See “Bleed Generator” on page 191.

Finishing

Clip to contour Select this check box in the Finishing panel to crop and clip the product to the contour instead of to the frame. Leave unchecked, if you do not want to clip to contours. The default behavior can be changed in the Contour Preferences in the cogwheel menu (Set ‘Clip to Contour’ on new products). If the product has a finishing operation path and this option is selected, the cut path icon is displayed next to the product in the Product panel.



Finishing A list of finishing operations that apply for the product. The table shows how Content Elements of the product (spot colors) are mapped to operations. Click the Add button to add operations, or click the cogwheel to open a menu where you can add, edit, delete, reapply finishing operations and open the Finishing Hub. See “Finishing Hub” on page 385 for more information.

Product operations A summary of the product edits made in the Product Editor: canvas extensions, grommets and tiling.

Colors Inspector

The Colors inspector displays the color settings for all the colors used in the job.

♦ Click the color book icon to display the colors inspector.

Colors

The colors in the Colors list are initially, i.e. before products are uploaded, the colors defined for the printing device – generally CMYK and White, Primer and Varnish for certain devices. Additional colors (e.g. spot colors) appear in the list as you upload products.

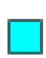
Additional colors can be mapped to output colors by choosing the color in the list, clicking the **Print as** check box and choosing a color from the drop-down list, or a new **Color from Color Books**.

The list may also contain one or more *finishing colors* which means that a spot color in the product has been identified for use as a finishing operation. See “Finishing Hub” on page 385 for more information about finishing operations, and the “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 145 to see how spot colors are mapped to finishing operations.

Colors inspector icons

 The color will be printed/output (‘Print as’ check box selected).

 The color will not be printed/output (‘Print as’ check box not selected).

 The color is a process color or will be printed as a process color.

 The color is a spot color, varnish or white.

 The color is mapped to a color from a color book.

 The color is taken from the application.

 The color is mapped to a finishing operation.

 The color is mapped to a custom color.

 The color is mapped automatically as defined for the colors of the device.

 The color is mapped to and depends on another color in the list.

Default Color Policies

The Keep/Convert option determines whether to print colors that are not yet listed as spot colors or as process colors:

Keep as spot: Prints the color as a spot color.

Convert to CMYK: Prints the color with process colors.

Notify: Sends a ‘User interaction’ message. You must manually select how to print the color.

NOTE: This option is only available for offset printing. In a job all new colors are printed as process colors, unless they are recognized as a special color (White, Varnish, etc.) or as a finishing operation.

Emulate Overprint emulates the overprint behavior of colors whose color policy has been changed, for example when spot colors are printed with process colors. Changing the policy may require reprocessing.

- Never emulate overprint: Don’t emulate overprint.
- Always emulate overprint: Emulate overprint
- Automatically emulate overprint: Apogee decides whether to emulate overprint or not.

Color Definitions

This section specifies how and from where Asanti will retrieve its color definitions. You have three search options:

Color Books only Apogee searches the specified books. The job will fail if the color is not found in the any of the selected books.

Color Books, then Application CMYK Same as above, but now Apogee will also use the application values if the color is not found in the books.

Application CMYK, then Color Books

Asanti uses the application values, unless the application does not supply the values. Asanti will then search the books.

NOTE: When this option is selected, the application might find a color in a different color space. In this case, there is a color space conflict.

Books

Clicking the Books button displays the book selection window. The table shows all the available books that can be searched.

You can select or clear the check box next to the book's name to either include the book in or exclude it from the search. You can also change the search order by using the up and down arrows or by dragging and dropping.

Trapping

Choose a trapping parameter set from the drop-down list or click the arrow to specify custom settings.

Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only)

NOTE: The Mark Sets tab controls marks for the selected sheet and/or selected products, not for the entire job.

- Click the marks icon to display the marks sets inspector.

This tab consists of the following inspector panels:

- Mark Sets
- Mark Inspector

Mark Sets

In the Mark Sets tab you can choose to place Image marks or Press Sheet marks on the selected products or current sheet.

Image Marks for selected products

Select the check boxes to place sets of marks on the selected product, e.g.:

- apply Grommet marks along the sides of all the products on a sheet
- place text marks on all the products on a sheet

Press Sheet Marks for all layouts in job

Select the check boxes to place sets of marks on the selected sheet, e.g.:

- apply Grommet marks along the sides of a sheet
- apply cutting marks for different cutting devices and override the Finishing inspector

Press Sheet Marks for press sheets in job

Select the check boxes to place sets of marks on the selected sheet, e.g.:

- apply Color Bars along the press sheet
- place text marks on the press sheet.

Select the **Apply changes to all products/layouts in job** if you want the selected marks to appear throughout the job.

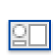
Mark Inspector

This tab shows the details of the selected mark. You can edit the settings for the selected mark. See “Mark Engraver” on page 395 for more information about the different types of marks and their settings.

Click the cogwheel and select Manage Mark Sets to open the Mark Engraver. See “Mark Engraver” on page 395 for more information. The cogwheel also has a command to switch off all the mark sets.

Sheet Inspector

♦ Click the layout icon to display the layout inspector.



Sheet

Sheet number and lock status
A sheet can be locked or unlocked as indicated by the black lock icon. Click the lock to change its status.

Copy Count
The total number of sheets to be printed to accommodate the requested copy count of products.

Media
As chosen in the job set-up.

Sheet Size
The dimensions of the sheet.

A drop-down list with all available sheet sizes. The last item in the list, Manage Sheet Sizes, is a shortcut to the Sheet Sizes resource. The width and height (W x H) of the sheet are displayed under the drop-down list. You can also edit these fields to create a custom sheet size and save this custom size by choosing Save As in the drop-down list. When you change the size, the preview in the Layout Editor zooms the new size to fit the available preview area. See “Sheet Sizes” on page 485.

NOTE: Only one size can be set for the different sheets of a job.

NOTE: Choose a size which is smaller than the maximum size for the printing device to combine multiple sheets on a single print layout.

Grain/Flute Choose the grain/flute direction of the current sheet; Short, Long, From size, or None.

Workstyle Shows the actual workstyle for the selected printer.

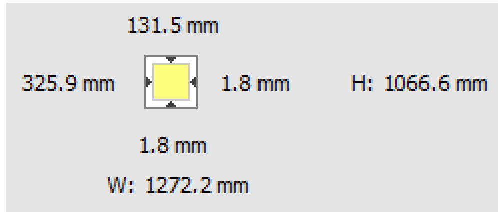
NOTE: The setting is shown for reference only and cannot be modified.

Side lay Shows the side-lay that is used to align the sheet to the printer’s side-lay:

- Right (from press): As defined in the Press parameter set.
- Left (Drive side): Printer lay is on the left.
- Right (Operator side): Printer lay is on the right.

Image Area The width and height of the product box, i.e. the area to effectively be printed. This area on the sheet is shown in a small diagram with the distance to the edges of the sheet. This is meant to give you an idea of the position of the print area on the sheet:

  - positive distance: the print area is inside the sheet
  - 0: the area is exactly on the edge of the sheet
  - negative distance: the area is outside the sheet



If all the values are positive, the print area is yellow; if one of the values is negative, the area is magenta.

Cut File Operations

Operation Shows the collected Operations from the products that are on the sheet, e.g. Crease, Through Cut, Print Registration.

Print Layout Inspector

Print Layout

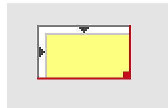
Run Length The number of times the print layout needs to be printed to obtain the copy count of products:

- By default: equal to the sheet copy count because a single print layout is initially created for every sheet
- multiple identical sheets on a print layout: the copy count divided by the number of sheets on the print layout
- different sheets on a print layout: the sum of the run length for each individual sheet

Media, Thickness, Size As chosen in the job set-up. The height is not shown for roll media.

Print Area The area to effectively be printed. This area is shown in a small diagram with the distance to the edges of the print layout. This is meant to give you an idea of the position of the print area on the printer bed:

- yellow: the print area is inside the printer bed
- magenta: the print area is on the edge or outside the printer bed and at least one sheet will be printer borderless



Start Printing The coordinates of the corner of the printing area that is closest to the home position.

End Printing The coordinates of the corner containing the last pixel to be printed diagonally opposite to the starting point

Media

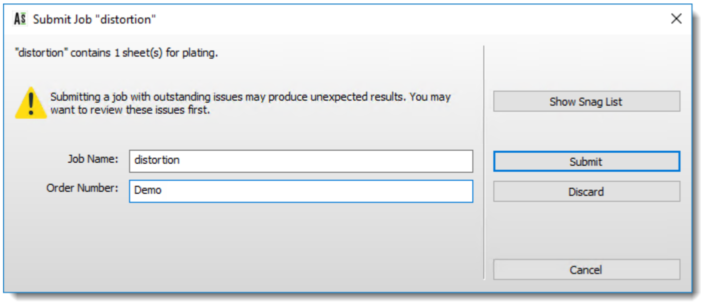
Sheet list A table which lists all the sheets on the print layout, with their position along the horizontal and vertical axes of the print layout (relative to the printer, and their size. The same color code is used for the position. The green border indicates the lay.

Sheet	Position (X, Y)	Size (X x Y)
1. Sheet 2	0, 0 mm	1000 x 700 mm
2. Sheet 2	0, 700 mm	1000 x 700 mm
3. Sheet 2	0, 1400 mm	1000 x 700 mm
4. Sheet 2	245, 2100 mm	1000 x 700 mm

Applying Changes and Submitting a Job

Submitting a Job

After placing your products on the sheet, reviewing the print layout, and completing the job set-up, you can submit the job by clicking the **Submit Job** button in the bottom right corner. Submitting a job also creates previews if you chose not to generate previews while preparing the job.



The Submit Job dialog box displays the Job name, and Order number.

Show Snag List

When you want to submit a job that has warnings, Layout Editor asks you to confirm the submission. Clicking the **Show Snag List** button closes the submission dialog and opens the Snag List. The Snag List shows conflicts (errors and warnings) relating to the products in the Product panel or the placement of products on the sheet. See “Snag List” on page 128 for more information.

Submit button

Click the **Submit** button to confirm your changes to the job. The Layout Editor closes and the actions you selected for the print files and cutter files are executed. The job is updated in the Jobs list.

Discard/Delete Job button

If the job has not yet been submitted you will see the **Delete Job** button. Clicking this button will delete the job. If the job has already been submitted and you were making additional changes to the job, you will see the **Discard** button. Clicking this button closes the Layout Editor without saving your changes to the job.

Cancel button

Click the **Cancel** button to return to the Layout Editor without confirming your changes.

DQS Indicator

The DQS indicator is visible in the bottom right corner if DQS, or Digital Quick Strip, is enabled. The indicator informs whether DQS is active and at what level (product or sheet). Hover over the indicator to see the status tooltip.

The DQS feature is enabled automatically if duplicate content is found in the job. If the same product is placed multiple times, it is quicker to render it once and then compose the raster data.

- Click the DQS indicator to open the DQS menu and select a level to override the automatic application of DQS:

Image DQS (green) This level of DQS renders the product once.

Sheet DQS (yellow) This level creates and renders a Print Layout as a collection of Sheet Layouts.

DQS not possible (white) DQS is enabled but not beneficial.

No DQS (red bar) DQS is switched off although it is available.

Automatic The system has determined that DQS should be enabled.

NOTE: The printer may also have a DQS option.

Sheet Layout Templates

Sheet layout templates help you apply a standard sheet layout to several sheets in the same job or to the sheets of different jobs. A template consists of empty frames that are used as placeholders for arranging products on the sheet.

A template applies the following settings to the current sheet:

- The width and height of the Sheet
- The frames on the sheet and their properties; embedded designs, associated products, Fitting Options, orientation and mirroring, location and size, Content ID and Station number
- Frame groups and their properties; Grids. CAD layout groups. regular frame groups
- The special mark(s) that holds the non-product CAD-lines
- Manually added Image and Sheet marks
- Altered Sheet and Image-mark sets. These are mark sets that have any of the following alterations; forced activation state, removed marks, modified marks
- The bleed mask of front and back, if present
- Products that are associated with the frames on that sheet, and their associations; the design, if present, manually drawn paths and their operation assignments, such as ink-free zones, manually placed Product marks, all image operations, all Guidelines.

Related topics:

- Working with Frames on page 87
- Naming frames (content IDs) on page 96
- Layout Panel on page 79
- Placing Products Interactively on page 82

▷ Create a template from an existing sheet with placed products

You can create a sheet layout template by saving a sheet that you prepared for a particular job. This will probably be a layout with placed products. Saving as a template removes the products and creates a layout with just the frames.

1 Go to the sheet that you want to save as a template and select the Sheet Size.

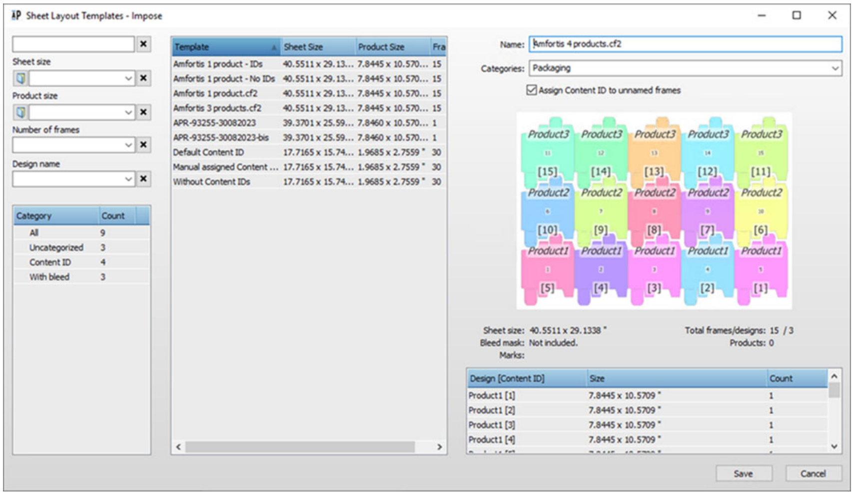
Make sure all the settings for the individual frames are fine-tuned.

2 Choose Sheet > Save Sheet Layout Template.

3 In the dialog box, enter the following information:

- Name: type a descriptive name for the template
- Categories: assign a category or enter a new category
- Assign Content IDs: Select this check box to name the frames on your template. If the frames of your layout contain products, each frame is assigned a unique content ID but frames that contain the same product are assigned the same ID.

NOTE: If the layout contains a combination of named and unnamed frames, the IDs of the named frames are used for the named frames and the unnamed frames are not assigned an ID.

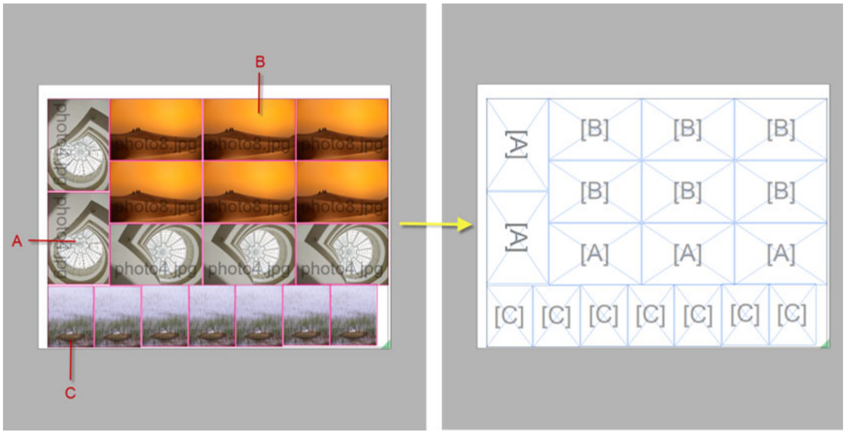


4 Click **Save**.

The dialog box closes and you can continue working in the Layout Editor. If you want to check that your template has been saved, follow the procedure to apply a template and you will see your new template in the list of templates. If you want to check that your template has the desired frames and content IDs, apply the template to a new layout sheet.

NOTE: Your sheet must have at least one product or frame, otherwise the template is not saved and will not appear in the list of templates.

Figure 3.14: A sheet with placed products saved as a template with content IDs

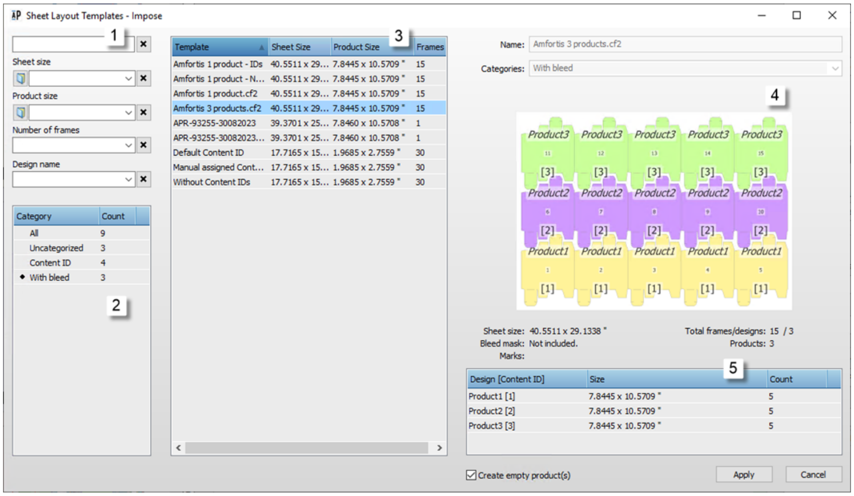


▷ Apply a Sheet Layout Template

CAUTION: Applying a sheet layout template erases all the placed products and frames from the current sheet. In other words, the template is applied to the sheet, not to its content.

1 On the current sheet or a new sheet, choose Sheet > Apply Sheet Layout Template.

Figure 3.15: Sheet Layout Template



1 Filter Panel
2 Category Filter
3 Template List
4 Attribute Panel
5 Design List

The **Filter Panel** shows the attributes that you can use to filter the list of templates. You can search for the Name, Sheet size, Product size, Number of Frames, and Design name.

The **Category Filter** is a list that shows all categories from the templates that match the filter, sorted by ascending alphabetical order.

The **Template list** shows the templates that match all filters.

The **Attribute** panel shows the attributes of the selected template:

- When you’re saving a sheet, the Attribute panel shows the attributes of the sheet being saved, as it will be saved as a Sheet Layout Template.
- When you’re managing Sheet Layout Templates or applying a Sheet Layout Template, the Attribute panel shows the attributes of the template that is selected in the Template list.

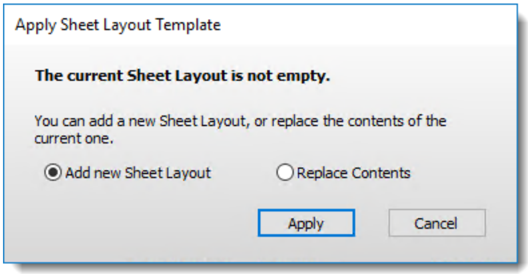
The **Design list** of shows a list of combinations of designs and content IDs, together with the size and count of each combination.

Create empty product(s) check box allows to place products immediately on the Sheet Layout, when you import new products via the **Add Artwork** context menu option (for the Empty products).

NOTE: As the Product Marks and Ink-Free zones (User paths) are defined on the Products, you need to enable the **Create empty product(s)** in order to have the marks and zones applied.

2 Select the template you want to use and click **Apply** or double-click it.

When attempting to apply a Sheet Layout Template to a non-empty Sheet Layout, Apply Sheet Layout Template dialog box appears.

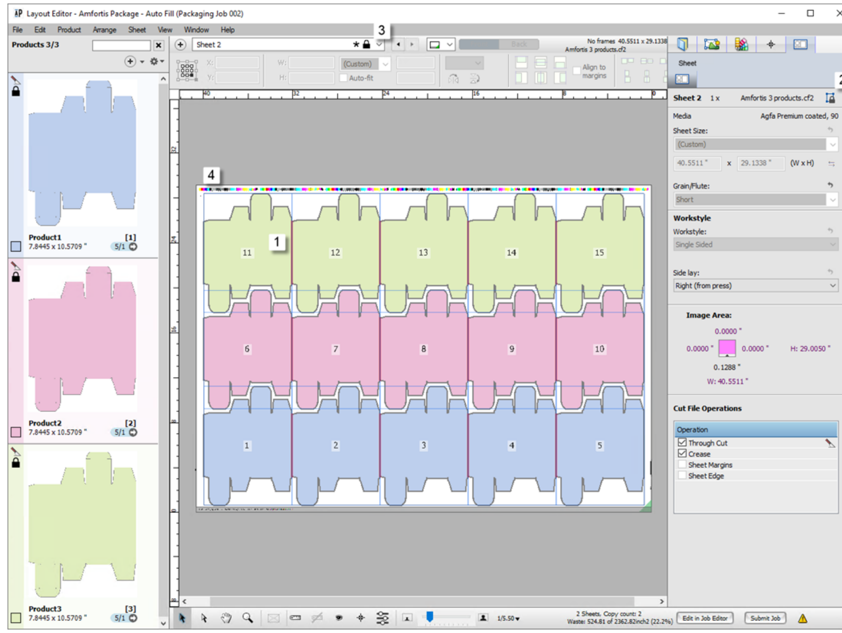


You can then select one of the following options:

- **Add new Sheet Layout**: Creates a new, empty Sheet Layout and sets it as the active layout (default).
- **Replace Contents**: Removes all existing content from the current Sheet Layout before applying the template.
- **Cancel**: Aborts the operation without making any changes.

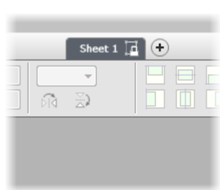
3 The sheet now has the size as specified in the template and all the frames are empty, except for product marks that you may have added.

Figure 3.16: Applied Sheet Layout Template



1 Empty frames with Content IDs
2 Lock icon in sheet tab
3 Button to unlock/lock a sheet in the Product Inspector
4 Image marks

4 The lock icon next to the Sheet tab label indicates that the sheet is *locked* which means that you cannot change the layout without unlocking it.



5 Now you can start placing products on the layout and submit your job.

6 If you want the same layout for another sheet in the same job or another job, you can apply the template again.

▷ Create a sheet layout template from scratch

You can create a sheet layout template from a sheet with empty frames. This involves drawing and naming frames, and setting their Fitting Options.

1 Go the sheet that you want to save or add a new sheet and select the Sheet Size.

2 Draw your frames on the sheet with the Frame tool.

3 Depending on the automation effects that you want to achieve with the template, you can fine-tune the individual frames on the layout, for example:

- Name the frames, assign the content IDs of your choice to the frames. You do this interactively by entering IDs for each frame in the Product Inspector. If you want the same product to be used in different frames, enter the same ID for these frames.

- Fitting options: Activate the Auto-fit option and set the fitting settings to control how products will fit in the frame. For example, if you want to place a single product in frames with different sizes and orientation, choose the settings to fit the product in the frames.

4 When you have finished your layout, choose Sheet > Save Sheet Layout Template.

5 In the dialog box, enter the following information:

- Save as: type a descriptive name for the template

- Assign Content IDs: This option is grayed out because there are no filled frames on the sheet.

6 Click **Save**.

The dialog box closes and you can continue working in the Layout Editor. If you want to check that your template has been saved, follow the procedure to apply a template and you will see your new template in the list of templates. If you want to check that your template has the desired frames and content IDs, apply the template to a new layout sheet.

NOTE: If the layout contains a combination of named and unnamed frames, the IDs of the named frames are used for the named frames and the unnamed frames are not assigned an ID.

▷ Edit/Rename a sheet layout template

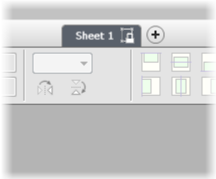
1 Apply the template to a sheet.

2 Edit the sheet and save it with a different name or the same name.

Saving with the same name overwrites the existing template.

▷ Locking/Unlocking a Sheet

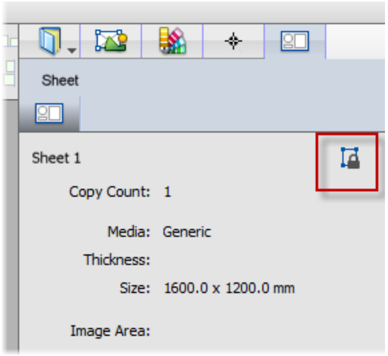
When a sheet is locked, you cannot modify the number of frames on the sheet, the position of frames, or the size of the frames. It is possible to change the Fitting Options and the Content IDs.



Sheets created from a template are locked by default as indicated by the lock icon in the Sheet tab label.

1 On the sheet that you want to lock/unlock, go to the Sheet Inspector.

2 Click the lock icon the lock/unlock the sheet.



▷ Importing/exporting templates

Templates can be imported and exported through the resources in the System Overview.

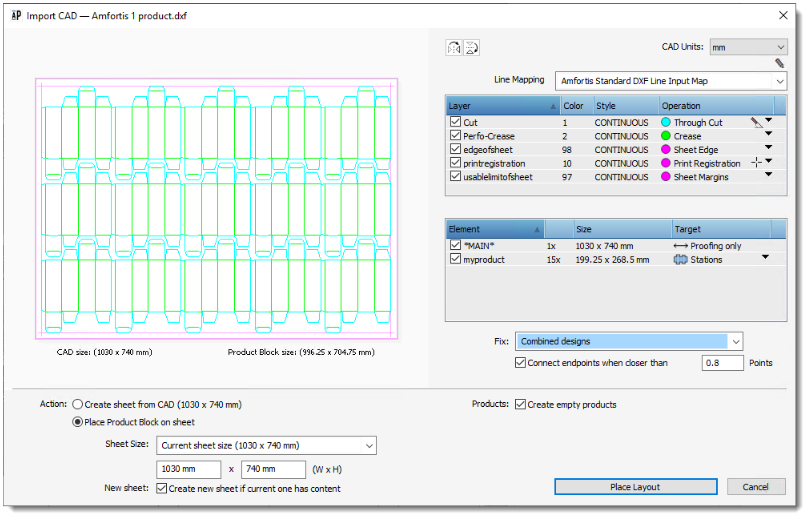
Related topics:
- Resources on page 171

Working with CAD Layouts

Import CAD Files Wizard

- The Import CAD dialog is opened when you choose File > Place CAD Layout in the Layout Editor.

NOTE: When the Arbitrary Rotation feature license is available, any rotation applied to CAD designs (CF2 and DXF files) placed on the sheet is preserved.



This dialog consists of 3 panels:

Preview Panel

The Preview panel on the left shows a preview of how the Layout Editor interprets the CAD file, with the lines and empty products shown or hidden as specified in the controls on the right.

Lines and Elements Controls

Flip CAD Layout Select to mirror the layout horizontally or vertically.

CAD Units Shows the measurement units as defined in the CAD file: drop-down list is disabled; if the file does not specify units, the list is enabled and you can choose a different unit than the default defined in the Asanti Preferences.

Line Mapping A drop-down list with the CAD Line Input Maps resources available for the type of CAD file and appearing in the order as they are listed in this resource. Click the pencil icon if you want to open this resource. See “CAD Line Input Maps” on page 391 for more information.

Line Mapping Table The table lists the line types which were detected in the CAD file. They are mapped to operations according to the selected Line Input Maps resource and numbered according to their order in the resource. If a line cannot be mapped it is grayed out. All mapped lines are imported by default. Select/deselect a line in the **Type** (**Layer**) column, if you want it to include or exclude it. In the **Operation** column you can change the operation specified by the resource to any of the operations in the drop-down list. Remapping the operation sets the Line Mapping drop-down list to <Custom>. Lines that were not mapped automatically by the resource are set to <Unknown>.

Elements Tables This table lists all the elements found in the CAD file, typically one or more products which are repeated in the layout and other non-repeating elements. The CAD file is analyzed during the import to recognize contour-defining lines that are mapped to stations, i.e. placeholder instances of one or more products, or background lines that may be needed for the proofing layer (indicated as *MAIN*). In the **Element** column, you can choose to show/hide a product or other element. The number of instances of the product or element on the sheet is also indicated. The **Target** column specifies how the elements will be imported:

- Stations: placeholders for empty products to which artwork can be added later; see “Mark Engraver” on page 395 and “Place Station Numbers” on page 119 for information on station marks.
- Proofing only: elements useful for proofing the sheet that do not represent empty products.

You can change the Target by selecting a different target in the drop-down list.

Fix Select one of the options in the list and the CAD file will be analyzed to solve common issues in designs:

- None: Imports the CAD file as it is.
- Combined designs: Attempts to recognize individual designs.
- Nested cut lines: Attempts to reconstruct the common lines in the designs.
- Common knife lines: Attempts to recognize when the contour-defining lines are nested. The outermost lines are assumed to be the design.

  For the second and third options, you can override the default maximum distance for recognizing nearby endpoints by selecting the **Connect**

endpoints when closer than check box and entering a value higher than the default 0.8 Points.

Action and Products

Create sheet from CAD

A new sheet will be created with the sheet dimensions and arrangement of elements as specified in the CAD file.

Place Product Block on sheet

Select this option to choose your own sheet size and change the element positions. A new sheet is created. Select the sheet size from the drop-down list: current sheet size or a standard size in the list; here you can also select the size defined in the CAD file. If you want the CAD to be added to the current sheet, deselect the **New Sheet** check-box.

Create empty products

Select this option to create an empty product for every element that is imported as a station and to link those products to the station on the sheet.

Place Layout Button

Clicking this button will import the CAD file and place the layout on the current sheet or create a new sheet with the placed layout.

QuickProof Products and Sheets

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

With the QuickProof feature you can send a product or a sheet immediately to a proofer from within the Layout Editor. The system creates a job in the background to print to the proofer and this job is deleted automatically after the job has been printed successfully.

A product *proof* includes all the product settings as set in the Layout Editor and Product Editor: bleed, scaling, mirroring, canvas extensions, etc. However, if a product has been tiled, you can only proof the master product, not the individual tiles. If you want to proof tiles, place them on a layout sheet first.

A *layout sheet proof* takes into account how the product is placed on the sheet and as such, the proof of a placed product can be different than the proof of the original product as a result of fitting and resizing for example.

▷ Proof a product

- In the Product panel (list of products) of the Layout Editor, context-click the product you want to proof, and choose **Proof Product**.

  OR

  Choose **File > Proof Product**.

  The QuickProof dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate check boxes, Proofer, Image and Output and click the **Proof** button.

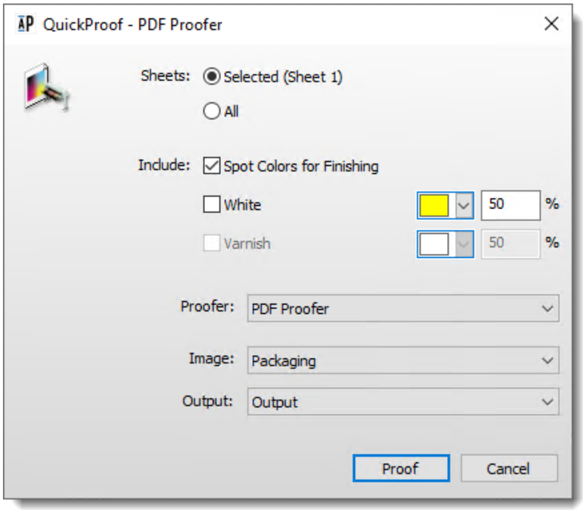
▷ Proof a layout sheet

- In the Sheets panel (list of layout sheets) of the Layout Editor, context-click the sheet you want to proof, and choose **Proof Sheet**.

  OR

  Choose **File > Proof Sheet**.

  The QuickProof dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate check boxes, Proofer, Image and Output and click the **Proof** button.



QuickProof Dialog Box

These setting are remembered for the job.

Products Select the product/sheet or all items to be proofed.

Include

- Spot Colors for Finishing: Select the check box to print each finishing operation with a 1-point solid line in the color that is associated with the color of the finishing operation in the selected cutter. When no cutter is selected, or when the finishing operation is not available in that cutter, the finishing operation is not printed. The finishing operations are printed on top of everything else, in the order as defined by the finishing operations.

- White/Varnish: Select the check box to print these special inks using the specified color and opacity. These special colors are always printed on top of the other content.

Proofer Choose a proofer from the drop-down list. You can only print the proof on a proofer.

Resources

Resources are the settings used in the background to process jobs.

In the Layout Editor, you can open some of the Asanti resources by choosing Window > Resources and selecting a resource, or via the inspectors.

See the following sections:

- for task processor resources:
  - "Media Hub" on page 432
  - "Paper Stock" on page 443
  - "Finishing Hub" on page 385
  - "Mark Engraver" on page 395
  - "Color Books" on page 371
  - "Alignment Pin Sets" on page 357
- for system resources:
  - "Sheet Sizes" on page 485
  - "Sheet Layout Templates" on page 158

Administrator access level only! All Asanti resources can be opened in System Overview, either as system resources or task processor resources.

Layout Editor Menus

Main Menus

The following menus are available on the top menu bar in the Layout Editor window.

File Menu

Menu Item	Description
Add Products	Opens a file browser to select and upload content files.
Add Products from CAD	Opens a file browser to select a CAD file; the products in the CAD file are added to the Products list.
Add Products from Frames	When one or more frames are selected on the sheet, creates products with the dimensions of the selected frames and adds them to the Products list.
Place CAD Layout	Opens a file browser to select a CAD file that you can place with its empty products on the sheet.
Restore Deleted Products	Restores deleted products.
Get Info	Displays the Info dialog box with information about the original product file organized in the General, Dimensions and Resources tabs.
Show Preflight Report	Opens a PDF with a preflight report for the selected product, if available.
Export Original File/ Normalized PDF	Exports the original file or a normalized PDF to a location of your choice.
Proof Products	Sends selected products to a proofer. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 169.
Proof Sheet	Sends the selected sheet to a proofer. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 169.
Save as Template	Saves the current job as a Wide Format Ticket template.
Open in Production Dashboard/ ProductionCenter	Opens your standard browser with the job in Production Dashboard/ Production Center.
Reveal Supplementary Files	Opens the Supplementary Files folder of the job in the system’s File Browser.
Submit	Opens the Submit Job dialog box. See “Applying Changes and Submitting a Job” on page 156.

Edit Menu

Menu Item	Description
Undo/Redo	Undoes/Redoes the last operation.
Cut, Copy, Paste	Cuts, Copies, Pastes the current selection.
Delete Product	Deletes the selected product from the Products list.

Menu Item	Description
Delete Frame	Deletes the current frame.
Remove Product(s)	Deletes the product(s).
Duplicate Product	Makes a copy of the product in the Product panel.
Duplicate Frame on Sheet	Opens the Duplicate dialog box for duplicating the selected frame or frames on the sheet. See “Duplicating Products” on page 103.
Select All	Selects all products in the Product panel, or all products on a selected layout.
Select None	Deselects all products in the Product panel, or all products on a selected layout.
Select All Odd-Numbered/Even-Numbered Products	Selects all products in the Product panel, or all products on a selected layout.
Edit Sheet	With a sheet selected on a print layout in Print Layout mode, switches to the selected sheet in Sheet Layout mode.

Product Menu

Menu Item	Description
Add Product from Artwork	Creates product by assigning artwork to a frame.
Assign Artwork	Assigns an artwork file to one or more existing products.
Front	• From Available: Selects a previously uploaded page from the sub-menu; list of all artwork that is available in the Page Store. • Open: Browses the file system and loads the artwork from a file. • Blank: Selects to have a blank side. • Mirror: Mirrors the current artwork. Disabled when there is no current artwork. • Swap with back: Swaps the assignment with that of the back, whatever the assignments are. • None: Selects to have no artwork on that side. • Get Info: Shows the Get Info window for the assigned artwork. • Show Preflight Report: Creates and opens the Preflight Report for the document that is assigned to the current side. • Check Out and Edit Document: Edits the document in the selected editor.

Menu Item	Description
Back	• From Available: Selects a previously uploaded page from the sub-menu; list of all artwork that is available in the Page Store. • Open: Browses the file system and loads the artwork from a file. • Same as front: Uses the artwork assigned to the front. Disabled when the front has no artwork. • Mirror of front: Uses the artwork assigned to the front. Disabled when the front has no artwork. • Blank: Selects to have a blank side. • Mirror: Mirrors the current artwork. Disabled when there is no current artwork. • Swap with front: Swaps the assignment with that of the front, whatever the assignments are. • None: Selects to have no artwork on that side. • Get Info: Shows the Get Info window for the assigned artwork. • Show Preflight Report: Creates and opens the Preflight Report for the document that is assigned to the current side. • Check Out and Edit Document: Edits the document in the selected editor.
Design	• From Product: Lists the sub-menu with the other products. • Open: Browses the file system and loads a design from a CAD file. • From Front: The artwork assigned to the front, disabled when the front has no artwork. • From Back: The artwork assigned to the back, disabled when the back has no artwork. • Mirror: Mirrors the current design. • None: Sets the design to a rectangle with the size specified by the Product size, disabled when the Product size is From design.
Turn Over	Swaps the front and back artwork and mirror the design.
Mirror Product	Mirrors the front and back artwork and mirrors the design. This is useful for printing single-sided work on the back-side of transparent media.
Convert to Double-sided Product(s)	Combines two single-sided products into one double-sided products. (Double-sided printing is only available for offset-printing or for wide format printing when the license is available.)
Convert to Single-sided Product(s)	Splits a double-sided product in two single-sided products. (Double-sided printing is only available for offset-printing or for wide format printing when the license is available.)
Open in Product Editor	Opens the selected product in the Product Editor. See “Product Editor” on page 181.
Edit with Preview	Opens the selected product in Preview. See “Previewing Job Results” on page 325.
Check Out and Edit Document With	Opens products and documents in Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application such as the Amfortis Editor, from where they can be checked in after editing.

Arrange Menu

Menu Item	Description
Auto-Layout Product	Opens the Auto-Layout dialog box. See “Placing Products with Auto-Layout” on page 109.
Auto Fill Products	Opens the Auto-Fill dialog box. See “Placing Products with Auto-Fill” on page 113.
Create Grid	Opens the Create Grid dialog box. See “Create Grid” on page 106.
Step and Repeat	Opens the Step and Repeat dialog box, if one or more placed products are selected. See “Step & Repeat” on page 104.
Group/Ungroup	Groups/ungroups the products selected on a layout.
Fitting	Options for fitting the product and frame, and to open the Fitting Options dialog box. See “Inspecting Frames” on page 89.
Size Frame to Sheet	Fills the sheet with the selected product frame which can be empty or filled.
Size Sheet to Frame	Sizes the sheet to the selected product frame which can be empty or filled.
Revert Frame	Reverts a filled frame to the size of the original product.
Scale for Bleed	Scales the product outside the frame to allow for the specified bleed content.
Revert Product Size	Reverts the size of the original product back to the size it initially had when you added it to the Product panel.

Sheet Menu

Menu Item	Description
New Empty Sheet	Creates a new, empty sheet for the job.
Duplicate Sheet	Creates a new sheet and duplicates the content.
Delete Current Sheet	Deletes the current sheet.
Delete Sheets	Opens a dialog box where you can choose to delete empty sheets or all sheets.
Delete Empty Sheets	Deletes the empty sheets.
Rearrange Frames	Rearranges the selected frames to their automatic placement.
Rearrange All Frames in Job	Rearranges all the frames to their automatic placement on all the sheets.
Reapply All Mark Sets in Job	Removes all marks and reapplies the marks set rules.
Apply Sheet Layout Template	Opens a dialog box with the saved sheet layout templates which can be applied to the current sheet.
Save Sheet Layout Template	Opens a dialog box to save the current sheet as a sheet layout template.
Assign Content IDs	Assigns content IDs to the selected frames or all frames if none are selected. The frame must contain a product.

Menu Item	Description
Clear Content IDs	Clears the content IDs of the selected frames or all frames if none are selected.
Station Numbers	Opens the Station Numbers dialog with settings for the numbering sequence. See “Place Station Numbers” on page 119.
Fix Bleed Overlaps	Opens the Fix Bleed Overlaps dialog. See “Fix Bleed Overlaps” on page 116.
Revert to Default Bleed Overlap Handling	Removes a side’s custom bleed mask, i.e., the bleed mask that was created by fixing the overlaps manually and reverts to the default bleed overlap handling. This option is disabled, if the side has no custom bleed mask.
Lock/Unlock Sheet	Locks/unlocks the sheet to disable/enable editing.

Print Layout Menu

Menu Item	Description
New Empty Print Layout	Creates a new, empty print layout for the job.
Duplicate Print Layout	Creates a new Print Layout and duplicates the content.
Delete Current Print Layout	Deletes the current Print Layout.
Delete Print Layouts	Opens a dialog box where you can choose to delete empty Print Layouts or all layouts.
Rearrange Sheets	Rearranges the selected sheets to their automatic placement.
Rearrange All Sheets in Job	Rearranges all the sheets to their automatic placement on all the Print Layouts.
Remake All Print Layouts	Repositions all sheets in accordance with modified sheet layout settings.

View Menu

Menu Item	Description
Sheets / Print Layouts	Switches to Sheets or Print Layouts view.
Zoom In/Out	Increases/decreases the zoom factor for viewing the layout.
Zoom to Fit	Fits the layout to the area between the Product panel and the inspectors.
Zoom to Width	Sets the zoom level so that the entire width is visible in the current view.
Zoom to Height	Sets the zoom level so that the entire height is visible in the current view.
Zoom to Max	Selects the maximum zoom level.
Expand/Collapse Tiles	Reveals/hides the tiles of a selected tiled product.

Menu Item	Description
Snap	Toggles the Snap menu item: • When Snap is off, the Layout Editor disables snapping in all operations. • When Snap is on, the Layout Editor snaps to the items selected in the Snap To sub-menu.
Snap To	• Frames: When moving a frame towards another frame, snaps when the edges of the two frames touch or align, or when they are separated by the distance specified in Finishing Margins > Minimum distance between frames. • Guides: Snaps to guides. • Gripper: Enabled only for offset presses. • Sheet Margin: i.e., the distance set in Finishing Margins > Minimum distance between products and sheet edges. • Sheet Edge: • All: Enables all targets. • None: Disables all targets. • Honor 'Minimum Distance Between Frames': The frame snaps when two opposing edges are at the distance that is specified as Finishing Margins > Minimum distance between frames.
Guides	• Lock Guides: Locks the guides. • Remove Guide(s): Removes selected guides. • Remove All Guides: Removes all guides. • Create Guides: Opens Create Guides dialog to create multiple guides at specified locations. • Create Guides From Frames: Creates guides that run along the edges of one or more selected frames or from the frames in a frame group.
Show / Hide Rulers	Shows or hides rulers.
Print Layout Editor Orientation	• Leading edge as on printer: Shows the Print Layout with the leading edge at the top or bottom, depending on the orientation of the printer. • Leading edge always on bottom of window: Shows the Print Layout with the leading edge at the bottom, regardless of the orientation of the printer. • Leading edge always on top of window: Shows the Print Layout with the leading edge at the top, regardless of the orientation of the printer.
Sheet Layout Editor Orientation	• Follow Print Layout Editor orientation: Shows the Sheet Layout in the same orientation as the Print Layout Editor. • Leading edge always on bottom/top of window: Shows the Sheet Layout with the leading edge at the bottom, regardless of the orientation of the printer or that of the Print Layout Editor.

Window Menu

Menu Item	Description
System Overview	Opens or switches to the System Overview window.
Jobs	Opens or switches to the last Jobs window.
Resources	• "Media Hub" on page 432 • "Paper Stock" on page 443 • "Finishing Hub" on page 385 • "Mark Engraver" on page 395 • "Sheet Sizes" on page 485 • "Color Books" on page 371 • "Sheet Layout Templates" on page 158 • "Alignment Pin Sets" on page 357
Go to ProductionCenter	Opens the ProductionCenter application in your internet browser.
Go to PrintSphere	Opens the PrintSphere file-sharing application in your default internet browser, for example, to manage PrintSphere users.
Go to SphereCenter	Opens the SphereCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to set up a PrintSphere subscription.
Show Remarks List	Shows/hides the Remarks List.
Show Snag List	Shows/hides the Snag List.
Show View Options	Shows/hides the View Options palette.
Show Presets	Shows/hides the Presets.
Panels	• Show/Hide Inspector: shows/hides the panel on the right with inspectors. • Show/Hide Sheet Panel/ Product List: shows/hides the panel on the left with products.
Inspector	• "Job Set-Up Inspector" on page 130 • "Frame/Product Inspector" on page 145 (Frame/Product Inspector) • "Colors Inspector" on page 149 • "Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only)" on page 151 • "Sheet Inspector" on page 152 (Layout Inspector)

Context Menus

The following menus are available by context-clicking in the various panels or objects in the Layout Editor.

Sheet Layout Mode - Product in the Product Panel

See "Managing/Editing Products" on page 69.

Sheet Layout Mode - Product on a Sheet

See "Inspecting Frames" on page 89.

Print Layout Mode - Sheet in the Sheets Panel

Context Menu Item	Description
Delete Sheet	Deletes the selected sheet from the Sheets panel and removes it from the Print Layout.
Duplicate Sheet	Creates a copy of the sheet in the Sheets panel and creates a new Print Layout that contains the new sheet.
Edit Sheet	Opens the selected sheet in Sheet Layout mode.
Locate Sheet on Print Layout	Highlights the sheet on the current Print Layout.
Proof Sheet	Sends the selected sheet(s) to a proofer. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 169.

Print Layout Mode - Sheet on a Print Layout

Context Menu Item	Description
Delete Sheet	Deletes the selected sheet from the Print Layout.
Duplicate Sheet on Print Layout	Creates one or more copies of the sheet and places them on the current Print Layout or creates new Print Layouts if sufficient space is not available.
Edit Sheet	Opens the selected sheet in Sheet Layout mode.
Rearrange Sheet	Rearranges the selected sheets to their automatic placement.
Locate Sheet in Sheet List	Locates the selected sheet on the Print Layout.

CHAPTER 4

Product Editor

This section describes the Product Editor, a dedicated workspace for editing the products you upload in the Layout Editor. The Product Editor includes comprehensive features for tiling and contour paths.

Overview

The Product Editor is a module of the Layout Editor that opens when you open a product that has been added to the list of products in the Product panel.

♦ To open the Product Editor from the Layout Editor window:

Double-click a product or one of the tiles of a tiled image in the Product panel

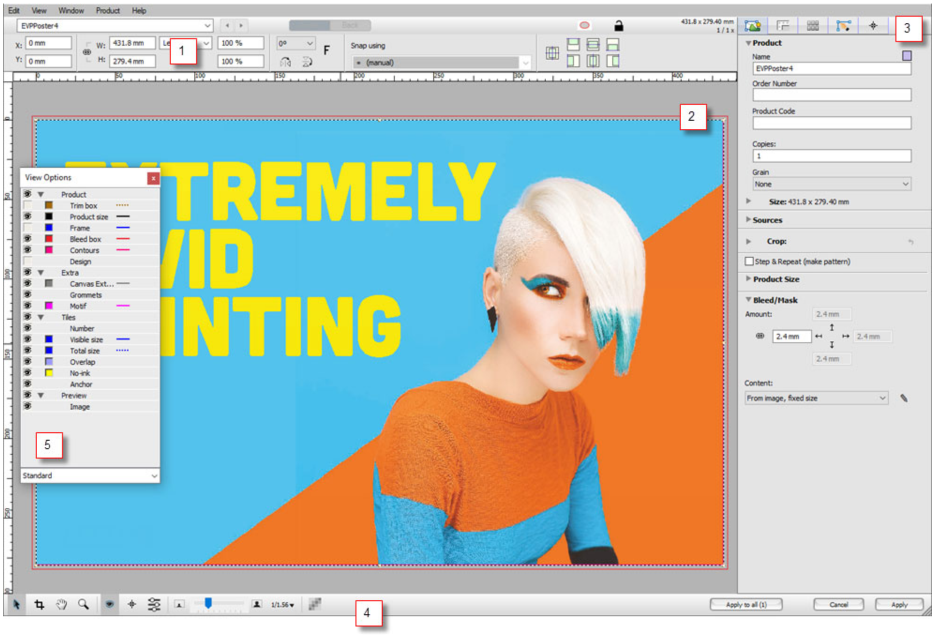
OR

Context-click a product in the Product panel and choose **Open in Product Editor**

OR

When a product is selected in the Product panel, click the **Edit product** button in the Frame/Product inspector.

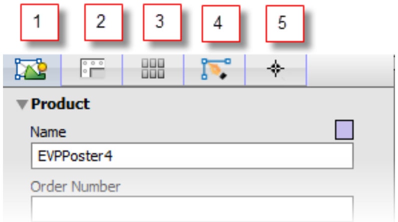
Figure 4.17: A product open in the Product Editor



1 Positioning tools and snapping drop-down
2 Product pane
3 Inspectors
4 Editing toolbar
5 View Options palette

Inspectors

The panel on the right consists of a number of tabs, which are referred to as inspectors, where the actual editing is performed.



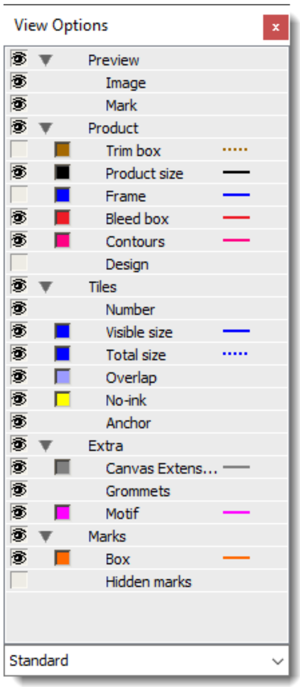
1 Product Inspector for basic edits to the product (size, bleed, etc.)
2 Canvas Extensions and Grommets Inspector
3 Tiling Inspector to tile a large image into smaller tiles
4 Paths Inspector where you can edit existing contour paths or create new ones
5 Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector

The following sections discuss each inspector separately and how the various settings affect the image being edited. Note, however, that changes you make in one inspector may also affect what you specified in another inspector and vice versa. For example, you can specify bleed in the Image inspector, create canvas extensions and grommets in the second inspector, and then tile the resulting product into smaller tiles in the Tiling inspector. The tiling is applied to the entire product including the extensions, while the bleed you specified in the Image inspector is applied to the individual tiles created in the Tiling inspector.

View Options Palette

Open the View Options palette to choose the various boxes and non-printed information that you want to see while working in the Product Editor.

NOTE: Hiding content or marks with the View Options palette does not mean they will not be printed.



- Click the View Options button in the toolbar to Show/Hide the View Options palette.

The following components can be shown/hidden:

- Preview
  - Image: the actual content of the image you are editing
  - Mark: the cutting marks selected for finishing, or other marks
- Product
  - Trim box: the original trim box of the image
  - Product Size: the box indicating the size of the product to be printed
  - Frame: the box around the image that includes canvas extensions but not the bleed

  - Bleed box: the box around the image that includes the bleed area, and the canvas extensions if applicable
  - Contours: the path around an image for finishing operations, for example for cutting
  - Design: an outline based on a CAD file for example.
- Extra
  - Canvas Extensions: the box around the canvas extensions
  - Grommets: the marks representing the grommets to be printed as content with the image
  - Motif: the cells that contain the motif of a step & repeat pattern
- Tiles
  - Number: the sequence number of the tiles
  - Visible size: the box indicating the visible size of the tiles
  - Total size: the box indicating the visible size plus overlapping edges and bleed
  - Overlap: the overlapping edges of tiles as required for the tiling arrangement
  - No-ink: the no-ink zone on the tile overlap
  - Anchor: the black arrow icon indicating the anchor corner that depends on the montage sequence
- Extra
  - Canvas Extensions: the outlines of flaps in case of canvas extensions
  - Grommets: the grommets when applied
  - Motif: the border of the motif (non-clipped) in a Step and Repeat pattern
- Marks
  - Box: the bounding box of the marks

- Hidden marks: marks that will not be printed due to conflicts; displayed in a red, hatched box.

In the View Options drop-down list you can select, create, rename or delete preference sets for the View Options.

Related topics:

- Place Station Numbers on page 119

Toolbars

The toolbar in the bottom left corner basically has the same tools as in the Layout Editor, except for specific tools (Crop, Split, Paths) which are available in the Product Editor when the various inspectors are selected.

Related topics:

- Layout Toolbar on page 126

When using the Tiling inspector you will also see a positioning toolbar at the top of the product editing panel which is activated when you select a tile. See “Positioning Toolbar” on page 217.

Applying Changes

When you’ve finished editing a product you must click the **Apply** button in the bottom right corner to save your edits. So although you can see the changes you make as you work on the product, they are only final when you save them with the Apply button. You can click the **Cancel** button if you do not want to save your edits and keep the product as it was. Click the **Apply to all** button if you want to apply the edits to all the products in the job and overrule any previous edits made to these products.

NOTE: Saved edits are also applied to products already placed on sheets.

Product Inspector

The product is initially the same size as the original image. The product inspector is where you can crop the original image, change the product size and specify how the image fits in the product, and specify the bleed.

- Click the tab to display the Product inspector where you can expand and collapse the various panels.

Product

Name The name set by the Layout Editor when you create a product from a file or duplicate a product. You can also set a different color to represent the product in various views by clicking the color patch.

Order Number Field to specify an order number of your choice.

Product Code Field to specify a product code of your choice.

Copies Enter the total number of copies of the selected image that you want to print, i.e. the number of copies on all the layouts multiplied by the run length.

NOTE: This is not the number of images on the current sheet.

Grain/Flute Select grain/flute direction from the drop-down list for the media you will be printing on:

- None: No specific requirements regarding the substrate grain/flute
- Horizontal: the product grain/flute must run horizontally through the product
- Vertical: the product grain/flute must run vertically through the product

Size

At the top you see the Product Size and this is followed by a table with details of how this size is calculated, starting from the size of the image (Artwork Size) and after the cropping and scaling specified in the panels below is applied. A black asterisk is displayed when the size is different from the native size of the image, i.e. with scaling, fitting, image operations, etc. applied. The asterisk is blue if fitting is applied.

Sources

This panel specifies the files used for the design and the artwork of the product. These file names may include the page number if the source file has several pages. Clicking the drop-downs reveals a menu for selecting a different design or artwork.

Design The first drop-down list in this panel specifies the file used for the design of the product; this can be a PDF file or a CAD file and is followed by an asterisk if the design has been changed.

Artwork The F and the B drop-downs specify the artwork file used for the front and the back of the product, respectively. A warning icon is displayed if the artwork cannot be aligned with the design automatically.

Crop

You can crop the image by specifying a single value for all four sides with the link icon closed, or by entering values for each side with the link icon open. These cropping values are applied to the original image dimensions, so before other modification such as fitting and bleed are applied. If you scale the image, you can select the **Show scaled crop values** check box and then enter values that relate to the scaled size.

NOTE: You can also use the Cropping tool to crop your image: see “Cropping an image” on page 195.

Step & Repeat (make pattern) Select this check box to step and repeat an image and create a pattern that can subsequently be placed on the layout sheet. See “Step & Repeat Patterns” on page 192.

Product Size

Size Here you can specify the size that you want for the finished product. When you open an image in the Product Editor the first time, the product size is equal to the image size. The product size is the same as the frame in the Layout Editor. Leave the link icon closed if you want to keep the aspect ratio of the original image. You can change the orientation of the product by clicking the swap dimensions button to the right of the size fields.

- Use image size: The product size is identical to the image size and this size can be scaled by entering a percentage.
- Standard size from the list: Choose a size from the drop-down list and the scaling factors for the length and height are displayed to the left of the dimensions. You can edit the dimensions.

- Custom: Lets you specify the length and width in your preferred size units.

Fitting Options If you chose a size in the list or defined a specific product size you can also set the fitting options. Otherwise the image fits in the product box.

- Orientation: Selecting the *Rotate for better fit* check box rotates the image so the long edge of the product size aligns with the long side of the image.
- Scaling: Select how you want to scale the image to fit in the product:
    - None: no scaling is applied to fit the image to the product; it takes up as much space as required to accommodate its original size
    - Fill with image: scales the image so it fills the product and crops the image if necessary.
    - Fit image: scales the image so it fits completely in the product which is not necessarily filled.
    - Fit image to width: scales the image so its width fits that of the product.
    - Fit image to height: scales the image so its height fits that of the product.

Maintain proportions Keeps the width and height scale factors the same when scaling. This means that some parts of the image may be clipped.

Alignment Choose a position (top left, top center, top right, etc.) for the cropped, scaled or rotated image inside the product size.

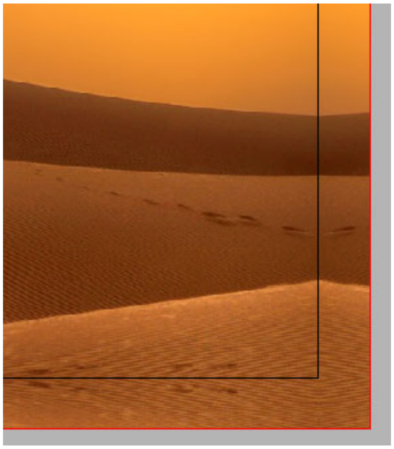
Total frame size The product size + canvas extensions

When you apply your changes, the image appears in the images list of the Layout Editor with the new product size. If you edit the image again, you can start from the original image size. Any changes you make do not affect images which are already placed on sheets.

Bleed/Mask

Bleed can be taken from the image file or created by the system. Specifying bleed does not affect the product size or crop.

Figure 4.18: Mirrored image content added as bleed (between black and red boxes)



Bleed types From the drop-list you can specify when bleed is created by the system or taken from the bleed area available in the image file. These options are mainly relevant for images which have a bleed area present in the image file. Only the first and the last options are relevant if the image has no bleed area.

- None: Sets the maximum bleed to 0 even if bleed is provided in the image file. The bleed box coincides with the canvas extension box or the product size.
- From image, fixed size: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed you specified or only what is available if the bleed in the image is less than the specified bleed.
- From image, disable if none: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed or less if the bleed in this file is less. No bleed is created if the image file has no bleed.
- From image, create if needed: The system uses the bleed in the image file if it is equal or greater than the specified maximum bleed; if the image bleed is less than the specified bleed, the system creates the bleed and does not use the image bleed.
- Always create bleed: The system creates the maximum bleed, effectively replacing any bleed in the image file.

Maximum bleed Specify the size of the bleed area you want around the image or canvas extension. Bleed is created around the canvas extension if this is present, not around the image. Enter one value for all sides or open the link icon to enter values for bleed along the four sides as desired. Press Enter to apply the values.

Bleed Generator

By default, the system mirrors the content along the edges of the image to create the specified bleed if no bleed area is provided in the image file. You can fine-tune or change this behavior by clicking the pencil icon next to the bleed types to open the Bleed Generator dialog box.

Method This is how the system will create the bleed content from the image content:

- Mirror edge content: The bleed area is filled by mirroring the content within the bleed range along the edges of the product box.
- Scale entire content: The entire image is scaled proportionally to fill the bleed area.

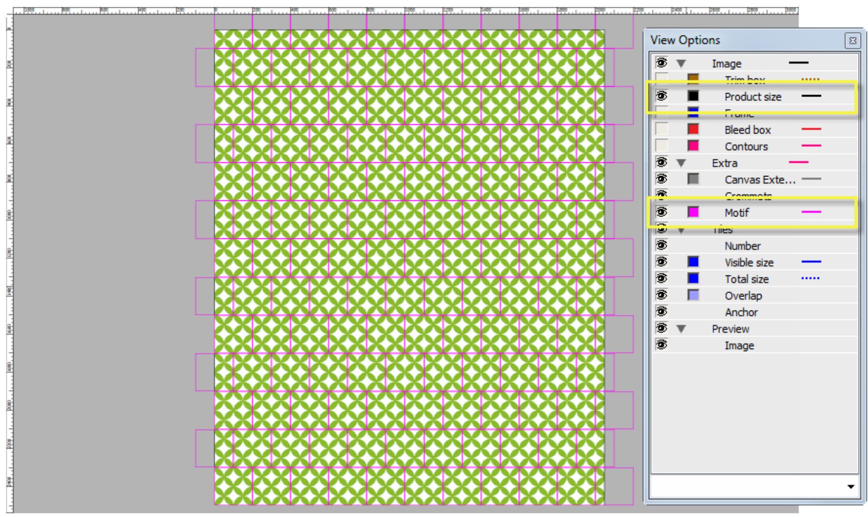
Inset The bleed content is created, starting from the specified inset inside the product box and on top of the existing content. This is useful if the image content does not extend to the product box.

Preserve existing bleed Select the Options check box to preserve the bleed content in the image file underneath the bleed created by the system.

Step & Repeat Patterns

Select the *Step & Repeat (make patterns)* check box at the top of the Image Inspector to step and repeat an image (i.e. the *motif*) and create a seamless pattern that can subsequently be placed on the layout sheet. This feature offers advanced options to vary the pattern which are not possible when using Step & Repeat to repeat an image directly on a sheet in the Layout Editor. Applications include wallpaper, curtains, flooring, etc.

Figure 4.19: Horizontal and vertical cells of a step & repeat pattern



Product Size

Size Here you can choose how you want the size of the finished product to be determined:

- Manual: Select this option to enter the product size; the initial size is the image size.
- From Pattern (default): The dimension boxes are disabled and the product size accommodates the pattern you create, including its gaps, scaling, etc.
- Minimal Repeat: The number of repeats and corresponding product size are calculated for making a minimum repeating pattern.

Cogwheel Open the cogwheel to match the product size with the size of the media. Choosing this option steps and repeats the motif so a pattern is created that fits the media size. This also enables the dimension boxes and sets them to Manual. You have two options:

- From Media: Copies the dimensions of the currently selected media into the dimension boxes and creates a pattern that covers the entire media using the image as motif.

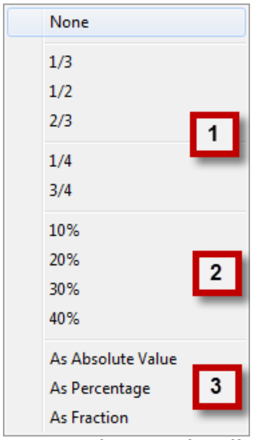
- From Media with Margins: Does the same as From Media but uses the dimensions of the media minus the finishing margins.

Horizontally and Vertically

In the Horizontally and Vertically panels you can fine-tune the horizontal rows and vertical columns of the pattern grid.

Repeat Enter the number of times you want to repeat the motif horizontally/vertically – if the Auto check box is not selected. If the check box is selected, the number of repeats is calculated for you, for example if you are using one of the From Media options.

Brick/Drop Brick sets an offset to shift the cells of alternating rows to the *right*, and Drop sets an offset to move alternating columns *down*. You can specify this offset in several ways: as a fraction of the motif, as a percentage of the motif, or as an absolute value in mm or inches. Click the drop-down list to display preset fractions and percentages, and options that allow you to enter your own absolute value, percentage or fraction.



1 Preset fractions for offsetting motifs in rows/columns
2 Preset percentages
3 Options to set your own fraction or percentage

Mirror Steps You can choose to mirror alternate stepped motifs horizontally, vertically or both. This is possible for rows as well as columns, or both.

Fitting Here you select how the generated pattern must be fitted on the specified product size:

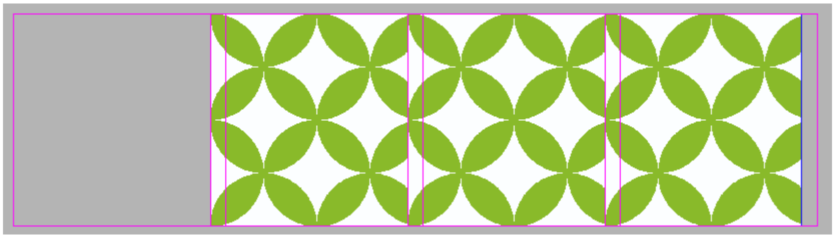
- Omit partial: The content of the last partial cells of the rows/columns is deleted from the pattern design.
- Clip partial: The content of the last cells of the rows/columns is clipped to coincide with the pattern size. This is the default if you specify the product size with From Media.
- Fit scale: Select this option to scale the repeated motif so it fits in all the cells.
- Fit gaps: Select this option to add gaps so the entire repeated motif fits in all the cells.

Scale Set a percentage if you want to scale the cells and the motif horizontally/vertically.

Gap/overlap A positive value creates a gap between the cells and a negative value makes them overlap. Click the drop-down list to display preset fractions and percentages, and options that allow you to enter your own absolute value, percentage or fraction (same as Brick/Drop). Select the *Between images only* check box if don't want a gap/overlap at the beginning and end of the rows/columns.

Overlap Order Two buttons let you control how the repeated motifs overlap each other. The default order is that the motifs on the right/top overlap the adjacent motifs on the left/bottom.

Figure 4.20: Motifs on the right overlapping adjacent motifs (default)



Global

Settings in the Global panel apply to the whole pattern.

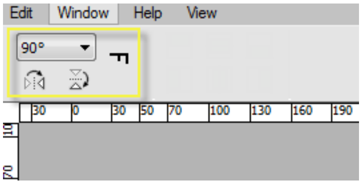
First Cell Here you can rotate (90°, 180°, 270°) and/or mirror the image to modify the initial motif. The F symbol indicates the combined effect of the rotation and mirroring.

Skip Steps Enter a value (n) to leave every n+1 cell empty (no motif).

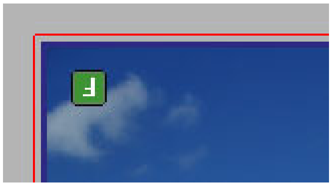
Offset Enter a value to shift the entire pattern horizontally or vertically. Click the drop-down list to display preset fractions and percentages, and options that allow you to enter your own absolute value, percentage or fraction (same as Brick/Drop).

Rotate and Mirror (Positioning Tools)

Use the Rotate drop-down list (0, 90°, 180° or 270°) to rotate and the Vertical or Horizontal Mirror buttons to mirror the image and its product box. The **F** symbol next to the buttons indicates the combined effect of the rotation and mirroring.



You only see the effect of rotating and mirroring when you place the image on a sheet in the Layout Editor where you can also perform the same rotating and mirroring actions. See "Positioning and resizing products with the positioning toolbar" on page 85. The fact that you have rotated or mirrored the image is indicated with a green **F** icon in the top left corner of the image.



Cropping an image

You can crop an image by entering values in the Crop panel of the inspector or interactively on the image using the Crop tool.

1 Open the image you want to crop and click the Crop Image tool in the bottom toolbar.

A crop box appears on the image which you can resize to define the crop. You will also see a Crop and Revert button in the toolbar.

2 When you've finished cropping the image, click Crop to save your changes and crop the image. Us the Revert button to go back to the previous status.

Canvas Extensions and Grommets Inspector

With canvas extensions you can add extra material to one or multiple edges of the image to create flaps. Grommets can be positioned in these extensions or in a product without extensions.

Figure 4.21: Mirrored image content added as extensions and bleed, corners not filled

- Canvas extension between the black product box (image) and yellow extension box
- Bleed between the yellow extension box and red bleed box

♦ Click the tab to display the Canvas Extensions and Grommets inspector.

Canvas Extensions

You can specify the size of canvas extension and whether they are filled with content created by the system or left empty. Any bleed you specified in the image inspector is added to these extensions.

Select the Canvas Extensions check box to enable the settings:

Size Specify the size that you want the canvas to extend beyond the product size. Enter one value for all sides or open the link icon to enter different values for the four sides as desired. Press Enter to apply the values.

Fill Corners This check box has to be cleared to create open flaps; when selected, corners with adjacent flaps are filled.

Content Here you can choose how the system will create content to fill the extensions:

- Scale image: The image is scaled proportionately so it fills the product size plus the canvas extensions plus the bleed areas
- Mirror image: The extensions are filled by mirroring the content within the extension range along the edges of the product box, optionally, starting from a specified inset inside the product box and on top of the existing content. This is useful if the image content does not extend to the product box. The bleed is a continuation of this mirrored content.
- Mirror and Flip image: Flips the image horizontally and mirrors the flipped image into the flaps. This option is needed for front/back printing the same image on opaque media.
- Image bleed: The extensions are filled with the bleed present in the image file or the generated bleed that runs into the extensions. If you cropped the image, the cropped parts are used.
- Color: Fills the extensions with a solid color (CMYK or RGB) that you can choose with the color picker. Open the color picker by clicking the patch next to the Content drop-down list when this option is selected.
- No ink: Leaves the extensions and bleed areas empty.

No-ink zone Enter a value for an area along the edges of the flaps where no ink is allowed. Entering a value here automatically disables any bleed settings.

Total frame size Displays the total frame size.

Print line marks You can use Print Line Marks to draw and print lines and create a printed box around the image and its extensions – without using mark sets. You can set the line thickness, color (open the color picker), and style (solid, dashed or dotted). The lines are centered on the extension borders.

NOTE: To see the line marks, apply the settings and place the image on a sheet.

- On product size: The lines are printed along the edges between the image and the extensions.
- On extensions: The lines create a closed box around the edges of the extensions.

- Only on edges with extensions: The lines are only printed on the edges of the canvas that actually have extensions so the box may not be closed.

Grommets

Figure 4.22: Grommets (circles with cross) in the extensions

Grommets are holes for reinforced eyelets which are generally placed along the edges of a product. Marks can be drawn on the product to indicate where these holes are to be made. These settings let you choose where the marks are drawn and what they will look like.

Position Click in the check boxes to position the grommet marks along the top, bottom, left or right edges.

Type Four types of grommet marks are available:

- Solid circle
- Circle
- Circle with cross
- Cross

The marks can be drawn as an outline by selecting the *Draw outlined* check box.

Diameter The diameter of the circle.

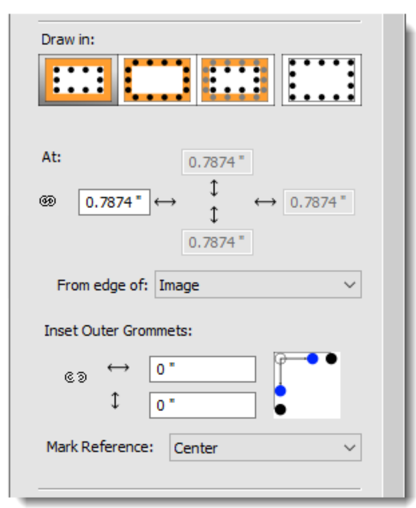
Line Thickness The thickness of all the mark lines.

Line Length The length of the 2 lines of the cross.

Color The color of all the grommets. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color of the cutting lines:

See “To print tile marks” on page 220 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Draw in You can choose to place the grommet marks in the image or the extensions, and specify the horizontal and vertical distance from either the outer edge of the image or the extensions. Close the link icon and re-enter a value if you want to use the same value for the horizontal and vertical distances.



At Specify how far the marks must be printed from either the edge of the Extension or from the Image. This is the distance between the reference point of the mark and the selected reference edges along each edge. This also sets the distance of the first and last grommets along the perpendicular edge.

From edge of

- Image: Draw the grommet marks on the image.
- Extensions: Draw the grommet marks in the extensions.

Inset Outer Grommets Specify an inset for the first and last grommets of a line of grommets.

Mark Reference

Select whether to specify distances to the Circumference or the Center of the mark. The Circumference actually uses the bounding box of the mark.

- Center: specify the distances to the Center.
- Circumference: specify the distances to the Circumference.

Max. distance between marks

Enter the maximum distance between adjacent marks – horizontally and vertically. Close the link icon and re-enter a value if you want to use the same value for the horizontal and vertical distances. In the *Mark Reference* drop-down list you can choose from where the distance is calculated: the center of the mark or its circumference.

- Max distance between marks: Specify the maximum distance the between the reference points of two adjacent marks in the same direction. You can set the horizontal and vertical distances independently of each other. The minimum distance must be greater than or equal to 2 × max (diameter, line-length).
- Fixed number of marks: Specify the number of grommets to draw. You can specify the numbers per side or in pairs (horizontal and vertical). The minimum number is 2.

Tiling Inspector

Use the Tiling inspector to divide a master image into parts, i.e. *tiles*, that can be printed independently of each other. After applying tiling, the tiles appear in the Product panel of the Layout Editor as individual images which can be placed on sheets for printing. The printed tiles are subsequently mounted to recreate the original master image.

The master image may have canvas extensions, and tiling is then applied to the total image area that consists of the image and the flaps.

Overlaps and non-content gaps

In most cases, the individual tiles will need to have *overlaps* on one or more sides so they can be assembled on top of each other – for example, the various panels of a billboard. These overlaps are added to the *visible size* of the tiles. The *total size* of a tile is the visible size plus the overlap and bleed. However, in some cases, overlapping is not necessary or possible – for example if thicker materials are used. Other applications may require that gaps are created in the content between the tiles.

♦ Click the tiling icon to display the Tiling inspector.

Tiling check box

Selecting the tiling check box enables the tiling settings in the inspector where you can set the parameters to let the system create tiles automatically. The check box is also selected and the inspector activated if you are creating your tiles manually. See “Interactive Tiling” on page 211.

NOTE: Clearing the Tiling check box will delete all interactive tiling actions you performed on the image.

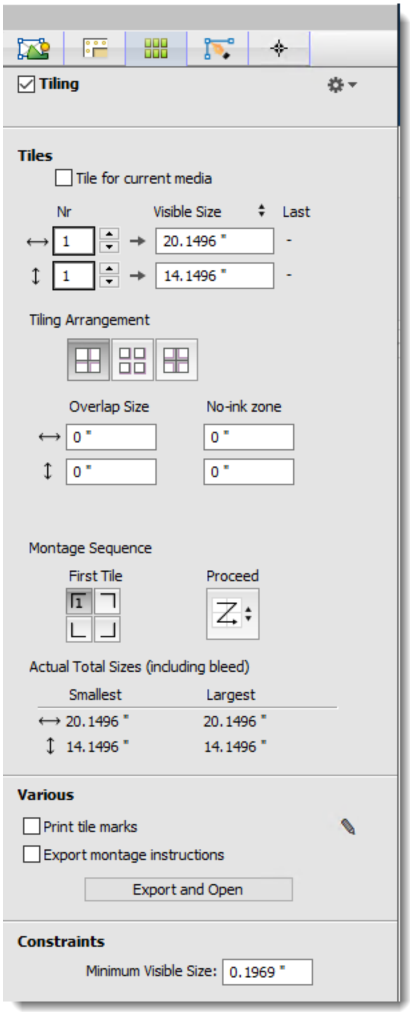
Tiling menu

Click the cogwheel to reveal a menu with the following commands:

Re-apply tiling set-up Resets the tiling arrangement according to the settings in the tiling inspector, undoing any interactive tiling actions.

Preferences Opens the Tiling Preferences dialog box with the settings for creating the montage instructions. See “Tiling Preferences” on page 223.

Figure 4.23: Tiling inspector



Tiles

At the top of the Tiles panel you can specify how you want to create your tiles: the number of columns and rows and whether you want the tiles to have the same visible size or the same total size. Alternatively, you can specify the desired dimensions for the tiles – again based on either the visible or total size – and the system will use these dimensions to split the image. In this case, the last row and column will probably have tiles with different sizes to accommodate the remaining content of the image.

Tile for current media Select this check box to let the system tile your image so it fits on the sheet or roll media currently being used. For example, a large image can be split into 3 tiles so it can be printed on the media. Selecting this option clears any manual settings you made.

Nr To start tiling, enter the number of columns in the box with the horizontal arrow and the number of rows in the box with the vertical arrow.

Total Size/Visible Size You can choose the total or visible size by clicking the black triangles to display the drop-down list:

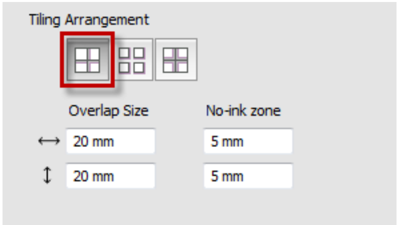
- Visible size: the area of the tile that will be visible after mounting
- Total size: the visible size plus overlaps

Last The width of the last column and the height of the last row; only filled if you specify a desired size for the tiles.

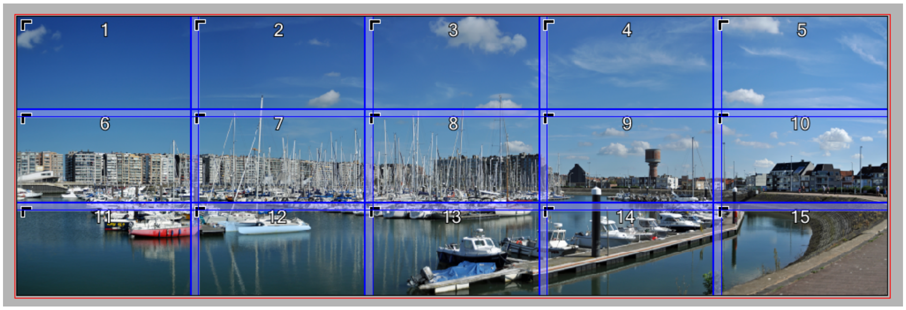
Tiling arrangement

A tiling arrangement can be chosen depending on whether you need overlapping tiles, non-image gaps between tiles, or extensions to recreate the master image from the tiles:

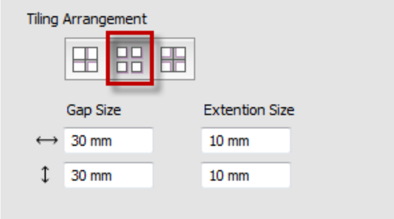
Overlaps



Select the Overlaps arrangement if you need overlapping tiles. Enter a horizontal and vertical size for the overlaps. The overlaps are areas with duplicate image content so the tiles can be mounted on top of each other. Enter a non-ink zone if you want part of the overlap to remain blank so the overlapping materials adhere better to each other.

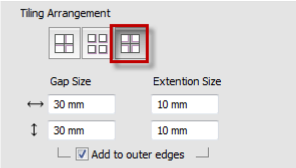


Gaps

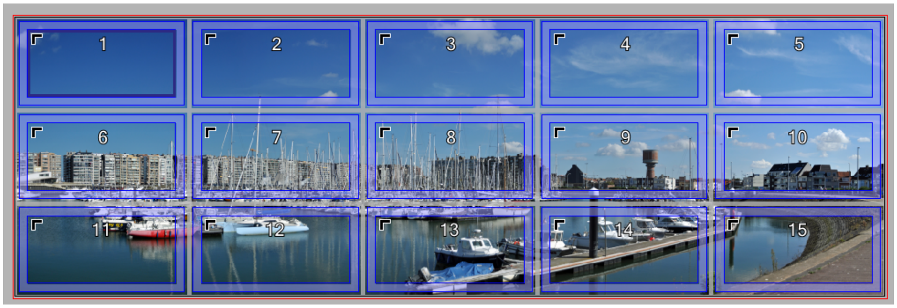


Select the Gaps arrangement if you need content gaps between the tiles. The content gaps are not printed. Self-adhesive tiles for window panes are a typical application of gaps. Enter the gap size, for example the width of your window frame, and half of this size is deducted from adjacent tile edges to create the full gap. Enter extension sizes to create extra material with content to cater for size variations. Extensions are added to the sides opposite to the tile anchor, except along the outer edges of the image.

Symmetrical



Similar to the Gaps arrangement but with extensions on all sides. Select the Add to outer edges check box to add extensions to the tiles along the outer edges of the image.

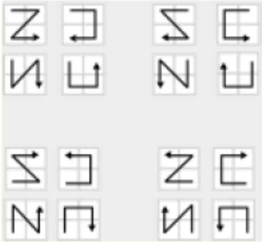


Montage Sequence

Here you specify the order for mounting the printed tiles, how the tiles are numbered, and on which edges the overlaps or gaps are located. This is done by combining the First Tile and Proceed buttons that provide a total of 16 combinations.

First Tile Select the corner where you want to start the numbering of the tiles: top left, top right, bottom left, and bottom right. The sequence numbering starts with the tile that is to be mounted first and the anchor symbol moves to the respective corner of each tile. The tile overlaps, gaps or extensions are created accordingly.

Proceed The logic of the sequence numbering is controlled by four buttons in the drop-down list. These let you choose the horizontal and vertical direction in the grid. The default sequence is with the first tile in the top left corner. The numbering then proceeds horizontally along the first row (left to right) and then on the following row in the same direction (left to right). Depending on the selected first tile, the following combinations are possible:



NOTE: The drop-down list only shows the four sequences that are possible with the selected first tile.

Actual Total Sizes (including bleed) The Smallest and Largest total tile widths (horizontal arrow) and tile heights (vertical arrow) – not necessarily the same two tiles.

Various

Print tile marks Prints tile-specific marks on the tiles. See “Tile Marks Dialog” on page 219.

Export montage instructions Select the check box if you want the system to automatically create a PDF document with instructions for mounting the tiles when you submit the job. Click the **Export and Open** button without or with the check box selected to see the PDF with instructions immediately. See “Montage Instructions” on page 224.

Constraints

Minimum Visible Size Defines the minimum visible tile size.

NOTE: The minimum visible tile size must be at least 5 mm.

Related topics:

- Interactive Tiling on page 211
- Split Tool Shortcuts on page 533
- Positioning Toolbar Shortcuts on page 534
- Layout Toolbar on page 126

Paths Inspector

You can use the Paths inspector to view and edit an existing path and its anchor points or to create a path from scratch. Paths are generally used as contours for finishing operations (cutting, creasing, etc.) and play an important role in true-shape nesting of products on a sheet. Paths take the bleed that you set for the image but this is only visible in the Image inspector.

- Click the tab to display the Paths inspector.

The Paths panel lists the paths present in the image. An image always has at least one path, namely the frame. Paths can be added using the paths tools in the toolbar or you can auto-generate a path if the image is suitable with the Trace feature.

▷ Add a closed path (ellipse or rectangle)

1. Open the image that you want to add a path to and go to the Paths inspector.
2. Select the **Ellipse** tool or the **Rectangle** tool in the bottom toolbar and draw the path like you would place an object on top of the image:
   - Click and drag to draw the ellipse or rectangle. Press the CTRL key to draw circles or squares.
   - To move the path on the image, select the object with one of the pointer tools. You can adjust the width and height of the path's bounding box in the Positioning Toolbar in the top left corner.
   - Context-click an object to choose an Offset or Inset value that enlarges or shrinks the closed path.

   NOTE: You can select the anchor points of a closed path with the white pointer (Path Selection tool) and modify the object.

3. Click Apply or Apply to All to save your changes.

▷ Add a free-form path with the pen tool

1. Open the image that you want to add a path to and go to the Paths inspector.
2. Select the **Pen** tool and click where you want to start drawing your path:

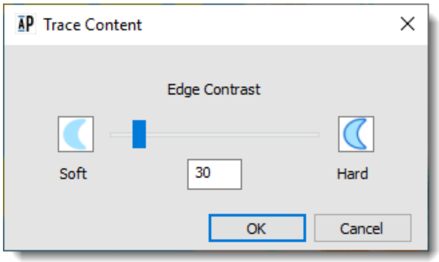
- Click and release to set an anchor point and draw straight lines.
- Click again in an anchor point to display direction handles and draw a curved line.
- Command-click to stop drawing the path.

3 Click Apply or Apply to All to save your changes.

▷ Auto-generate a path

1 Open the image that you want to generate a path for and go to the Paths inspector.

2 Click the **Trace** button to open the **Trace Content** dialog.



3 Use the Edge Contrast slider to set the contrast used to define the path an click **OK**.

4 In the Paths list, select the auto-generated path you just created to display it in the Product pane. You can rename the path, choose a finishing operation and change the path color.

5 Click **Apply** or **Apply to All** to save your changes.

▷ Delete a path

♦ In the Paths list, context-click the path you want to delete, and choose Remove Path.

OR

In the Product pane, select the path with one of the pointer tools and press Delete.

Related topics:

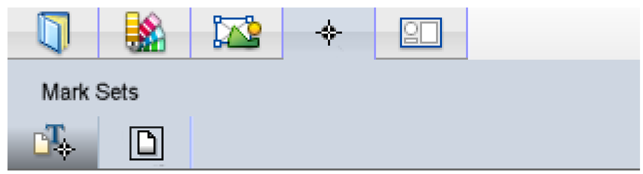
- Placing Products with Auto-Layout on page 109
- Cut File Operations on page 154
- Finishing on page 138
- Clip to contour on page 147

- Positioning Toolbar Shortcuts on page 534
- Layout Toolbar on page 126

Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector

♦ Click the tab to display a combined tab with the Mark Sets Inspector and the Mark Inspector.

You then see two tabs.



The first tab is the Mark Sets Inspector that you can use to apply sets of product marks to all the products in the job (first section) or to apply sets of Press Sheet Marks to all the press sheets in the job (second section). Select the check marks to add marks. Click the cogwheels to switch off the Mark Sets or remove manual marks.

The second tab shows the details of a selected mark or a mark you just placed using the Marks palette. You can edit the settings for the selected mark.

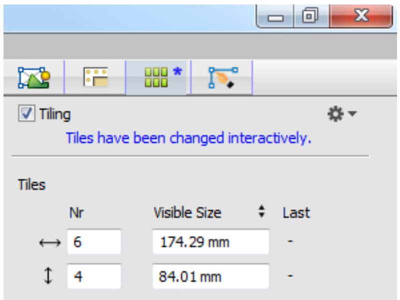
Related topics:

- Mark Engraver on page 395
- Place Station Numbers on page 119

Interactive Tiling

Automatic tiling uses the settings in the Tiling inspector to create a grid where most of the tiles have the same size. However, you can use interactive tools to create a non-grid tiling arrangement from scratch or to modify the rows or columns of an existing arrangement.

Interactive tiling is indicated with a blue asterisk in the Tiling inspector header:



The following tools are available for interactive tiling:

- Split Tool (Manual Tiling)
- Selection Tool
- Omit Tiles
- Merge Tiles
- Horizontal and Vertical Splitting
- Positioning Toolbar

Split Tool (Manual Tiling)

You can use the Split tool to create tiles from a master image in free-style manner. The Split tool is visible in the tiling toolbar in the bottom left corner when you are in the Tiling inspector tab.

1 Open the image you want to tile in the Product Editor and go to the Tiling inspector tab.

2 Click the Split tool in the toolbar, or press K, to activate the tool. Now you start to tile an untiled image from scratch or to fine-tune an existing tiling arrangement.

3 Hover over the image to start tiling.

If you are tiling an untiled image, the Tiling check box at the top of the Tiling inspector tab is activated from the moment you create your first tile. If you want overlaps, gaps or extensions, you need to specify them before you start splitting.

NOTE: Changing the basic tiling settings in the inspector will undo interactive edits. Changing overlap size preserves interactive edits.

The Split cursor (large cross) appears with a magenta line parallel to the shortest side of the image, and the width of the split tiles on either side of the split line.

4 Move the split line to the desired position and click to confirm the splitting.

You can change the splitting orientation (from parallel with the shortest side to parallel with the longest tile) by pressing and releasing the space bar or TAB key.

The orientation of the split line changes automatically if you move into a tile whose shortest side or longest side has a different orientation.

You can extend the splitting in one tile across all the tiles of an image by holding down the SHIFT key.

Split Tool Shortcuts

Activate the Split tool by pressing K with the Tiling inspector selected. To control the splitting of tiles selected with the Split tool, use the following shortcuts.

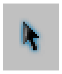
To	Press
Change the splitting orientation (the magenta splitting line)	Space bar or TAB key once
Extend the splitting action across all tiles	Hold SHIFT
Repeat the split.	CTRL
Cancel the image splitting	ESC

Selection Tool

If you created tiles interactively with the Split tool or automatically with the inspector, you can fine-tune them further with the selection tool. In this mode you can select tiles and change their size, merge the tiles, etc.

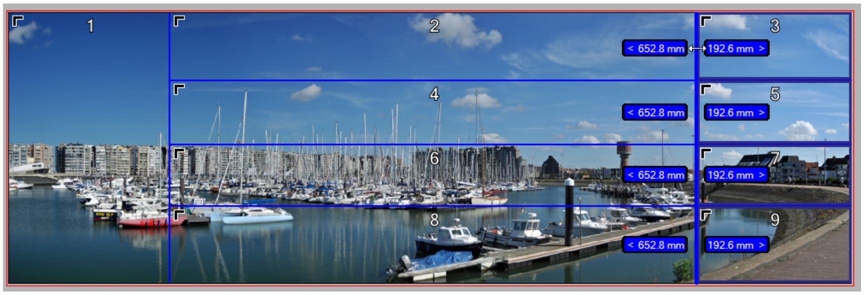
NOTE: You cannot create new split lines in this mode.

1 Select the Selection tool in the bottom toolbar.



2 Hover over the split lines to display the tile dimensions on either side of the line, and the resize arrow.

3 Click and drag a split line to edit the tile size.



Use standard shortcuts to select multiple tiles. Hold SHIFT to resize all the selected tiles.

Omit Tiles

You may decide that a particular tile in your tiling scheme does not have to be printed.

- Select the tile you want to omit with the Selection tool and clear the Print check box in the Positioning toolbar or press the Delete key.

The tile in question is grayed out which means it will not be created. The tile numbering and the total number of tiles is modified accordingly. When you apply the changes, this tile is not added to the Product panel in the Layout Editor.

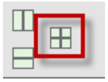
NOTE: You can revert the delete tile action by selecting the Print check box again, even after you applied the changes.

Merge Tiles

Adjacent tiles can be merged along their common split line to create a new, merged tile. Settings for overlaps, gaps and extensions are applied to the newly created tile.

You can use the Merge Tiles command in the Positioning toolbar to merge selected tiles or drag the split line of a tile to append adjacent tiles.

1. Select two or more tiles you want to merge with the Selection tool.
2. When the selected tiles form a rectangle, the system activates the Merge Tiles button in the Positioning toolbar.



3. Click the Merge Tiles button to merge the selected tiles.

OR

1. In Selection tool mode, hover over the common split line between the tiles you want to merge and drag the line to the opposite edge of the tile you want to append.

   The split line snaps to the edge of the first tile.

2. Release the mouse button and the merged tile is created

   The tile numbering and the total number of tiles is modified accordingly.

3. Now you can drag the split line to the edge of the following tile if you want to merge multiple tiles.

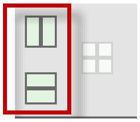
   When you apply the changes, the merged tiles appear as a single tile in the Product panel in the Layout Editor.

NOTE: You cannot revert to the original tiles once you have applied the changes.

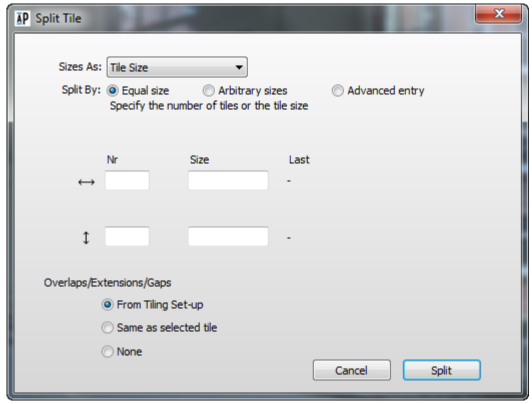
Horizontal and Vertical Splitting

Manual tiling with the Split tool is not ideal if you want equal splits across one or more tiles, or if you want to control overlaps, gaps and extensions. In these cases it is recommended to use the Split Tile buttons in the Positioning toolbar.

1. Select the tile you want to split with the Selection tool. If you want to apply the same splitting to multiple tiles, select multiple tiles.
2. Click either the Horizontal or Vertical Split Tile button in the Positioning toolbar or press CTRL+U, or context-click and choose Split Tiles.



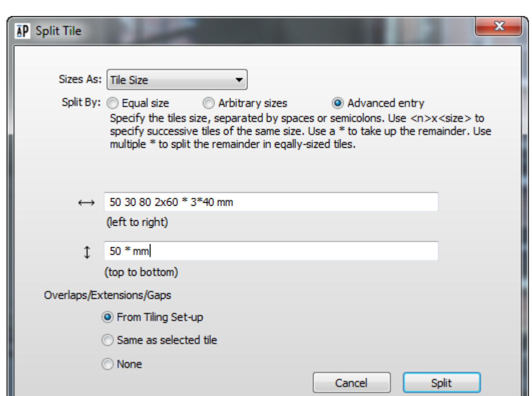
The Split Tile dialog box is displayed.



The **Equal size** panel is enabled by default with the cursor in the horizontal or vertical Number box. This depends on whether you clicked the Horizontal or Vertical Split Tile button. The Equal size panel is similar to the Tiles settings in the inspector (see “Tiles” on page 202) and you can enter the number of horizontal columns and/or vertical rows to create a grid of tiles which all have the same size. Alternatively, you can enter a size and all columns and/or rows will have this size, except the last.

You can choose the **Arbitrary sizes** option button if you want to specify multiple horizontal and/or vertical sizes for some or all the tiles. Enter a size in the first horizontal and/or vertical box. This will be the size for the tile starting from the anchor corner. Continue with values for up to 5 tiles. You can use and asterisk if you want the system to split the remaining distance into equal tiles. For example, `100,200,*,400,*,` splits a total distance of 1000 into tiles of 100, 200,150,400,150.

You can select the **Advanced** option if you want to enter more sizes. You can use spaces or commas to separate the dimensions.



In the **Overlaps/Extension/Gaps** section you can choose how these settings are applied to the split tiles:

- From Tiling Set-up: the inspector settings are applied
- Same as selected tile: relevant if multiple tiles are selected for splitting; the new tile inherits the settings of the parent tile
- None: no overlaps or gaps are applied

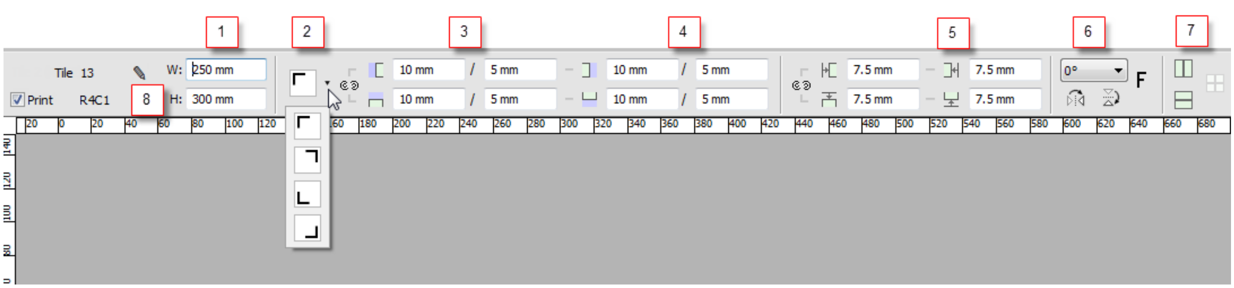
3 Click **Split** to confirm your splitting settings.

Positioning Toolbar

The Positioning toolbar at the top of the Product Editor lets you inspect and edit each individual tile in the tiling scheme. Entering values in the boxes for Width, Height, Overlap, Gap and Extensions will override the values you see in the Tiling inspector and may also affect tiles which are arranged adjacent to the selected tiles. The measurement boxes you see in the toolbar depend on the tiling arrangement used to create the tiling scheme.

You also have tools for rotating and mirroring tiles when placed on the sheet, tools for splitting and merging tiles, and the Print check box that can be cleared if you want to omit a tile. The pencil icon opens the Assign to Set dialog that can be used to specify custom tile names for multiple sets of tiles.

Select one or more tiles to activate the tools.



1 Width and height of the tile (value is “mixed” if multiple tiles are selected)
2 Anchor direction
3 Overlap size or Extension/No-ink zone on the Left, and Top edges of the tile
4 Overlap size or Extension/No-ink zone on the Right, and Bottom edges of the tile
5 Gap size on the Left, Right, Top and Bottom edges of the tile
6 Rotation and mirror tools
7 Horizontal and vertical Split tools and Merge tool
8 Assign to Set button

Positioning Toolbar Shortcuts

To control the Positioning toolbar when a tile is selected with Selection tool:

To	
Open the Split Tile dialog box	CTRL + U
Mirror the tile vertically when placed on a sheet	SHIFT + M
Mirror the tile horizontally when placed on a sheet	M
Rotate the tile clockwise in steps of 90°	SHIFT + R
Rotate the tile anticlockwise in steps of 90°	R
Merge the selected tiles	CTRL+ G
Place the cursor in the first Overlap box of the Positioning toolbar	O
Place the cursor in the first Gap box of the Positioning toolbar	G
Jump to next box in the Positioning toolbar	TAB

Related topics:

- Tiling Inspector on page 201
- Rotate and Mirror (Positioning Tools) on page 195
- Horizontal and Vertical Splitting on page 215
- Merge Tiles on page 214
- Omit Tiles on page 214

Other Tiling Features

This section discusses some extra tiling features:

- How to print tile marks: see “Tile Marks Dialog” on page 219.
- “Renumber/Rename Tiles and Assign to Sets” on page 223.
- How to create a PDF with montage instructions: see “Tiling Preferences” on page 223.

Tile Marks Dialog

You can print tile-specific marks on the tiles to help the person assembling the tiles arrange the tiles correctly. Two tile marks are possible: the tile name, which is text that typically includes the sequence number, and overlap line marks for aligning adjacent tiles. Select the check boxes to include the name and/or lines.

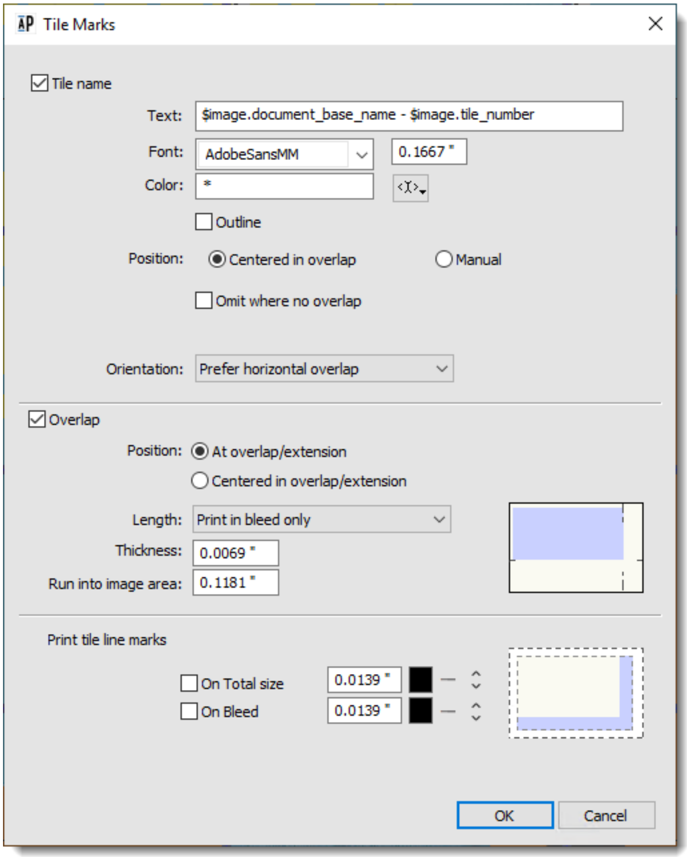
Figure 4.24: An example of tile marks (lines) as shown when a tile is placed on a sheet in the Layout Editor

NOTE: Tile marks are only visible in the Layout Editor and when the image is placed on a sheet.

▷ To print tile marks

1 You enable tile marks by selecting the **Print tile marks** check box in the Various panel at the bottom of the Tiling inspector.

2 Click the Edit button (pencil) to open the **Tile Marks** dialog box where you can specify the content and the appearance of the marks.



Tile name

Text Any combination of static text and variables can be entered in the box for the name which will typically include the sequence numbers.
For example: `Tile no. $image.tile_number/$image.total_tiles` resolves to `Tile no. n/total`. Valid variables appear in a drop-down list as you type in the box.

Font The typeface and point size for printing the text mark.

Color Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the text mark will be printed:

- Registration (all plates). When this option is selected, you will see an asterisk (*).
- Process colors (CMYK)
- Darkest color
- Special colors
- Spot colors

Outline Adds a 1-point white line in knockout around the type so it stands out better with certain content.

Position Here you can specify where the tile name is printed on the tile by choosing one of the buttons:

- Centered in overlap: the default position which places the tile name in the center of the overlap or extension. For the tiles with no overlap, for example the last tiles, you can choose to omit the text, otherwise the tile name is printed in the visible area. You can change the default behavior as follows:
  - Prefer horizontal overlap (default): if possible, the text is printed in the horizontal overlap or extension
  - Prefer vertical overlap: if possible, the text is printed in the vertical overlap or extension
  - In horizontal overlap only: forces the system to place the text in the horizontal overlap
  - In vertical overlap only: forces the system to place the text in the vertical overlap

  If the tiling scheme has no overlaps or extensions specified, the system prints the tile name along the horizontal edge of the tile, and possibly in the visible area.

- Manual: Select this button if you want more control for placing the tile name mark. Specify the horizontal (left, center, right) and vertical (bottom, center, top) alignment relative to the corners of the total size, the horizontal and vertical offset, and rotation of the text (0, 90, 180 or 270°).

Overlap (alignment lines)

The overlap marks are dashed, black and white lines that mark the border between the visible part of the tile and the overlap or extension. Tiles will have two, one or zero lines depending on their position in the montage, with small dashes for vertical lines and large dashes for horizontal lines.

Position The position of the line relative to the edges of the tiles:

- At overlap/extension: against the bordering line of the overlap/extension
- Centered in overlap/extension:

Length This option controls the length of the dashed line:

- Print in bleed only: This default setting prints a line in the bleed area only so it’s the smallest of the marks.
- Print into overlap: The line is printed in the bleed area and extends into the overlap or extensions.
- Print across entire size: The dashed line is printed along the entire length of the edges that have overlaps.

Thickness Enter the thickness of the dashed lines in points (pts).

Run into image area Enabled for the first two Length options: the length that the dashed line may extend into the image area.

Print tile line marks

You can print an outline along the edges of each tile:

- On Total Size: the tile including overlaps/extension
- On Bleed: the total size plus bleed

You can set the thickness, color and style of the line marks. Click the arrow icons to select a solid, dashed or dotted line.

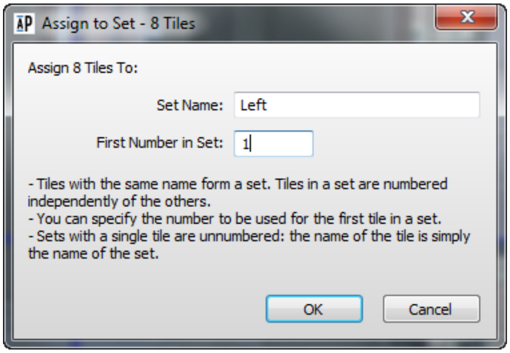
Renumber/ Rename Tiles and Assign to Sets

You can create multiple sets of tiles and identify the sets by renumbering/ renaming the tiles. This number is also picked up by the `$image.tile_number` variable which can be used to form the tile name.

1 Open the image and define the tiles.

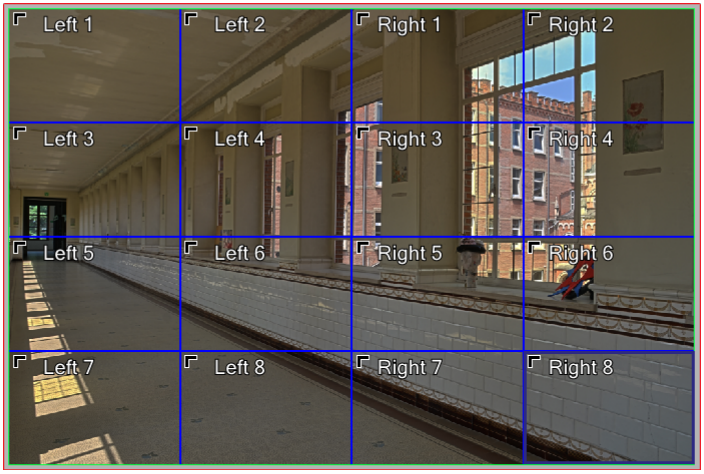
2 Select the tiles you want to put in the first set, for example the Left tiles.

3 Click the pencil icon in the top toolbar with positioning tools to open the Assign to Set dialog.



4 Enter the Set Name, e.g. Left; you can also change the First Number in Set to renumber tiles starting from a different number than the default.

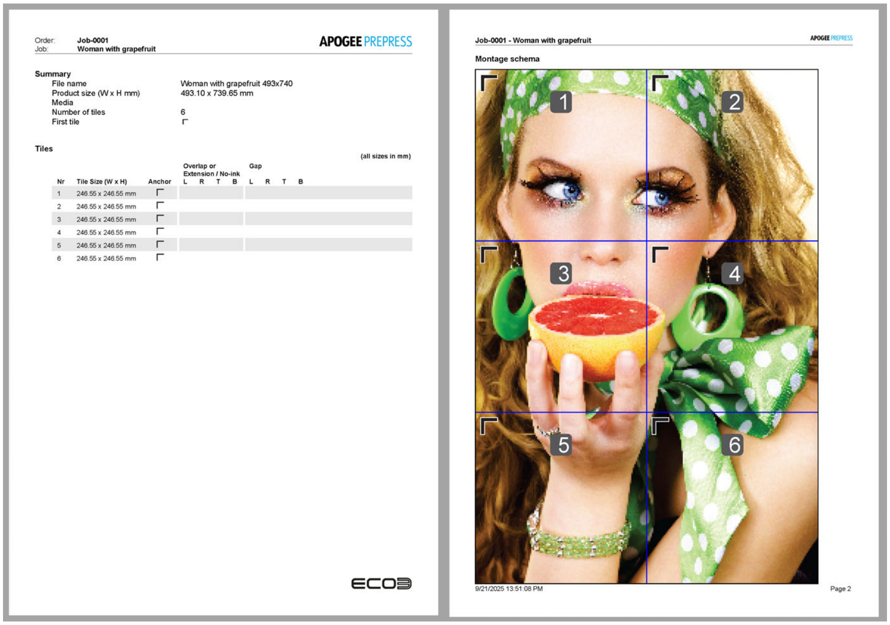
5 Click OK and then repeat to create a second set, for example the Right tiles.



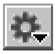
Tiling Preferences

This dialog box shows the settings for creating a PDF file with the montage instructions for the tiling arrangement at hand.

Figure 4.25: A PDF document with montage instructions



- Open the cogwheel menu in the top right corner of the tiling inspector to open Tiling Preferences.



Montage Instructions

Montage instructions explain how the tiling arrangement is organized so the tiles can be assembled to recreate the original image. The instructions mention the order and job reference and give a short summary of the tiling set-up (product size, number of tiles, etc.).

Page size Choose a size and orientation for the PDF you will export.

Include You can choose to include a:

- List of tiles: A table with a list of all the tiles and the dimensions of the individual tiles with their overlaps and gaps.
- Montage overview: A diagram of the tiling arrangement as shown in the Product Editor. You can select a View Options preset to specify what will be printed exactly in the diagram.

File name Enter a file name with or without variables from the drop-down list or use the default name with variables ($DOCUMENTBASENAME_MI$TIME).

Export directory Enter a location for saving the file with or without variables from the drop-down list.

Conflict handling Indicate how you want subsequent export files to be handled.

▷ Export a PDF with montage instructions

1. Open the tiled image in the Product Editor and go to the Tiling inspector tab.
2. If necessary, open the cogwheel menu and choose Tiling Preferences if you want to change the document set-up.
3. In the Various panel, select the **Export montage instructions** check box if you want the PDF to be created automatically when you submit the job.

   OR

   Click the **Export and Open** button to see the PDF immediately.

   A PDF document with montage information and a tiling diagram is saved in the location specified in the Tiling Preferences and then opened in your default reader.

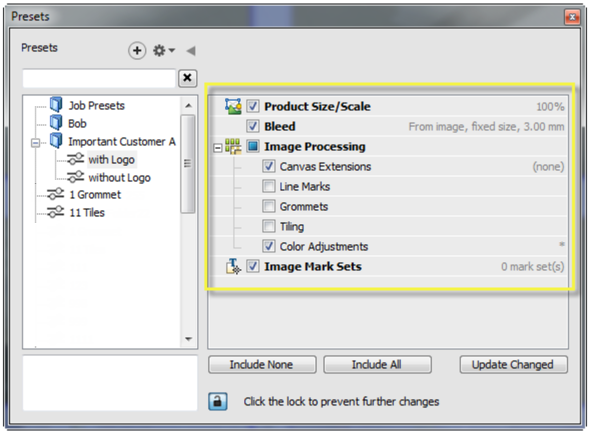
Presets

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

Presets let you apply the settings you define for a particular image to other images of the same job or other jobs.

- In the Layout Editor or the Product Editor, open the Presets tool by clicking the Presets button in the toolbar.

The Presets dialog is displayed with a list of job presets and image presets on the left which are organized in folders. The list is initially empty. If you select an existing preset or create a new one you will see an overview of the settings that can be included in a preset in the panel on the right:



These are the settings that you would normally have to specify in the image inspectors for a new image. To save time, you can include all or some of the settings in a preset which can subsequently be used for new images.

Presets toolbar The + button to add a new preset; the cogwheel menu button and a gray triangle to open/close the settings panel.

Cogwheel menu The following commands are available; the commands are also available by context-clicking the preset in the list:

- Apply: Applies the selected image preset to the open image

- Apply to New Images: The preset is applied to all images you add to the job. This option can be used to add image processing automation to Layout ticket templates (see “Creating Templates for Wide Format Jobs” on page 484).
- Edit Preset: Unlocks the presets so you can edit them; in this edit mode you can clear or select the settings check boxes and update the preset to match the settings of the current image; any changes you make to a preset in edit mode are saved automatically
- Rename Preset: Lets you edit the name of the selected preset
- Edit Description: Places the cursor in the Description box of the selected preset
- New Folder: Creates a new folder where you can put new presets
- New Job Preset: Creates a new job preset
- Duplicate Preset: Duplicates the selected preset
- Delete Preset: Deletes the selected preset
- Import Preset: Opens a file browser where you can select a preset for importing
- Export Preset: Opens a file browser where you can select a preset for exporting

NOTE: You can only add an image preset using the **+** button in the toolbar.

Preset filter Enter a value in the box to search for a preset in the list; click the **X** button to show all presets.

Presets list In this list you can create folders for *Image presets*; the first folder is the default folder and the only folder for all *Job presets*; image presets can be listed at the top level or one level lower in folders. Selecting an image preset displays the Image Settings of the preset in the panel on the right.

Image Settings Theses settings in the panel on the right are only displayed if you have selected an image preset in the list. The check boxes refer to the settings you can specify for an image in the Product Editor inspectors, plus the Image Mark Sets and Color Adjustments. Color Adjustments refer to changes you made in the Preview application, i.e. saturation, contrast, curves.

Include None/Include All Buttons are enabled in edit mode. Use them to select all or none of the check boxes and include or omit the settings as specified for the current image in the selected preset.

Update Changed Button enabled in edit mode. Click to update the selected preset to match any changes made to the settings of the current image and which are included in your preset.

▷ Create image presets

1. Open the image whose settings you want to save as a preset in the Product Editor. This can be an image with bleed, canvas extensions and grommets, tiling, a step & repeat pattern, etc. as specified in the inspectors.
2. Open the Presets tool.

3. Click the + button (Add Preset) in the Presets toolbar.

   The presets are unlocked and a new image preset appears in the list at the highest level. If you want to create the preset in a folder, select the folder before clicking the + button.

4. Enter a name for your new image preset.

   In the Image Settings panel on the right, select the check boxes for the settings you want to include in the preset. You can also use the Include All or Include None buttons.

5. Enter a short description for the preset in the Description panel under the list.
6. Click the Update Changed button to confirm your preset.
7. Close the Presets tool.
8. Apply the Preset to a new image to test your preset.

▷ Apply image presets

You can apply an image preset in the Product Editor or in the Layout Editor. An existing preset can also be applied in a Layout Hot Ticket.

1. In the Product Editor, open the image to which you want to apply a preset.
2. Open the Presets tool.

3. Select a preset and check the Image Settings in the panel on the right.

4 Open the cogwheel menu and choose Apply to apply the settings to the image.

The image settings (bleed, canvas extensions, tiling scheme, etc.) are applied to the image.

OR

1 In the Layout Editor, select the image you want to apply the preset to in the Product panel.

2 Open the Presets tool.

3 Select a preset and check the Image Settings in the right panel.

4 Open the cogwheel menu and choose Apply to apply the settings to the image.

The settings are applied to the image without opening the Product Editor. You will see the result of tiling immediately in the Product panel and when you place the image on a sheet.

NOTE: If an image has already been edited in the Product Editor, the preset replaces these existing setting and adds settings which are not yet specified for the image.

▷ Update a preset

1 Open the image which has the required settings in the Product Editor.

2 Open the Presets tool.

3 Select the preset you want to update and unlock the settings or choose Edit Preset on the cogwheel menu.

4 You can make further changes with the inspectors if you want and/or select or clear the check boxes in the Image Settings panel.

5 Click the Update Changed button to include the changes in the preset.

6 Apply the Preset to a new image to test your preset.

Tiles in the Layout Editor

The tiles of a tiled image appear as individual images in the Product panel of the Layout Editor. They form a group of images enclosed in a light blue box together with the master image. Tiles can be placed on sheets just like other images by dragging and dropping, or using the Auto Layout feature. Selecting the master images automatically selects all the tiles and places them on the sheet.

1 Instances of an image on all the sheets of a job
2 Tile size
3 Position in the montage scheme: R1C2: Row 1; Column 2
4 Tile number: e.g. 2/4: tile number 2 of a total of 4 tiles

▷ Expand or collapse a tiled image

1. To expand a tiled image and see the individual tiles in the Product panel, context-click the tiled image and choose **Expand Tiles**.
2. To collapse the tiles of a tiled image, context-click a tile or the master image and choose **Collapse Tiles**, or double-click the master image.

Figure 4.26: Tiles expanded in the Product panel of the Layout Editor

Design and Artwork Products

So-called packaging products generally combine a design and artwork: the contours of the design are filled with the artwork. The product design is defined by spot colors in a PDF file or the design paths in a CAD file. The artwork image can be aligned manually or snapped to a path in the design.

▷ Snap artwork to the product design

1. Click the artwork to reveal the known paths (spot colors) in the artwork.

   The known paths appear in the **Snap using** drop-down list above the Product pane.

2. Choose a spot color and the Product Editor will attempt to align the paths of the selected color with the contour of the design.

   If the artwork cannot be aligned with the design, its position does not change and a warning icon is displayed above the drop-down and in the Sources panel of the Product Inspector.

▷ Edit design paths

You can use the Path Editor inspector to edit the paths of a product design – not the paths in the artwork. For more information, refer to “Paths Inspector” on page 207.

Related topics:

- Working with CAD Layouts on page 166
- Paths Inspector on page 207

CHAPTER 5

Managing Jobs

This section describes how you can monitor and manage jobs in the Jobs window.

The Jobs Window

The main purpose of the Jobs window is to allow you to monitor, view, and manage the jobs that are created by the Apogee System. Much of the information you need is displayed as icons in the Job List. This information, together with the six tabs of selected job details, gives you a full and detailed snapshot of the jobs in hand.

The main window is divided into 4 panes:

- The Output Device List: On the left side of the window, you see a list of currently configured output devices, e.g. Export, TIFF Imagesetter, etc.
- The Job List: Next to the Output Device list, you see the Job List. This list displays the jobs that have been submitted to the Apogee System.

  NOTE: Only jobs associated with the device selected in the Output Device List are displayed.

- Filters: Above the Job List, you can enter filter criteria directly into the Quick Filter box. Below the Output Device List, you have custom job filters for filtering the Job List based on a variety of criteria.
- Selected Job details: The pane on the right side of the window displays information on the selected job:
  - The Results tab: Allows you to view the results of the selected job. This tab displays thumbnails of the Run List pages, and job separations (if any). See “Viewing the Results Tab” on page 261.

NOTE: The Job Manager provides a read-only view on jobs.

The Output Device List

The Output Device List displays all available Output and Print Task Processors. This pane is identical in both the Jobs Window and the Hot Tickets Window.

When you select an Output or Print Task Processor in the Jobs Window, the Job List is filtered to display only the jobs that include the selected Task Processor in their Production Plan.

NOTE: Depending on their software or hardware status, Task Processor icons may be displayed with different colors or with small icon overlays. For more information, see “Task Processor Component (Software) Status” on page 467 and “Output Task Processor Hardware Status” on page 466.

The Job List

The Job List displays the status of jobs that have been submitted to the Apogee System. This includes jobs created using Job Tickets, as well as jobs created dynamically using Hot Tickets.

Job List Layout

When you create and submit a job, it appears immediately in the Job List with its details displayed in columns. You may see a flat list of jobs or groups of jobs in expandable folders if you choose to group your jobs.

For each job, the Job List displays one or more icons which indicate its current status, and the type of processing that has been applied in this job. A job produced by a Hot Ticket is indistinguishable from any other manually submitted job.

The Job List is divided vertically into the following columns:

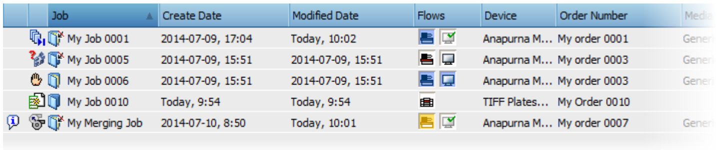
- Notification: May display an icon which indicates an error, warning, or remark.
- Status: May display one or more icons (up to 4) which indicate the current or recent job states. These icons are sorted from the left according to priority. You can expand the width of this column to view the lower priority icons.
- Job: Either the name of the job, or an expandable group folder which contains all the jobs that are grouped by the selected property.
- Order Number: The order number of a job.
- Job Number: A unique ascending number assigned chronologically to each job.
- Media: The media selected to print the job.
- Flows: Displays one or more icons which correspond to the number and types of flows specified in the Ticket.
- Create Date: The dates and times when jobs were submitted. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Modified Date: The dates and times when jobs were modified. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Company: The company name of the customer.

- Device: The device selected to print the job.
- Milestone: The due date you entered for the planning of the job.

These job details are displayed for each job in their respective column.

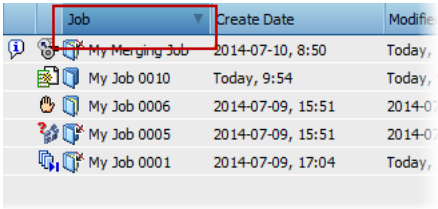
Organizing the Job List

By default, the Job List displays jobs in alphabetical (ascending) order with all the columns displayed. You can organize how the Job List is displayed as follows.



Sort Job List columns

Job List columns can be sorted according to any of the column headers by clicking the relevant column header: Click once to sort alphabetically (ascending); click again (or Shift-click) to sort in reverse alphabetical order (descending).



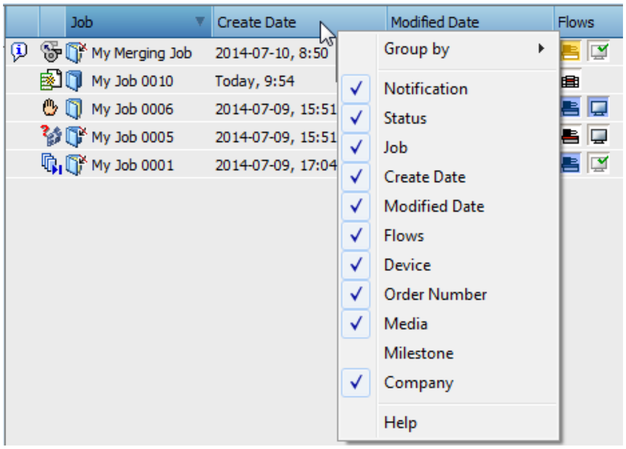
The sort column is indicated with a darker header and an arrow indicates the ascending or descending sort order. You cannot sort on the Flows column.

Rearrange Job List columns

You can rearrange the columns by dragging the column headers horizontally, and adjust the width of the columns by dragging the left or right edges of the column headers.

Show/hide Job List columns

Context-click in any of the column headers to display a menu where you can show/hide the columns by selecting/clearing the appropriate check box.



▷ Group jobs in the Job List

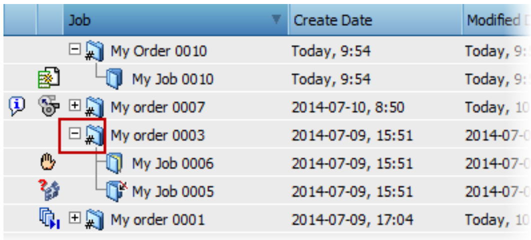
You can group jobs by clicking in the column header context-menu and selecting the **Group by** option. You can group by:

- Order Number
- Create Date
- Modified Date
- Device
- Media
- Company

For example, selecting Group by Order Number, groups the jobs with the same order number in an expandable folder. These expandable order number folders are shown in the Job column and the Order Number column is hidden.

TIP: You can also click the expand/collapse buttons to open and close job folders.

If you double-click a job group in the Job List, the folder is expanded to reveal the individual jobs. The job will have no content until you or other users start inputting documents via the associated input channel.



The # symbol you see on the folders indicates that the jobs in the Job List are grouped into folders.

Filtering the Job List

You can customize the layout and content of the Job List to suit your particular requirements, and to keep track of your jobs more easily. This becomes more important as the size of the Job List increases, while you want to keep track of specific orders and/or jobs.

Apogee filters the Job List based on a combination of all the selected filters. When you apply the filter, only the jobs which match ALL the selected criteria will be displayed.

The following three filter types are available above and below the Output Device list on the left of the Job List:

- Quick filter: a text entry box
- Output Device filters to filter jobs by device (number of matching jobs to the right of the device name)
- Custom Job filters that allow users to specify custom sets of filter criteria (number of matching jobs to the right of the filter name)

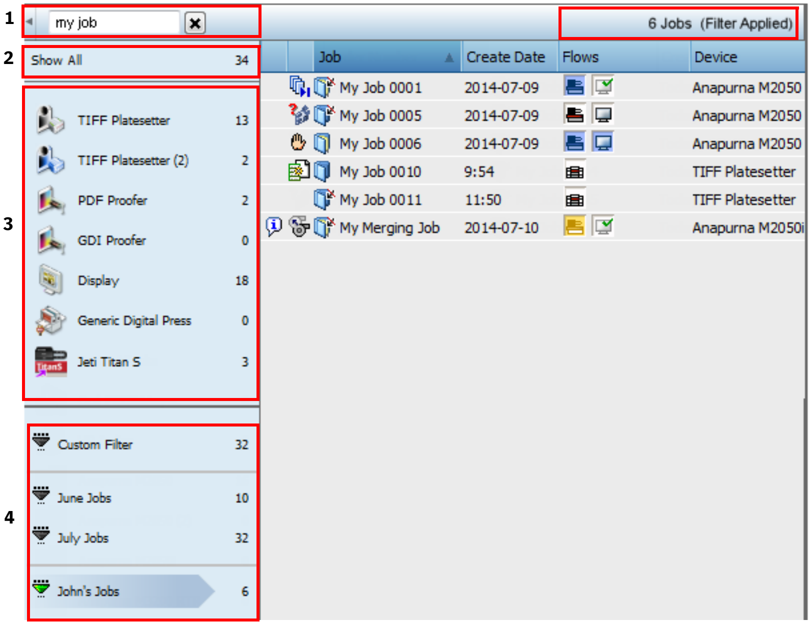
You can apply the filters individually or combine them. Combining filters of the same type, e.g. two Output Device filters, displays the sum of the two filters. Combining filters of different types, e.g. Quick filter + Output Device + Custom Job filter, only displays the jobs that match all the criteria of the filters.

These filtering features also apply for Hot Tickets in the Hot Ticket List.

NOTE: An Administrator can also filter the Job List by user role to allow specified users to see only certain jobs. This filtering is not indicated in the Job List. See “” on page 490.

Figure 5.27: Job List filters

1 Quick filter
2 Show All button
3 Output device filters
4 Custom job filters
5 Filter panel



NOTE: The Output Devices pane must be set to show to see the Show All button and the Custom job filters panel. Choose View > Panes > Devices to show/hide the Output Devices pane.

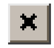
Filter the Job or Hot Ticket List using Quick Filter

The Quick Filter can be used to search for text contained anywhere in the order number, job name or number, media name of jobs or Hot Tickets. The Quick Filter is always applied in addition to other selected filters.

1. Select the Jobs or Hot Tickets Window.
2. Click inside the Quick Filter text field.
3. Start to enter the text you want to search for.

   As you type, the list is dynamically filtered.

   For example, if you type the letter ‘j’, the Job List will start filtering for all jobs with fields that contain the letter ‘j’. If you extend the search text to ‘je’, the number of matches are further narrowed down accordingly.
4. Click the Clear button on the right of the Quick Filter text field to remove the Quick filter.



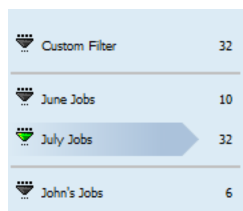
▷ Filter the Job List with one or more custom job filters

1 Select the Jobs Window.

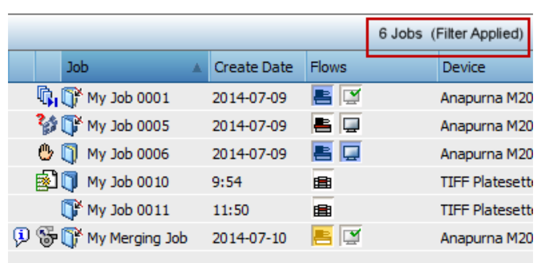
2 Click one of the custom job filters under the output device pane.

The Job List now displays only the jobs which correspond to the selected filter criteria.

The selected Job List Filter icon is colored green to indicate that this particular filter is active, with an arrow pointing to the number of jobs displayed for this filter.

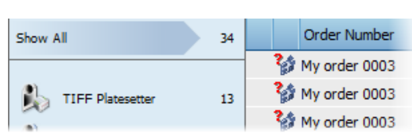


In the filter panel in the top right corner of the Job List, you can also see the total number of jobs displayed in the Job List, with an indication that a filter is applied.

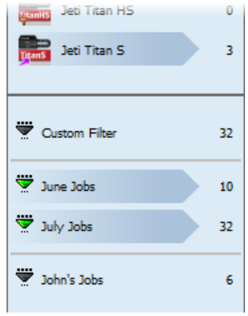


3 To switch off a job filter, click the filter once.

The Show All indicator is highlighted and all the jobs are displayed if no other filters are selected.



4 To apply multiple filters, hold the CTRL button and click the filters you want to combine. Click a selected filter again with the CTRL button pressed to deselect it. You can combine Custom Job filters with Output Device filters and Quick filter.



Combining filters of the same type, e.g. two Output Device filters, displays the sum of the two filters. Combining filters of different types, e.g. Quick filter + Output Device + Custom Job filter, only displays the jobs that match all the criteria of the filters.

▷ Create a new custom job filter

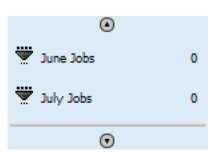
The first new custom filter is created as a duplicate of the initial Custom Filter. Subsequently, you can also duplicate your newly created filters.

1 Hover over the initial Custom Filter and choose Save As in the cogwheel drop-down list.

2 Enter the new name in the Save As box and click Save.

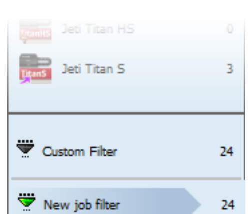
The new filter is added to the bottom of the list. This is a duplicate of the initial Custom Filter which always remains at the top of the list.

You may need to scroll through the list with the Up and Down arrows.



3 To move the filter in the list, hover over the filter and choose Move Up/Move Down in the cogwheel drop-down list. You can also insert a dividing line under a filter by choosing Insert Divider in the same drop-down list.

You can now edit this newly created filter.



▷ Edit a custom job filter

1. Hover over the filter you want to edit and choose Edit in the cogwheel drop-down list.
2. Specify your filter options, as described in “Job Filter Settings” on page 250.
3. Click Apply to see the effects of the filter on the number of jobs displayed in the Job List.
4. Click Save to confirm your changes and close the Job Filter dialog.

▷ Rename/duplicate/delete a custom job filter

- Hover over the filter name you want to rename/duplicate/delete and choose the action in the cogwheel drop-down list.

NOTE: You cannot rename/duplicate/delete/move the initial Custom Filter.

▷ Filter the Job or Hot Ticket List on the selected output device

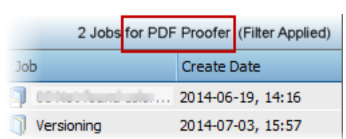
1. Select the Jobs or Hot Tickets Window.

   The number of jobs using a particular output device is shown on the right of each device name in the Output Device list.

2. Select one of the devices in the Output Device list.

   The Jobs/Hot Tickets List now displays only the jobs or tickets which use the selected output device.

   In the filter pane in the top right corner of the Job List, you can see the total number of jobs or Hot Tickets that use the selected output device.

3. Click another output device or the Show All filter to remove the filter. Hold the CTRL button and click multiple output devices to display the jobs of all the selected devices.

Job Notification Icons

Apogee displays Job Notification icons in the 1st column of the Job and Hot Ticket Lists. These icons indicate errors, warnings and remarks, and are sorted by priority; i.e. when a job has several notifications at the same time, Apogee displays the highest priority icon.

A group of jobs (order number folder in the job list) shows the icon of the job with the highest priority notification within the group.

NOTE: The Hot Ticket list can only display a limited subset of these Notification icons.

The icons you may see are as follows (listed in order of priority):


The Apogee system issued a critical message.


The job has stopped pending user interaction.


The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

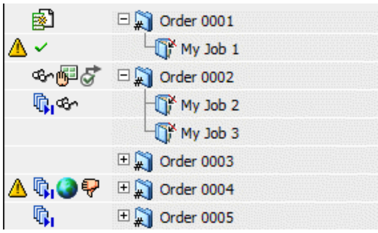

The job has generated a warning.


The job has generated an information message.

You can click any of these icons to display a detailed Problem Report.

Job Status Icons

Apogee displays Job Status icons in the 2nd column of the Job and Hot Ticket Lists. These icons indicate the current or last activity associated with the corresponding job.



The Status icons are sorted by priority; i.e. when a job has several states at the same time, Apogee displays the highest priority icon first.

A group of jobs (order number folder in the job list) shows the status icon of the job with the highest priority status within the group. The exceptions are the archiving, deleting and finished status icons. The first two are never shown, and the last is only shown when all jobs in the group are finished.

NOTE: The Hot Ticket list can only display a limited subset of these Status icons.

The icons you may see are as follows (listed in order of priority):

 The job is being archived or dumped.

 The job is being imported from archive.

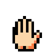
 The job is being deleted.

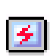
 Apogee is queuing all commands for this job.

 You are editing the Run List.

 The job is finished.

 The job was broken during editing. You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

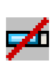
 The job has been manually put on hold.

 The job is waiting for a Task Processor (none currently available).

 A group of results is complete, and is waiting to be printed (blue icon).

 The result is waiting for a Hard Proof.

 The job is waiting for a Soft Proof.

 A task has been aborted.

 The task has been manually put on hold.

 New (unplaced) documents are available in the (Private) Page Store.

 Not all the results of a group are yet available (green icon).

 The job is waiting for After Hours processing.

	Some results have been rejected by the user.
	The layout/imposition is not yet defined.
	The job has reached a Milestone: The Run List is not complete.
	The job has reached a Milestone: The job deadline has been reached.
	The job has reached a Milestone: The result is not available in time.
	A job that has been merged.
	A merged job. The job resulting from the merging of two or more other jobs.
	Job is a recurring job.
	A StoreFront job. The job was generated by StoreFront.

Job Icons

Apogee displays Job icons in the Job or Order No columns of the Job List. These icons indicate the type of job, as well as whether or not the Run List is complete.

With the exception of the Job folder icon, all the basic Job icons may be superimposed with one or more additional icon indicators. These provide supplementary status information, and allow you to make a highly detailed visual assessment of your jobs by simply looking at the Job List.

These icon indicators may be combined, so that up to 4 additional items of information may be displayed for any of the Job icons (see “Job Icon Combinations (Commercial Jobs)” below).

 Job group.

 Commercial job with incomplete Run List.

 Commercial job with complete Run List.

 Rush job (Commercial jobs only).

 Commercial job with disabled input channel.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be archived when it is finished.

 Commercial job has been archived.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be deleted when it is finished.

 Commercial job has been deleted.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be archived and deleted when it is finished.

 Commercial job has been archived and deleted.

NOTE: Only the Complete Run List icon is displayed in the Hot Tickets List.

Job Icon Combinations (Commercial Jobs)

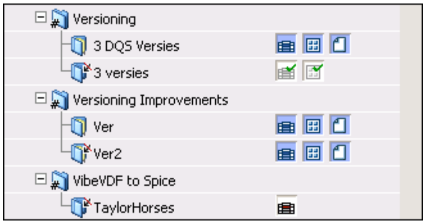
The following table lists all the possible icon combinations you may see for Commercial jobs.

Job status	normal	deleting	deleted	archiving/ dumping	archived/ dumped	archiving & deleting	archived & deleting	archived & deleted
Incomplete Run List								
Incomplete Run List disabled input								
Incomplete Run List rushed job								
Incomplete Run List disabled input+rushed job								

Job status	normal	deleting	deleted	archiving/ dumping	archived/ dumped	archiving & deleting	archived & deleting	archived & deleted
Complete Run List								
Complete Run List disabled input								
Complete Run List rushed job								
Complete Run List disabled input+rushed job								

Flow Icons

Apogee displays Flow icons in the Job and Hot Ticket Lists. These icons correspond to the number and types of flows specified in the job or ticket:



When you create a Ticket, it appears in the Job/Hot Ticket List, together with one or more Flow icons in the Flows column.

The Flow icons display:

- the type of flow, indicated by the icon image.
- the status of the flow, indicated by the icon color.

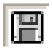
The following icon types are available:


Main Output to a high resolution output device.


Main Output to a Wide Format output device.

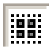

Imposition Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to an imposition proofing device.


Page Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to a page proofing device.


Export: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for exporting job results to file in PDF or PostScript format.


Public Page Store: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for storing job results in a Public Page Store.


Display: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used to create job results for high-resolution soft proofing.


Digital Quick Strip (DQS): An alternate mode of operation which supports the PrintDrive DQS mode of Apogee Series3. In this mode, Apogee creates and renders the flat backgrounds and pages separately. These are then sent as separate items to PrintDrive. PrintDrive assembles the pages onto the backgrounds, and then outputs the results as an integral job.


Collecting Hot Ticket: Uses the Collect TP to collect images and create special Hot Tickets.

The different flows associated with a job can also be monitored in The Activity Pane.

Up to three flow icons may be displayed for each job or ticket.

Flow Icon Color Coding

As a general rule throughout the Apogee user interface, you will find that specific icon background colors are associated with specific conditions.

In the Job List, the background color of each flow icon indicates one of several states, as follows:

 A white background color indicates that this flow is idle.

 A green background color indicates that this flow is currently active.

 A blue background color indicates that this flow is on hold.

 A yellow background color indicates that this flow contains tasks which are queued and waiting to be processed.

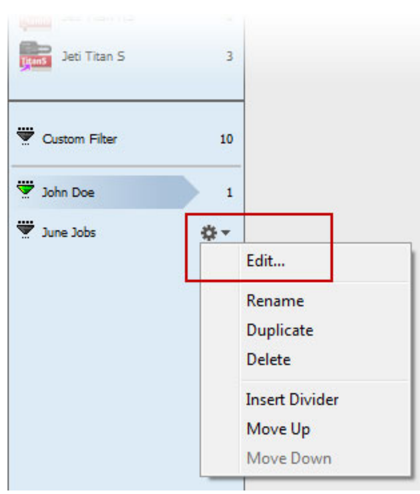
 A white background color with a green checkmark indicates that this flow has finished.

 A red background color indicates that this flow has generated an error.

Job Filter Settings

The Job Filter allows you to filter the jobs displayed in the Job List according to job status, administration fields, media, or date.

- Display the job filter settings by hovering over the filter name and clicking Edit in the cogwheel drop-down list.



Status

In Page Store

To filter on Page Store criteria, select the In Page Store check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- New documents: Displays only jobs that contain new documents that have not yet been added to the Run List.
- No new documents: Displays only jobs that have no new documents.

Pages To filter on Run List criteria, select the Pages check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Has All: Display jobs that have a complete Run List.
- Misses Some: Display jobs that have incomplete Run Lists.

On Hold To filter on jobs on hold, select the On Hold check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are on hold.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not on hold.

In Error To filter on error criteria, select the In Error check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are in error.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not in error.

Finished To filter on complete or incomplete jobs, select the Finished check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are finished.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not finished.

Archived To filter on archived job criteria, select the Archived check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that have been archived.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that have not been archived.

Deleted To filter on deleted job criteria, select the Deleted check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are deleted
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not deleted

Merged To display jobs that have been merged into a merged job, select the check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Has: Displays jobs that have already been merged
- Has Not: Displays the jobs that have not yet been merged

Merged job To show only merged jobs (i.e. jobs that merge other jobs into a single job), select the check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Displays jobs that are merged jobs
- Is Not: Displays the jobs that are not merged jobs

Layout job To filter by jobs set up in the Layout Editor.

Set up by printer/customer Allows you to filter on the status of WebApproval jobs: the job setup is Pending or Completed by the printer or customer.

Submitted by

Select these check boxes to filter the jobs which have been:

- submitted or not submitted by StoreFront
- enabled or not enabled for WebApproval.

Administration

Use the Administration filter to view jobs based on the criteria specified in the job's Administration tab. You can filter on any combination of these fields, however the Job List will display only the jobs which pass through all of the filters. The following fields can be used to filter:

- Job Name
- Order Number
- Operator Name
- Company Name
- Operator

The following filter parameters can be chosen in the drop-down list:

- Contains/Does not contain
- Starts with/Does not start with

- Ends with/Does not end with
- Equals/Does not equal
- Any/Current User (for Operator Name only)

Media

Allows you to filter on the media used for the job, with the same filter parameters as for Administration.

Date

Use the Date filter to view jobs that were submitted, modified, finished or due, before or after a specific date or within a specific time period. If you use the *between* argument, the first date to enter is the most recent date.

Job and System Logging

Two types of logs are available in Apogee:

- The Job Log: For logging events related to jobs.
- The System Log: For logging events related to the Apogee System.

The Job Log

The Job Log is opened when you context-click on a job in the Jobs window, and select Log for Job from the context menu. The Job Log is used to keep track of completed jobs. It is also useful for accounting and troubleshooting.

NOTE: The Job Log does not list System events. These are recorded in the System Log (see “The System Log” on page 256).

The Job Log is automatically exported when the job completes. This allows an external MIS to pick up the log file and perform any required accounting. One or more logged items can also be copied as text using the Copy/Paste commands. However, the Job Log cannot be manually exported.

The Job Log lists all job events which take place within Apogee. This is a plain, non-interactive event log.

The Job Log consists of a Filter pane, a chronological list of logged events, and an additional information pane.

- The Job Log Filter and list of events work together: The events displayed are determined by the filter (if any) you apply.
- The lower pane displays more detailed information on the selected event.

List of Events

The list of events displays a date, source, event type and description for each event.

When Displays the time and date at which the event was logged.

From Displays the name of the job which generated the logged message.

Event Displays the type of the event that was logged.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the generated event. You can view the full message (in the lower pane) by selecting it.

You can sort the events on any of these Message fields by clicking the arrow in the column headers. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled between ascending and descending order.

The Job Log Filter

You access the Job Log filter by clicking on the Filter icon in the Job Log:

Filter

Toggle filtering on or off.

Event Type

Choose one or more event groups for which the filter will be applied.

Life cycle events (**created, started, finished**): When a job is created, has started or is finished.

Error warning notifications: This includes the error status of Task Processors, device statuses such as error, online and offline and non-informative notifications with their reply.

Informative notifications: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Proofing actions: Events related to the proofing result such as waiting, continue, approve, reject, resume.

User interactions: Job related events such as resume, rush, edit. Task Processor related events such as hold, resume, rush. Result related events such as remake.

Media usage: Events related to the use of resources such as film and plate or proofing media.

Used resources: Events related to Resource selection such as screen types, profiles, calibration and linearization curves. Events related to Task Processor parameter sets.

Color Management: Events related to input document color management, press and proofing output color management and spot colors.

Event Details

Contains: Find a match on a specified text string (in any of the event's fields). If you type several words, all words must occur. For example, "preflight red" only shows events that contain both the words "preflight" and "red". Leave the field empty if you do not wish to filter on content. This filter is case insensitive.

Occurred Display only the events that were generated during a specific time period.

You apply the filter by toggling the Filter On, choosing or specifying your filtering options, and clicking Apply.

When the filter is in use, you will see the following type of message with an indication of the number of logged events:

NOTE: By default, all events are displayed (i.e. no filter is applied).

The System Log

The System log displays logging information on the selected item in the System Overview (the Apogee System or a specific Task Processor). The main purpose of the System log is for troubleshooting. The log can be inspected interactively, or can be exported. The Apogee System keeps logged events for a specified time period, after which they are removed. You can also manually clean up the System log.

System events are events that are not directly related to the processing of jobs (although they may affect job processing).

The System Log consists of a Filter pane, a chronological list of logged events, and an additional information pane.

- The Job Log Filter and list of events work together: The events displayed are determined by the filter (if any) you apply.
- The lower pane displays more detailed information on the selected event.

List of Events

The list of events displays a date, source, event type and description for each event.

When Displays the time and date at which the event was logged.

From Displays the name of the device or system which generated the logged message.

Event Displays the name of the type of event that was logged.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the generated event. You can view the full message (in the lower pane) by selecting it.

You can sort the events on any of these Message fields by clicking the arrow in the column headers. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled between ascending and descending order.

The System Log Filter

You access the System Log filter by clicking on the Filter icon in the System Log:

Filter

Toggle filtering on or off.

Event Type

Choose one or more event groups for which the filter will be applied.

Major Task Processor events (start, stop): This includes the status such as boot or shutdown of Task Processors.

Error and warning notifications: This includes the error status of Task Processors, device statuses such as error, online and offline and non-informative notifications with their reply.

Informative notifications: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Proofing actions: Events related to the proofing result such as waiting, continue, approve, reject, resume.

User interactions (start, stop, restart): This includes Task Processor statuses such as start, shutdown, hold or resume.

Used resources: Events related to Resource selection such as screen types, profiles, calibration and linearization curves. Events related to Task Processor parameter sets.

Event Details

Contains: Find a match on a specified text string (in any of the event's fields). If you type several words, all words must occur. For example, "preflight red" only shows events that contain both the words "preflight" and "red". Leave the field empty if you do not wish to filter on content. This filter is case insensitive.

Occurred Display only the events that were generated during a specific time period.

You apply the filter by toggling the Filter On, choosing or specifying your filtering options, and clicking Apply.

When the filter is in use, you will see the following type of message with an indication of the number of logged events:

NOTE: By default, all events are displayed (i.e. no filter is applied).

Problem Report

The Problem Report displays all messages generated by the associated job. It is similar to the Message Board. The main difference is that the Problem Report gives an overview of all problems found during ticket editing in the Ticket Editor, or Run List editing in the Jobs window. The Problem Report is generated on the local Client, not on the Apogee System.

A Problem Report is opened if you click one of the following status icons which may appear next to a job in the Job List:

 The Apogee system issued a critical message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

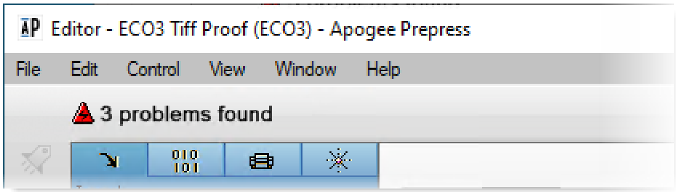
 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

 The job has generated an information message.

NOTE: In the Job List, do not click on the status icon of a collapsed group. You must first expand the group to reveal the job in error.

It is also opened if you click any of the same status icons which may appear in the Tab Area of the Ticket Editor:



The Problem Report consists of a Message List, Acknowledge Pane, and Interaction pane.

Message List

The Message List displays the status, date, type, and description of each message.

Status One of the four job status icons is displayed (see above).

Date occurred Displays the date and time that the problem occurred.

Location Displays the name of the job, device, or system where the message was generated. If this is a job, then the job order number is also displayed in parentheses. You can sort the messages according to location by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the message. You can view the full message by selecting it. You can sort the messages according to description by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Each message row has a colored background:

Pink: The message has not yet been Acknowledged.

Blue: This is the currently selected message.

Gray: The message has been Acknowledged.

Acknowledge pane

The Acknowledge pane displays information and the acknowledgement status of the currently selected message in the Message List.

Message summary Displays the summarized message text from the Message List Description column.

Reported by Indicates which Task Processor generated the message, and when, in the format “Reported by <Task Processor> on <time and date>”.

Acknowledgement status Indicates who (if anybody) first acknowledged the message, and when, in the format “acknowledged by <user> at <time and date>”.

Acknowledgement button This button appears if the selected message has not yet been acknowledged. Click this button once you have read the message. Any Errors or Warnings that you acknowledge are removed from the Message List. User Interaction messages remain in the list until the required action has been taken.

Notification/Interaction pane

Notification message Displays a more detailed version of the message. Some messages are followed by a suggested course of action, such as:

```
"There is no location for exporting the system log. The default
      C:\Apogee Prepress\SysLog\$DATE.log will be used"
```

Interactive dialog buttons. Some messages include interactive dialog buttons which allow you to correct the cause of the error or warning. For example, Edit Job or Resume Job.

NOTE: If you select more than one message, you will see no specific message information, only “x messages selected”.

Viewing the Results Tab

The Results tab allows you to view the results of the selected job. This tab displays thumbnails of the Run List pages, and job separations (if any).

NOTE: Double-clicking a result opens it in preview mode (see "Previewing Job Results" on page 325).

This tab is divided into the following panes:

- The Activity Pane
- The Job Layout Pane (Jobs Window)

The Activity Pane

This pane allows you to monitor the current processing status of any of the selected job's Processing and Output Task Processors.

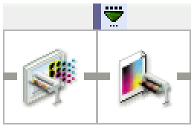
The Activity pane includes the following:

- Flow selection icons

  You will see one or more Flow Identifier icons, corresponding to each flow in the selected job. When you click on any of these icons, the selected flow is displayed, and you will see the Task Processors and Actions that are active in this particular flow. This is the same as clicking the Flow Status icons in the Job List.

- Selected flow components (active Task Processors and Actions).

  You will see the Task Processors and Actions that are active in the selected flow. If you double-click on any of the Task Processors, you will see the Activity Window for that particular component.

- Results tab display icons.

  - Click the first of these icons to show/hide the Activity pane.

- Click the second of these icons to show/hide the Production Sets table (Multi-part jobs only).
- Click the third icon to show/hide the Separations pane.

NOTE: Input channel activity is not displayed in the Activity pane. If you want to check this, switch to the System Overview and double-click the Task Processor that you want to monitor. Any processing is then displayed in the Activity window. For more information, see "Monitoring your Task Processors" on page 466.

The Job Layout Pane (Jobs Window)

This pane displays thumbnails of the Run List pages of the selected job. Status icons, corner folds, and colored backgrounds provide additional information about the current status and orientation of each of the displayed thumbnails.

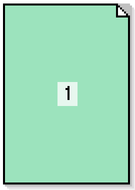
TIP: To improve the speed with which job results are displayed, you can disable thumbnail viewing from the View menu.

You can double-click any of the thumbnails to launch the appropriate viewer for this specific page (Acrobat for PDF documents or Raster Preview for TIFF files). If the job has not yet received all required pages, you will see only empty placeholders.

Page and Flat Thumbnails

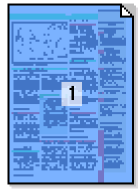
You need to enable thumbnails (View > Thumbnails) in order to view a miniature representation of your job pages in the Job Layout pane.

If no imposition has been specified for the selected job, you will see a series of pages. The current status of each page is indicated by its background color.

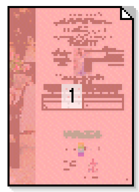


A thumbnail view of this page is either not available, or is currently being retrieved from the Apogee System (green background color).

Page has been processed successfully (no background color).

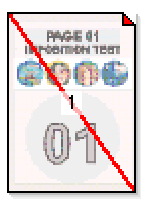


Page has been processed successfully, and is on hold pending approval (blue background color).

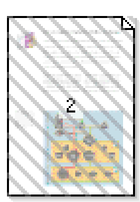


Page has been processed with errors (red background color).

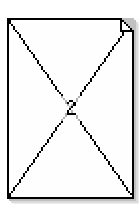
Page is managed by the PlateMaker Client, and is ready to plate (purple background color).



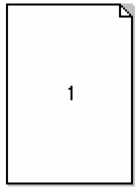
Page has been processed successfully, but has been rejected.



Page has been discarded.



An empty page in the Run List (white background with a cross).



A blank page in the Run List (white background).

If an imposition scheme has been specified, you will see a series of flats. As with pages, the status of each flat is indicated by its background color.

Extra Thumbnail Information

The following additional information is available for both pages and flats:

- Action indicator
- Separation indicator
- Proofing data indicator
- Raster data indicator
- Corner fold indicator
- Page number
- Flat label
- Signature

Action Indicator

Each individual page or flat may have one or more Action indicators above it (corresponding to hold points in the Production Plan). These may be any of the following:

The job's Production Plan contains an After Hours Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending the specified time.

The job's Production Plan contains a Soft Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/rejection of a Digital Film preview by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Hard Copy Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/ rejection of a hard copy proof by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Ready for Plating Action. When this point is reached, the job results are taken over and managed by PlateRunner (ready to plate).

The job's Production Plan contains a Collect for Output Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending user intervention.

The job's Production Plan contains a Waiting for Results Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the target flow or required pages are finished.

The job's Production Plan contains a Discard Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the specified pages have been automatically discarded.

These Action indicators can be in one of three states (as indicated below for the Soft Proof Action):

Action icon	Status
	The page or flat has not yet reached this Action.
	The page or flat has reached this Action (blue background).
	The page or flat has passed this Action (dimmed icon).

When a flat is on hold, the entire flat is colored with a blue background in the Results tab, as illustrated below:

When a page is on hold, only the page is colored with a blue background:

Any actions that have already been passed in the flow are grayed-out (dimmed), as follows:

The separation indicators provide the following information for each of the colors.

Square outlined separation indicator:
- A process color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). In this example, it is the magenta separation.
- The background is available for an Apogee DQS job.

Square solid separation indicator: A process color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

Checked separation indicator: The separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

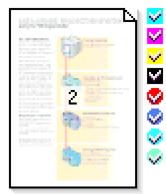
Dimmed separation indicator: The separation has been discarded, and will not be output.

Round outlined separation indicator: A spot color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). The outline color is the color of the expected spot color.

Round solid separation indicator: A spot color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. The solid color is the spot color.

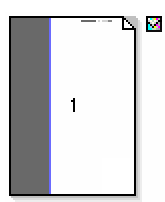
Checked separation indicator: The spot color separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output.

For example, the page below contains 8 separations: the four CMYK process colors plus four spot colors. All these separations have been rendered (as indicated by the solid separation indicators) and have been successfully output (as indicated by the associated checkmarks):



Proofing Data Indicator

Results may display a small, square multi-colored icon to their right. This is the Proofing Data indicator. It indicates that the page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow, and is a composite TIFF file (i.e., no separations).



A checkmark indicates that the page/flat has been successfully output.


The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The page/flat has been rendered, and is ready for output.


The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The checkmark indicates that it has been successfully printed.

Raster Data Indicator

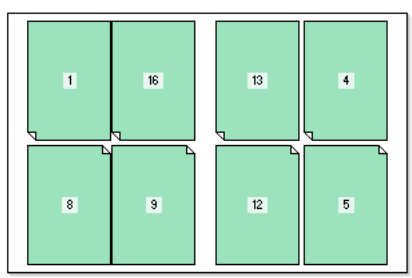
For DQS and native Apogee DQS (Raster Impose) results, you can choose View > Show > Page Rendered. Results will then display a square gray-colored indicator in the lower right corner. This is the Raster Data indicator. It means that all separations in the page(s) have been fully rendered and are ready for previewing or output.

Corner Fold Indicator

Small corner folds in a corner of each page indicate a page's orientation.

The orientation of a page may vary in an imposition layout. The position of the corner fold tells you where the top of the page is.

The orientation of a page may vary in an imposition layout. The position of the corner fold tells you where the top of the page is:



Page Number

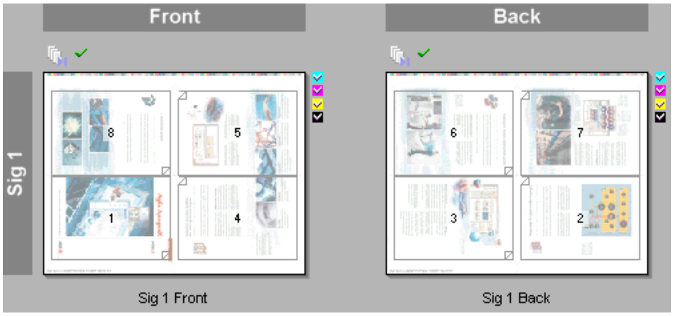
Page numbers indicate the position of pages in the Run List. If you are viewing a flat, you will see the position of the pages on the flat.

Flat Label

Below each flat you will see a label, which indicates which side of the signature you are looking at. You can click this label to quickly select the entire flat. This is useful if pages cover the entire surface of the flat, making it difficult to select the flat (and not a page) by clicking directly on it.

Signature

If Front and Back viewing has been enabled, you will see the complete signature for each page or flat in the job.



NOTE: In this example, the small checkmarks you can see indicates that all separations have been output.

Working with Jobs in the Job List

The Job List displays information on all jobs that have been submitted to the Apogee System. From here you can monitor these jobs, and make a variety of changes to their current status:

- "Selecting Jobs" on page 271
- "Monitoring Jobs" on page 272
- "Holding/Resuming Jobs" on page 272
- "Continuing Jobs" on page 274
- "Making Rush Jobs" on page 277
- "Restarting Job Processing" on page 277
- "Duplicating Jobs" on page 277
- "Creating a New Job from an Existing Job" on page 278
- "Deleting Jobs" on page 279
- "Enabling/Disabling Input Channels" on page 280
- "Opening the Job and System Logs" on page 281
- "Archiving Jobs" on page 282
- "Dumping Jobs" on page 283
- "Merging Jobs" on page 284
- "Offline Jobs" on page 288
- "Reveal Supplementary Files" on page 290

Selecting Jobs

In the Job List and the Results tab, as in other areas of the Apogee Client, you can use the following procedures to select and de-select multiple items (jobs, Hot Tickets, pages, flats, etc.).

NOTE: Jobs may be grouped in job folders as explained in "Organizing the Job List" on page 237.

▷ To select a job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Double-click a job folder in the Job List.

   The job folder is expanded to reveal the job contents. These are the documents that have been input via the input channel(s) associated with this particular ticket.
3. Select one of the jobs.

   The job details are retrieved from the Apogee System and displayed in the pane on the right. This information is arranged into 5 tabs - Administration, Options, Products, Plan, Pages, and Results.

TIP: You can also click the expand/collapse buttons to open and close job folders.

▷ To select or de-select multiple jobs or items

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Click the first item you want to select in the Job List.
3. While holding down the CTRL key (Windows) or COMMAND key, click each additional item you want to select.
4. To de-select an item, hold down the CTRL key and then click the item.
5. To extend the selection over a block of contiguous items, click the first item and then hold down the SHIFT key while clicking the last item you want to select.

Monitoring Jobs

You can quickly check the status of your jobs as follows:

▷ To monitor a job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Expand the folders in the Job List to view your jobs.

   A series of icons indicate the current status of each job in the Job List. These include Job Notification Icons, Job Status Icons, Job Icons, and Flow Icons.
3. To view information on a job's Run List, select the job and click the Pages tab.

   The Run List is displayed in the pane on the right.
4. To view intermediate job results, select the job and click the Results tab.

   If any page results are available, they are displayed in the pane on the right. Otherwise, you will see only empty page holders.
5. To monitor any ongoing processing, expand the Activity pane in the Results tab.

   For more information, see "The Activity Pane" on page 261.

Holding/Resuming Jobs

When you manually put a job on hold in the Jobs List, you suspend all processing tasks for the entire job (after the current activity has been allowed to finish). The job remains on hold until you resume it.

NOTE: You cannot "continue" a job that is on hold: The Continue command will be disabled. In this case, you must use the "Resume" command.

▷ To manually hold a job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Context-click a job which has not yet finished processing in the Job List (or job results in the Job Layout pane), and choose Hold Job from the context menu.
3. You can also click the Hold button:

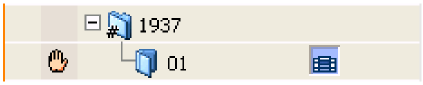
   The Hold Job dialog box appears. Here you can choose to stop any ongoing processing, or allow it to finish before the job is put on hold.
4. If you want to stop processing, choose Stop and Hold.

This means that active tasks are stopped and rescheduled. The rescheduled tasks are then put on hold.

5 If you want to allow any ongoing processing to finish, choose Hold.

This means that all active tasks will be allowed to finish and all queued tasks will be put on hold.

The Hold icon appears in the Status column to the left of the job. Notice also that the background color of the associated Job Flow icon changes to blue.



All flats and pages that still need to be processed in the Pages and Results tabs will also be colored blue. Only results that were finished are not colored blue.

The job's input channels will continue to receive and deliver documents to the Page Store, but no further processing will be done on them. This means that although you may see new documents arrive in the Page Store, you cannot add these document pages to your Run List since they have not yet been processed by the Normalizer.

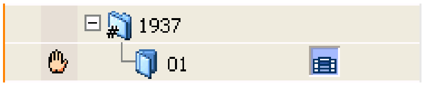
NOTE: Manually holding a job from the Jobs Window stops all processing tasks for the entire job. This is different from including an Action in the job's Production Plan, where you can put any individual job item on hold at any time, whether it is a page, a flat or a separation.

▷ To resume a job on hold

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job which has been manually put on hold.

The following Status icon is attached to jobs which are on hold:



Additionally, the background color of the associated Job Flow icon will be blue.

3 Choose Control > Resume Job, or click the Resume button in the Toolbar.

The Hold icon disappears, and the background color of the associated Job Flow icon changes to green.

Resuming a job does not resume results and/or tasks that are waiting on an Action, or that are rejected or in error.

NOTE: Resuming a job resumes processing of the entire job which was manually put on hold. This is different from Continuing an individual job item (page, flat or separation) which was automatically put on hold by an Action in the job's Production Plan.

Continuing Jobs

A job may be stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error. In all cases, you can continue all or part of the job manually.

NOTE: You cannot manually continue jobs that are waiting for a Task Processor: They will be continued automatically when a Task Processor becomes available.

▷ To continue results which are waiting on an Action

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job which has been stopped by Apogee, and is waiting for user interaction.

Jobs which have been stopped due to a hold Action will be flagged with one of the following Status icons:

 The job's Production Plan contains an After Hours Action.

 The job's Production Plan contains a Soft Proof Action.

 The job's Production Plan contains a Hard Copy Proof Action.

 The job's Production Plan contains a Collect for Output Action.

 The job's Production Plan contains a Discard Action.

3 Select the Results tab.

In the Job Layout pane, you will see thumbnails of all the pages or flats in the selected job. Above each job item, you will see one or more Action icons. These correspond to the Actions included in the job's Production Plan. The color of each icon indicates the current processing status of the selected page or flat within the job:

- If the icon is displayed normally, the page/flat has not yet reached this checkpoint in the Production Plan.
- If the icon has a blue background, the page/flat has reached this checkpoint in the Production Plan, and is on hold. In this case, the page/flat itself is also colored blue. The exception to this is the pages with the Collect for Output Action, these only turn blue when ALL the specified pages are available.
- If the icon is dimmed (grayed out), the page/flat has already passed this checkpoint in the Production Plan.

4 Select one or more pages or flats which are on hold (blue background).

5 Click Continue.

The selected pages or flats resume processing, the blue color is removed, and the associated Action icon is dimmed.

NOTE: If you continue a job that is being collected (Collect for Output) but is not yet complete, only the currently available results will be output: Apogee will automatically continue to collect the remaining results, but you will need to select them and again click Continue to output them.

▷ To continue results which were aborted, rejected, or in error

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job which is flagged with one of the following Notification or Status icons:

- aborted
- rejected
- warning
- error

3 Select the Results tab.

In the Job Layout pane, you will see thumbnails of all the pages or flats in the selected job.

4 Select one or more pages or flats (with the aborted, rejected, warning or error status).

5 Click Continue.

A Continue confirmation dialog box is displayed.

6 If you wish, enter a comment explaining why you are continuing to process this result.

TIP: You can view this comment later by checking the Job Log (Log for Job).

---

7 Click Continue.

The selected pages or flats resume processing. However:

- In the Job List, the status of jobs with the rejected or warning condition does not change. Only aborted and error conditions are cleared.
- In the Results tab, the status of results with the rejected, warning or error condition does not change. Only the aborted condition is cleared.

▷ To continue multiple results

1 Select a job in the Jobs window which is waiting on an Action, or is rejected, aborted or in error.

2 Select the Results tab, and choose the first item you want to continue.

3 Extend your selection, as described in “To select or de-select multiple jobs or items” on page 271. If the items are part of a flat, select the entire flat.

4 Click Continue.

NOTE: You can only continue multiple results provided they are all in the same waiting state. This button is disabled if one or more items have a different state, or are not waiting on an Action.

If one or more of the selected items contains rejected, aborted, or error results, a Continue confirmation dialog box is displayed.

5 If you wish, enter a comment explaining why you are continuing to process this result.

TIP: To view this comment later, click the Status icon next to the page in the Page Store or Run List.

6 Click Continue.

Making Rush Jobs

You can upgrade any job in the Job List to a “rush” job. This puts the job to the top of the queue of jobs waiting to be processed by Apogee. A rush job will be processed as soon as Apogee has finished processing the current job.

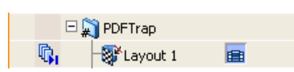
▷ To make a rush job

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job.

3 Choose Control > Rush Job, or click the Rush Job button in the Toolbar.

The Job icon changes to a chequered background, indicating that this job will be given priority over the other jobs in the Job List.



Restarting Job Processing

You can remake all the existing job results which follow a selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to do this if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.), or if you want to remake aborted results or remake output when no raster data is available.

▷ To restart job processing

1 Select the Jobs window.

2 In the Job List, select a job and choose Control > Restart Job Processing At.

3 Select the Task Processor from which you want to restart processing.

Apogee starts to re-render the job from the selected point in the Production Plan.

Duplicating Jobs

Apogee allows you to duplicate jobs. This is useful for applications which require nearly identical jobs (e.g. where only a single separation - usually black - needs to be changed across different jobs).

When you duplicate a job, Apogee makes an exact copy of the job, ready for editing. The 'source' job is not affected.

▷ To duplicate a job

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. In the Job List, select a job and choose Edit > Duplicate Job.

   Apogee duplicates the job, and opens the duplicate version in the Ticket Editor. Here, you can make any changes you require (e.g. change the job name).

   Close the Ticket Editor.

   The duplicate job is automatically submitted, and appears in the Job List.

Creating a New Job from an Existing Job

You can create a new empty job by using the job ticket of an existing job. The new job re-uses certain settings from the existing job while others are reset:

- Job Name and Order Number are blank
- Operator Name is taken from the existing job
- Print Center, Company and Collaborators are taken from the existing job
- Guest collaborators are removed
- Hot Folder is reset to the settings stored in the selected parameter set
- Content files are removed
- The job has a new job-ID
- The new job has no history
- All other settings are re-used: plan, products, imposition, production sets, etc.

▷ To create a new job from an existing job

1. Context-click a job or highlight a job and choose **File > New From Selected**.
2. The Job Ticket Editor opens with an empty Administration tab and you can complete the job ticket set up and upload new content files.

Deleting Jobs

By default, jobs are not automatically deleted from the system. You must delete them manually. When you delete a job, all the job's resources and results are erased, but the job still remains logged in the system and can still be seen in the Job List by the Administrator (these jobs have a strike-through). To permanently remove all traces of a deleted job, the Administrator needs to delete it a second time from the Job List. Alternatively, he can set up a schedule for automatically removing deleted jobs from the system.

NOTE: You can also delete a job together with all its logging information in a single step by purging it, as described below.

▷ To delete a job from the Job List

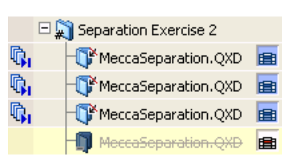
1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select the job that you want to delete in the Job List.
3. Choose Edit > Delete Job, or press the Delete key.

You will see the message “The job <jobname> will be deleted. You cannot undo this”.

4. Click Delete.

NOTE: If you delete a Job created from a Hot Ticket, the Hot Ticket itself is not deleted.

The Job is deleted, together with the Job Ticket, and any intermediate job results. Only the job log remains. If you are logged in as an Operator, the job immediately disappears from the Job List. However, if you are logged in as an Administrator, you will still see the job in the Job List: The job has a strike-through and is grayed out:



To remove a job with a strike-through from the Job List (Administrators only), you need to select it and delete it a second time.

NOTE: If you delete a Job created from a Hot Ticket, the Hot Ticket itself is not deleted.

▷ To view/remove all 'deleted' jobs from the Job List

Administrator access level only!

Deleted jobs can still be seen in the Job List by Administrators: They have a strike-through and are grayed out.

1 Select the Jobs Window.

To quickly located all deleted jobs, you can use the Custom Job Filter.

2 Edit the Custom Job Filter by hovering over the Custom Filter button and clicking Edit in the cogwheel menu to open the filter settings.

3 In the filter settings, select the 'deleted' Status check box, and choose 'Is' from the associated list options.

4 Click Apply to activate the filter, then click OK.

5 Select the deleted job(s) that you want to permanently remove in the Job List.

6 Choose Edit > Delete Job, or press the Delete key.

The selected job(s) are permanently deleted. No trace of them remains on the system, in the Job List, or in the Job Log.

▷ To purge a job from the Job List

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select the job that you want to purge in the Job List.

3 Hold down the Shift key while pressing the Delete key.

You will see the message "The job <jobname> will be deleted immediately. You cannot undo this."

4 Click Delete.

The job is permanently deleted. No trace of the job remains on the system, the Job List, or the Job Log.

Enabling/Disabling Input Channels

By default, all input channels are enabled when they are first created. However, you may want to disable them from time to time - to prevent other users inputting documents, or to improve system performance.

You can enable or disable input channels from the Hot Tickets List (for Hot Tickets which will be used to create jobs) or from the Jobs List (for jobs which have already been created).

▷ To disable an input channel

1. Select a Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, or select a job in the Job List.
2. Choose Control > Disable Inputs.

   The inputs for this job are closed. Apogee will no longer accept document input on this channel. Any documents which are input will be queued up, pending reactivation of the channel.

   You will see that the disabled job or Hot Ticket now has a “disabled input” job icon:

▷ To enable an input channel

1. Select a disabled Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, or a disabled job in the Job List.

   Disabled jobs and Hot Tickets Have a “disabled input” job icon:

2. Choose Control > Enable Inputs.

   The job icon changes to indicate that the inputs have been successfully opened.

▷ To automatically enable or disable an input channel

1. Create a new Job Ticket/Hot Ticket, or context-click a job in the Job List and select Edit Job from the context menu.
2. Select the Options tab.
3. To disable an input channel, select the ‘Deactivate input when’ check box, then click open the associated list box and select one of the available options.
4. To enable an input channel, clear the ‘Deactivate input when’ check box.

Opening the Job and System Logs

The Job and System Logs list all job and system events which take place within Apogee. They provide information on jobs, devices, or systems which need attention.

▷ To open the Job Log

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Context-click on a job in the Job List, and select Log for Job from the context menu.

   Make sure you context-click a job, and not the job folder.

   The Job Log is displayed.

NOTE: The largest item you can select is a job. You cannot view the log for several jobs at once. If you select a flat, the log includes all separations of that flat, but not the pages that make it up.

▷ To open the System Log

1. Select the System Overview Window.
2. Choose Window > Log for Apogee System.

   The System Log is displayed.

Archiving Jobs

When a job is processed by Apogee, all the input files, intermediate processing results, resources, profiles, etc. are by default automatically discarded. If you want to keep them (or part of them), you must archive them. There are three different ways of doing this. You can:

- archive jobs manually in the Job List
- include archiving “Actions” in the Jobs Production Plan
- set up an automated job archiving schedule

▷ To archive a job manually from the Job List

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a job in the Job List.
3. Choose File > Archive Job.

   The following status icon appears next to the job name while the job is being archived:

As soon as the job has been successfully archived, the Archiving status icon disappears (any previous status icon reappears), and the job icon displays a small “archived” indicator:

Job archive files are saved with the .arch file extension.

▷ To import an archived job, create new job from archive

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Choose File > Import Job Archive.

The Open dialog box appears.

3 Browse to the location where you save your archives.

Job archive files are saved with the .arch file extension.

4 Select an archive, and click Open.

Now you can choose how you want to import the archive:

- Restore the original job: puts back the original job as it was

- Create a new job : if you select this option, you can enter a new Job Name and Order Number for the new job. All the other information and content files in the private page store and Run List are the same as the original archive. Can be used for reprints.

5 Choose of the above options and click OK.

The Importing Archive status icon appears briefly next to the job name while the archive is being imported:

As soon as the archive has been successfully imported, the Importing Archive status icon disappears (any previous status icon reappears), and the imported job appears in the Job List.

Apogee validates the imported ticket against the current configuration of the system. Any ticket errors are reported via the Message Board, and can be corrected using the Ticket Editor.

Dumping Jobs

Dumping a job is similar to archiving a job. However, this function is only available to administrators, and is used for troubleshooting purposes. Dumping a job saves the job, together with all its system resources. This information can then be delivered to your Service Technician who can use it to reproduce the problem. You can also make a dump of several jobs.

Administrator access level only!

▷ To dump a job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select one or more jobs in the Job List.
3. Choose File > Export > Job Dump.
4. In the Save As dialog, choose the location where you want to save the job dump. The file name is the job number with the .zip extension. You can change the name of the ZIP file if you want. If you selected more than one job, each job dump is saved in a separate ZIP file.

   The following status icon appears next to the job name while the job is being dumped:

   Make sure the location you chose has sufficient disk space to save the job and perform the compression.

   As soon as the job has been successfully dumped, the dumping status icon disappears (any previous status icon reappears), and the job icon displays a small "dumped" indicator:

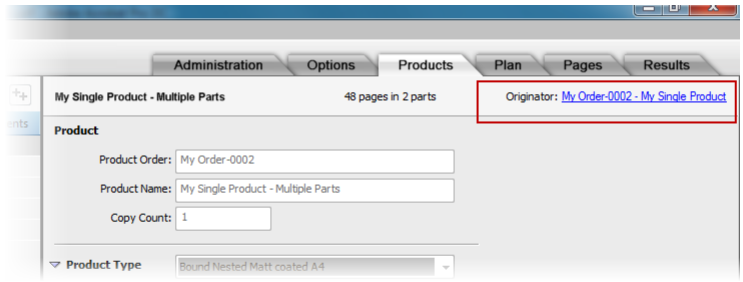
   

Merging Jobs

Apogee allows you to merge any number of jobs in the Job List into a single *merged job*. This is particularly useful for ganging the products of several smaller jobs into a larger job. You can combine multiple jobs with bound and/or unbound products into a merged job. Merged jobs are by definition *multi-product jobs*. The Apogee Impose module can be used to place the parts of the different jobs on the press sheets of the merged job.

The Origins of Merged Jobs

The relationship between a merged job and the originating jobs and products is displayed in the top right corner of the Products tab as a property of the selected product. For merged jobs, the link indicates the order number and job name of the original job (*originator*). For jobs that have been merged, the link indicates the order number and job name of the *merged job*. Clicking these links highlights the job in the Job List.



Unsupported Jobs

The following conditions must be met in order to merge jobs:

- A job to be merged must not be a multi-product job, in other words it should only have one product.
- A job to be merged must not have versions (versioning job).
- A job which has already been merged and a merged job cannot be used as one of the jobs to be merged.

Otherwise you are free to combine bound and unbound jobs with different properties (presses, colors, media) and the Merge Assistant helps you collect and merge suitable jobs.

NOTE: The imposition settings for the individual products are maintained in the new merged job.

To merge existing jobs

1. In the Job List, select the jobs you want to merge into a single merged job by pressing CTRL and clicking the jobs.

   You can select job folders or individual jobs within a folder. If you select folders, all the jobs in the folder are included in your selection for merging.

2. Context-click in the blue, highlighted area and choose Merge Jobs.

   The **Merge Assistant** is displayed.

   The selected jobs are listed with their details. Jobs which cannot be merged (unsupported) are grayed out and the product type is displayed in red in the Product column.

Unsupported jobs (e.g. multi-product and versioning jobs) can be hidden in the list by selecting the **Hide unsupported jobs** check box.

3 If necessary, fine-tune the list of jobs you want include in the merged job. You can sort the jobs by column and choose the most appropriate jobs to be merged by Press, Stock, Media, etc.

   You can select multiple jobs in the list and click one of the check boxes to clear them from the list, or to include them in the merging.

   The properties in the columns are also available in the **Filter** panel on the left. Either type in the Quick Filter to filter on the Order Name and Job Name, or choose/combine with any of the other filters. You can save your filter by choosing **Set As Default** in the cogwheel menu (top right corner of the Filter panel). You can revert to this filter at any time by choosing **Revert** in the same menu.

   A summary of the jobs you are going to merge appears at the end of the table. If you want the system to delete the jobs to be merged, select the **Mark for deletion after** check box and enter the number of days/months before the jobs are deleted. You also have a **Disable inputs** check box that allows you to queue documents that are input for jobs to be merged.

4 In the **Resulting merged job** panel, you specify the details for the new merged job:

   By default, the first supported job ticket in the Candidate Jobs list is used to create the new job. If you want to use a different job ticket, click the cogwheel button and choose another job from the drop-down list.

   OR

   Click the cogwheel button and select a Ticket Template. The Templates dialog is displayed and you can choose a job ticket template. Click Select to return to the Merge Assistant.

5 Enter the Order Number and Job Name for the new, merged job to activate the Merge Jobs button.

6 Select the **Preserve imposition of original jobs** check box if you do not want the Merge Assistant to change the existing impositions.

7 Click **Merge Jobs**.

   If you didn't clear the **Edit merged job with Job Ticket Editor** check box, the Job Ticket Editor opens and you can complete the job set-up, including imposition with Apogee Impose. If the merged jobs had documents, these documents are added to the merged job. The Comments box in the Administration tab lists the jobs merged to create the merged job.

The Merge Assistant window remains open but the merged jobs are removed from the list. If you want to close the Merge Assistant after merging, select the **Close Merge Assistant** check box before clicking the Merge Jobs button.

8 Submit the new merged job.

The merged job is added to the Job List. The original jobs and the merged job are indicated with a special status icon:

 A job that has been merged

 A merged job: The job resulting from the merging of two or more other jobs.

9 In the Merge Assistant, click Close to finish merging or repeat the merging procedure to merge another batch of jobs in a second merged job.

Offline Jobs

An offline job contains all the data of an online job, including results, status, and metadata. The key difference is that an offline job is not loaded into memory and is not processed by the Apogee server. Offline jobs are excluded from the general Jobs list. As a result:

- They do not appear in the Jobs list
- They are not visible in web applications such as WebApproval and WebFlow
- They are not shown in PlateMaker
- Notifications and messages related to offline jobs are hidden.

NOTE: Offline Jobs feature requires a special license.

▷ To put the jobs offline

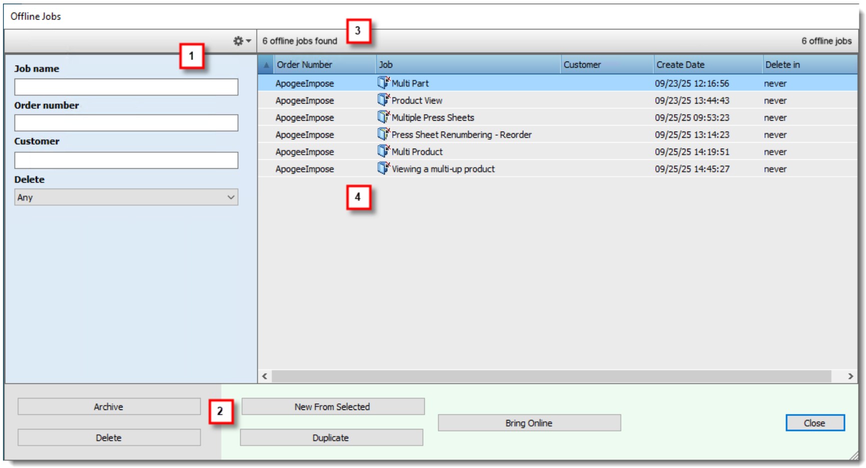
1. In the Job List, select the job(s) you want to put offline by pressing CTRL and clicking the job(s).
2. Right-click in the highlighted area and choose **Put Job(s) Offline** from the context menu.

   OR

   Choose **File > Put Job(s) Offline** from the main menu.

▷ To work with Offline Jobs

1. Choose **File > Offline Jobs** from the main menu.
2. The **Offline Jobs** dialog box opens, displaying a list of offline jobs along with their details.



1 Filter panel
2 Action buttons
3 Status bar
4 Main panel

Filter panel allows you to define filter criteria to narrow down the list of offline jobs shown in the main panel. You can filter the list by entering one or more criteria in this panel.

Action Buttons panel contains available action buttons. These are only enabled when one or more jobs are selected.

- Bring Online: Loads an offline job and sets it to the online state, preserving its previous status and settings. The job will reappear in the Jobs list.
- Duplicate: Creates a new job by duplicating the selected offline job. The result is identical to duplicating a job in the online state.
- New from Selected: Generates a new job using the ticket template of the selected offline job. This behaves the same as creating a new job from a selected online job.
- Note: This action can only be performed on one job at a time. If multiple jobs are selected, the command is disabled just as with online jobs.
- Delete: Removes the offline job from the system. If the job is marked for archiving and is finished, it will be archived before deletion. This behavior is consistent with online jobs.
- Archive: Archives the selected offline job. The result is the same as archiving a job in the online state.
- Close: Closes the dialog without applying changes or triggering any actions.

Status bar displays the number of jobs currently shown (after filtering) and the total number of offline jobs.

Main panel shows a sortable list of offline jobs. You can sort by clicking column headers such as Order Number, Job, Customer, Create Date, and Delete In.

3 To perform an action, select one or more jobs and click the corresponding action button. Alternatively, you can close the dialog without taking any action.

Reveal Supplementary Files

Reveal Supplementary Files command opens the job's Supplementary Files folder in the system's file browser, allowing you to view and manage non-processed job-related files.

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

Supplementary Files and the Reveal Option

When a job is archived in Apogee, a dedicated archive folder is created to store all necessary data for restoring and remaking the job. For details on how archiving works, refer to “Archiving Jobs” on page 282.

As part of this archive structure, Apogee also creates a Supplementary Files subfolder. This folder is intended for storing files that are related to the job but not processed by it, such as: original design files, fonts, notes, etc.

These files can be added manually or automatically via Apogee Production-Center, which supports uploading, retrieving, and removing supplementary files.

Working with Jobs in the Results Tab

The Results tab allows you to preview the results of the selected job, and monitor any ongoing activity in the job's Production Plan:

Changing Viewing Options

By default, all the available viewing options are selected. However, you can always disable or re-enable specific viewing options from the Jobs window.

▷ To show/hide thumbnails

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a job in the Job List.
3. Select the Results tab.
4. Choose View > Thumbnails to toggle thumbnails on or off for the results displayed in the Job Layout pane.

TIP: Results are displayed faster when thumbnails are turned off.

When thumbnails are turned on, you will see a miniature image of how the selected results will look when printed. When thumbnails are turned off, you will see only a colored background instead of the image.

▷ To show/hide extra information

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select a job in the Job List.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Choose View > Show, and set your Extra display options by toggling on or off any of the following:

- Page Number: Shows the position of the page in the Run List.
- Hold States: Shows pages or flats in blue when on hold.

5 Choose View > Extras.

This acts as a “master switch”, to toggle all your selected Extra display options on or off.

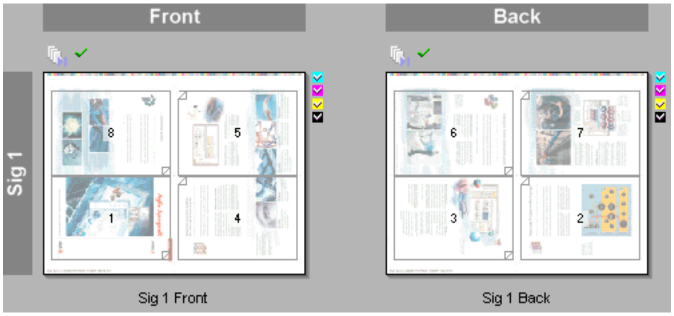
▷ To select front and back sides

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job which uses imposition in the Production Plan.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Choose View > Columns > Front and Back.



All the page signatures are displayed (the front and back of each page or flat).

▷ To scale the Results view

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select a job in the Job List.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Choose View > Scale, and select one of the following:

- Small: Provides the smallest thumbnail visualization of the selected results.
- Normal: Provides the standard thumbnail visualization of the selected results.
- Large: Provides the most detailed thumbnail visualization of the selected results.
- Fit to Window: All selected thumbnail viewing options are displayed, scaled within the limits of the Job Layout pane. The results may be small, but you will not need to scroll to view them all.

To show/hide separations

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select a separated job in the Job List.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Select a page or flat in the Job Layout pane.

The individual separations which combine to make up this item are displayed in the Separations pane. Each separation represents a different color.

NOTE: Separations are not available for composite jobs.

Re-rendering Results

You can re-render individually selected results (non-imposed flats, pages, or separations). When you do so, only the results of the selected pages or flats are remade - not the entire job.

You may want to re-render results if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.). This is also useful if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when the raster data (Digital Film) is no longer available.

NOTE: You can also re-render the output when the raster data is still available.

To re-render job results, the job must still have the original input documents (i.e. Keep Results Action on the input channel).

What is the difference between Re-rendering and Re-imaging results?

When you select Re-render, Apogee will re-render and output the selected job results. When you select Re-image, Apogee will not render the results again: It will simply output the existing raster data to the selected output device. Re-rendering therefore completely regenerates the selected job results, but takes more time and uses more resources.

▷ To re-render results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully processed.
4. Choose Control > Re-render <item>.

   All scheduled and active tasks after the selected point in the flow are aborted, and re-rendering is started. Any archives that were made on the first pass will be remade, and the old archives deleted.

TIP: This is different from editing a job, where existing results are not affected by any changes you make.

▷ To re-render backgrounds (Apogee DQS)

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat that has already been successfully processed using Apogee DQS.
4. Choose Control > Re-render backgrounds.

Re-imaging Results

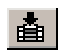
Re-imaging is used to remake previously imaged raster data (Digital Film). This feature is available only for flows that have an imaging output device, and that have kept the finished raster data using the Keep Results Action.

What is the difference between Re-rendering and Re-imaging results?

When you select Re-render, Apogee will re-render and output the selected job results. When you select Re-image, Apogee will not render the results again: It will simply output the existing raster data to the selected output device. Re-imaging is therefore quicker and uses fewer resources.

To re-image results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully processed, and which has kept the finished raster data.
4. Choose Control > Re-image, or click the Re-image button in the Toolbar.

   The selected items are automatically re-imaged, ignoring any proofing or After Hours actions. In fact, no manual intervention is required since in most cases you want to re-image a plate as soon as possible.

If you re-image a job, Apogee re-images only the results of the main flow. If you want to re-image the results of another flow, you must select those results before re-imaging.

Re-exporting Results

You may want to re-export previously exported results if resources have changed, or when exported files have to be recreated.

To re-export results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully exported, and which has kept the finished raster data.
4. Choose Control > Re-export.

   The selected items are re-exported.

Remaking InkDrive Files

Apogee allows you to remake InkDrive files for selected flats, pages, or separations. This may be necessary if the files are accidentally deleted or lost on the press side.

NOTE: The InkDrive license must be available, otherwise this option is disabled. Also, you can only remake InkDrive files when all selected results have the InkDrive data available.

▷ To remake InkDrive files

1 Select the Jobs window.

2 Select the Results tab.

3 In the Job Layout or Separations pane, context-click a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully processed, and which has kept the finished raster data.

4 Choose Remake InkDrive for <item> from the context menu.

Apogee sends the InkDrive file(s) for the selected results to the assigned location.

If you selected flats, Apogee creates an InkDrive file per flat; If you selected separations, an InkDrive file is created per separation. The names of the created InkDrive files are based on the default file name template that matches your selection: flats or separations.

NOTE: If you select separations in a multi-version job, Apogee creates InkDrive files for all selected separations.

Re-printing Results

Re-printing is similar to Re-imaging, but is used specifically to print previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on a digital press. This feature is available only for flows that have a digital press, and that have kept the finished raster data (using the Keep Results Action on the last processing Task Processor).

▷ To re-print results

1 Select the Jobs window.

2 Select the Results tab.

3 In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully processed, and which has kept the finished raster data.

4 Choose Control > Re-print.

The selected items are re-printed on your digital press.

Viewing Job Results in the Results Tab

When you view results in the Results tab view, Apogee provides a view on the rendered output results. This is different from viewing results in the Pages tab, where Apogee provides a view on the job's input results.

▷ To view job results in the Results tab

NOTE: To open PDF documents, you must have already specified where your PDF Reader application is located (see “Preferences” on page 51).

TIP: This feature is useful if you want to diagnose errors, by comparing results from different points in your Production Plan.

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select a job in the Job List which has some rendered results.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 You can do either of the following:

- Context-click a page or flat in the Job Layout pane, and select View Page/ Flat From.
- Context-click a separation in the Separations pane, and select View Separation From.

A submenu is displayed, listing the results which are still available at various stages in your Production plan. Provided you attached a Keep Results Action to your output device, you can view the latest rendered results. If any of the earlier Task Processors in the flow have Keep Results Actions attached to them, you can also choose to view these instead.

5 Select the results you want to view.

Apogee automatically starts the viewing application that supports the selected document type. This is either:

- A PDF Reader for PDF documents.
- Raster Preview for documents which have already been rendered (Digital Film).

If you select a document, the viewing application displays the first page of the selected document. The page or document is opened in read-only mode.

NOTE: You can also simply double-click a page or document to display the last available result in your Production Plan.

Rejecting Results

There are two reasons why you would want to reject results:

- The content of the page/flat is wrong (incorrect information or typographical mistakes).
- The processing is wrong (incorrect screening, traps are too small, etc.). In this case, you can only reject results that are waiting on an Action that requires manual intervention (such as proofing or “collect for output”).

In both cases, in order to correct the problem you must re-submit the original document to the Apogee System.

If you wish, you can later accept rejected results and continue processing using the Continue command (see “Continuing Jobs” on page 274).

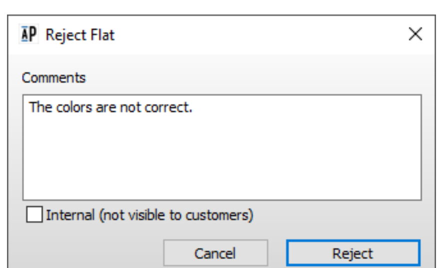
NOTE: Rejected pages are not re-rendered if you later re-render the job.

▷ To reject results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select either the Pages or the Results tab.
3. Select a document, page, flat or separation.
4. Choose Control > Reject <item>, or click the Reject button in the Toolbar.

   The Reject dialog box is displayed.

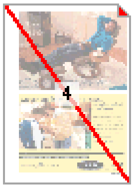
   

5. If you wish, add a comment explaining why you are rejecting the results.

   This information can later be viewed in the Job Log.

6. Click Reject.

   All processing for the selected item is aborted, and the job is marked with a rejected status icon.



All flats that use the rejected page will be marked as rejected.

NOTE: In a multi-flow Production Plan, you can only reject the processing of a Main or Export flow, not of a Proofer flow.

▷ To clear rejected results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select either the Pages or the Results tab.
3. Select the rejected result(s).
4. Choose Control > Clear Rejected Status.

   The rejected status is removed, and processing restarts.

Discarding Results

You discard results in order to prevent specific documents, pages, flats or separations from being printed, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. You can discard results interactively in the Results tab, or you can add a Discard Action to your Production Plan.

▷ To discard results interactively

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. Select a document, page, flat or separation.
4. Choose Control > Discard <item>.

   NOTE: You can only discard results that are already output or that are waiting to be output. You cannot discard input files, or pages in an imposition workflow.

   The thumbnail of the selected item is dimmed with diagonal stripes across it and the separation icons are dimmed and barred (see below left). If you are discarding a specific separation, only the separation icon is dimmed and barred in the Job Layout pane (see below right). However, the individual separation is barred in the Separations pane.

You can perform no further action on discarded results (delete, reject, etc.) until they are 'included' once more in the job.

Including Results

You can 'include' discarded results in order to remove their discarded status, and to make the selected results part of the job again. Any status that the results had before they were discarded is once again taken into account (e.g., on hold, in error, etc.).

To include results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. Select a document, page, flat or separation that has been discarded.

   The thumbnail of the selected item is dimmed with diagonal stripes across it.

4. Choose Control > Include <item>.

   The thumbnail returns to normal, and the selected item is once more part of the job.

Getting Information on PDF Data

Get Info is a command that displays extensive information about a selected item (a page, a flat, or a job). The Info window uses an extensible mechanism to organize and display the attributes of the selected item(s).

- If you select one or more documents in the Page Store (Pages tab), one Info window is displayed per selected document. Each window describes a single document and it's page details.
- If you select one or more pages from a document, a single Info window is displayed, describing the document and the selected page details.
- If you select one or more pages from the Run List, a single Info window is displayed, describing the origins of the selected pages and the page details.

- If you select a single flat in the Results tab, a single Info window is displayed, describing the flat and the details of its pages.
- If you select multiple flats, one Info window is displayed per flat.

To get info on an item

1. Select one or more items in the Pages tab or the Results tab.

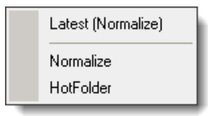
   These may be documents, pages, flats, or jobs.

2. Context-click a page or flat in the Job Layout pane, and select Info for <item> From.

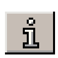
   A submenu is displayed, listing the results which are available at various stages in your Production plan.

   For example:

TIP: This feature is useful if you want to view info on results from different points in your Production Plan.



3. Select the results you want to view information on.
4. You can also click the Info tool for information on the Latest results.



The Info dialog box is displayed. The content of the dialog box depends on the selected item(s):

- If you choose to view result information from the Hot Folder or Normalize Task Processors, you will see information on the PDF results (see “Info Window (for PDF Files)” on page 303).
- If you choose to view result information from the Render Task Processor, you will see information on the TIFF results (see “Info Window (for RGB/ TIFF or Raster Files)” on page 305).

NOTE: You can get information on a selection containing multiple items, if the items are of the same type. You cannot select multiple items of different types. For example, you can get information on several files in the Page Store, but not on a file and a page.

Info Window (for PDF Files)

The Info window has a number of tabs which provide information on any PDF item you select.

General

The first section displays the name, title and author of the selected item, as well as the date it was created and the name of the person who created it.

The second section indicates how the document was received and converted into an acceptable working format (PDF or TIFF).

Producer The name and version of the Task Processor that converted the document into an acceptable format (e.g. the Normalizer).

Page Store The path name of the document in the Page Store. You can context-click the field label or path name to reveal the physical location of the file. The label then changes to “Location”. If the document is stored as multiple files (e.g. split PDF, DCS, etc.), only the common part of the file name is shown. context-click again to display the Page Store location.

Size The physical size of the document on disk.

Nr of Pages The number of independent pages in the document. The word “Split” appears when the document is stored as a single, independent file per page (this is one of the Normalize Settings).

NOTE: Apogee displays a status icon if the document has any outstanding warnings or errors. Clicking the icon opens the job's problem report, filtered to show the current document's notifications.

The third section details modifications (if any) which may have been made to the document:

Format The name and version of the document’s format (e.g. Composite, PDF 1.5). This can either be the format it was converted to, or the original format of the document if this was already acceptable. Some format details may also be listed here.

Dimensions

This tab provides detailed information on the width and height of the selected pages.

The first section lists all pages in the document, and a summary of the most important box dimensions:

Page Indicates the standard page size.

Trim Box Indicates the trimmed page size (the size of the paper in the desktop printer; the size of the pages after folding/binding and cutting in a production house).

Bleed Box Indicates the bleed area specified in the layout application, or in the PostScript to PDF converter.

Crop Box Indicates the page size in Acrobat, and is also the default view (when this PDF file is opened).

The second section displays additional box size information on the page selected in the first section.

Art Box Used to select an area of the page, such as clipping path, which you can import into another application.

Media Box Contains all the other boxes, and is always the largest box.

Resources

The resource tab features a page list, resource category list, and a resource list in the top section, and a Resource Details pane in the lower section.

Page Lists the page(s) selected.

Category Lists all resource categories available for the selected page(s). A number after the category name shows how many resources of that category exist for the item(s) selected. If there are no resources for a given category, no number is shown.

Resource Lists all resources available for the selected page(s) and category, sorted by category name and resource name or occurrence.

Resource: Displays the name of the resource. Unnamed resources are given a name by concatenating the resource category and an occurrence number.

Position: Shows the positions in the Run List where each resource appears. It is empty if the resource is not used in the job.

Attributes: Displays a textual summary of the most important attributes of the resource.

Selected Resource details The attributes of the selected resource are displayed in the lower section of the Resources tab.

Refer to “Task Processor Resources” on page 355 for details on the different resources and their attributes.

Info Window (for RGB/TIFF or Raster Files)

The Info window provides the following information on your RGB/TIFF or raster results.

Kind Provides the following information about the selected image type:

- Monochrome
- Grey
- RGB

Channels May indicate which color channels are available in the selected image:

- R, G, B
- C, M, Y, K

Physical Dimensions Width and height of the selected item, in the selected display units specified in your Preferences (mms or inches).

Dimensions Width and height of the selected item, in pixels.

Resolution Width and height of the selected item, in pixels-per-inch.

Rows/Strip Number of rows per strip.

Compression The type of image compression used, if any:

- ASWC
- CCIT
- PackBits
- Group 3 Fax
- Group 3 Fax

- JPEG
- LZW
- None

Orientation The orientation of the selected file:

- Up
- Down
- Right
- Left

Separation number.

Separation Separation name.

CHAPTER 6

Managing Hot Tickets

This section describes how you manage your Hot Tickets.

The Hot Ticket Manager

The Hot Ticket Manager can be opened from any of the main windows in the Apogee Client by clicking Hot Tickets in the Apogee Taskbar. This is where you will monitor, view, and manage the Hot Tickets that you create.

The main window is divided into 3 panes:

- The Output Device List: On the left side of the window, you will see a list of currently configured output devices (e.g., Avantra25, Export, etc.).
- The Hot Ticket List: Next to the Output Device List, you will see the Hot Ticket List. This List displays the status of all Hot Tickets that have been submitted to the Apogee System.
- Collecting Tickets List: See “Collecting Hot Tickets” on page 323.

Filters: Above the Hot Ticket List, you can enter filter criteria directly into the Quick Filter box. Below the Output Device List, you have custom job filters for filtering the Hot Ticket List based on a variety of criteria.

Selected Hot Ticket details: The large pane on the right side of the window displays information on the selected Hot Ticket. This information is arranged into three tabs:

  - The Administration tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Administration Tab” on page 311)
  - The Options tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Options Tab” on page 312)
  - The Products tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Products Tab” on page 313)
  - The Plan tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Plan Tab” on page 314).

The Hot Ticket List

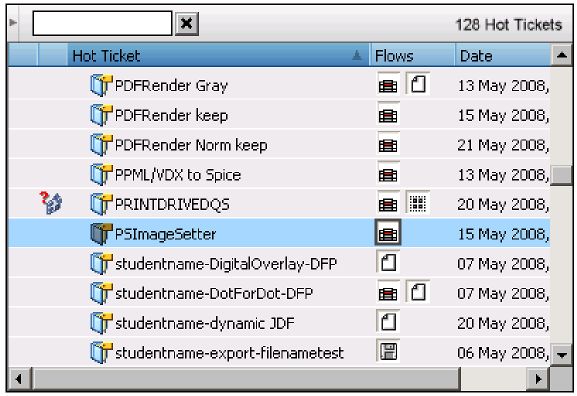
The Hot Ticket List displays all the Hot Tickets that have been submitted to the Apogee System. When you first create and submit a Hot Ticket, it will be displayed immediately in the Hot Ticket List.

A series of icons indicate the current status of each Hot Ticket in the list. These include Job Notification Icons, Job Status Icons, Hot Ticket Icons, and Flow Icons. Note, however, that a Hot Ticket cannot be finished, cannot be put on hold, and cannot be made into a rush ticket.

Hot Ticket List Layout

The Hot Ticket List is divided vertically into the following columns:

- Notification: May display an icon which indicates an error, warning, or remark.
- Status: May display one or more icons (up to 4) which indicate the current or recent job states. These icons are sorted from the left according to priority. You can expand the width of this column to view the lower priority icons.
- Hot Ticket column - Hot Ticket Icons: Displays an icon which indicates the type of Hot Ticket, as well as the Hot Ticket name.
- Flows: Displays one or more icons which correspond to the number and types of flows specified in the Ticket.
- Create Date: The dates and times when tickets were submitted. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Modified Date: The dates and times when tickets were modified. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Media: The media selected to print the job.
- Device: The device selected to print the job.
- Milestone: The due date you entered for the planning of the job.
- Company: The company name of the customer.



These details are displayed for each Hot Ticket in their respective column. These columns can be sorted, rearranged, hidden or grouped just like the Job List. You can also filter hot tickets. Refer to the following sections:

- “Organizing the Job List” on page 237
- “Filtering the Job List” on page 239.

If you want to see the jobs that have been created using these Hot Tickets, click Jobs in the Apogee Taskbar to switch to the Job Manager window.

Hot Ticket Icons

Apogee displays the following icons in the Hot Ticket column.

 Commercial Hot Ticket

 Commercial Hot Ticket with a disabled input channel

 Job that requires set-up by Printer (WebApproval jobs only)

 Collecting Hot Tickets (tickets grouped in separate panel)

Viewing the Hot Ticket Administration Tab

The Administration tab contains customer-specific information that can be used to associate specific Production Plans with particular customers or job types.

The Hot Ticket name is displayed in the Hot Ticket List after the Ticket has been submitted.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

Viewing the Hot Ticket Options Tab

The Options tab displays information on how jobs are to be handled, including archiving and notification settings, post-processing channel settings, etc.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

Viewing the Hot Ticket Products Tab

The Products tab for Hot Tickets allows you to set up fully automated imposition. Drop a document onto a Hot Ticket and create a job whose pages are imposed, while the product name, number of pages and page size can all be taken from the uploaded document. This is an interesting feature that enables ‘lights-out’ printing of digital products, but fully automated imposition can also be used for basic commercial offset jobs.

NOTE: A Hot Ticket can only have one product and the command to add products is disabled.

Viewing the Hot Ticket Plan Tab

The Plan tab displays the selected Hot Ticket's Production Plan, and allows you to view the individual settings of each of the items in the Plan.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the ticket and click the Edit button.

The Plan tab has two panes:

- Production Plan Pane (Hot Tickets)
- Settings Pane (Hot Tickets)

Production Plan Pane (Hot Tickets)

The Production Plan is a series of components (Task Processors and Actions) linked together to form one or more processing flows. These components are configured to define exactly how jobs are to be input, processed, and output.

When you select one of these components, you will see the associated settings displayed in the lower Settings Pane (Hot Tickets).

Below the Task Processor icon, there is a drop-down list from in which you can view the selected Parameter Set. If no Parameter Set is selected, the Task Processor uses its factory settings.

The last Task Processor in a flow always displays the Flow ID icon at the end of the flow. By default, this always indicates a Main Output flow.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

Settings Pane (Hot Tickets)

The Settings pane displays the settings that were configured for the component (Task Processor or Action) selected in the Production Plan pane.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket

List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

Working with Hot Tickets

The main purpose of the Hot Ticket window is to allow you to view, and manage the Hot Tickets that are created by the Apogee System. Much of the information you need is displayed as icons in the Hot Tickets List. This information, together with the four tabs of selected Hot Ticket details, gives you a full and detailed snapshot of all existing Hot Tickets.

Selecting Hot Tickets

Hot Tickets are listed in the Hot Ticket List in alphabetical order.

▷ To select a Hot Ticket

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Click a Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List.

   The Hot Ticket details are retrieved from the Apogee System and displayed in the pane on the right. This information is arranged into 3 tabs - Administration, Options, and Plan.

▷ To select multiple Hot Tickets

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Select the Hot Tickets as described in “To select or de-select multiple jobs or items” on page 271.

Duplicating a Hot Ticket

You can create a copy of a Hot Ticket as follows. This command is also available on the Edit menu or by pressing CTRL+D.

▷ To duplicate a Hot Ticket

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.

2 Context-click the Hot Ticket that you want to duplicate in the Hot Ticket List.

3 Choose Duplicate Ticket.

A new Hot Ticket is created and the Administration tab is displayed.

4 Enter a new name and submit the Hot Ticket.

The duplicate Hot Ticket appears in the Hot Ticket List with the new name.

NOTE: If you do not change the name of the Hot Ticket, it appears greyed-out in the list for editing at a later stage.

Deleting a Hot Ticket

You can delete a Hot Ticket as follows.

▷ To delete a Hot Ticket

1 Select the Hot Tickets Window.

2 Select the Hot Ticket that you want to delete in the Hot Ticket List.

3 Choose Edit > Delete Hot Ticket, or press the Delete key.

You will see the message “The hot ticket <name> will be deleted. You cannot undo this.”

4 Click Delete.

The Hot Ticket is deleted from the Hot Ticket List.

NOTE: Only the Hot Ticket is deleted: Any jobs which have been created using this Hot Ticket remain on the system, and can still be viewed in the Job List when you switch to the Jobs window.

Creating a PPD for a Hot Ticket

You can create a PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file for a Hot Ticket, containing all job-related information specific for your output environment. A PPD created from a Hot Ticket allows you to select the parameter sets in the PPD.

▷ To create a PPD for a Hot Ticket

1 Select the Hot Tickets Window.

2 Select the Hot Ticket for which you want to create a PPD file.

3 Choose File > Export Hot Ticket PPD.

You can also directly context-click on the Hot Ticket and select Export Hot Ticket PPD.

The PPD User Options dialog box appears.

4 Specify the necessary Format and Content options as specified.

5 Click OK to create the PPD file.

Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency

Hot Tickets and Ticket Templates store the names of the parameter sets they use, and the values in these sets. However, if you later modify the parameter set, the Hot Ticket/Ticket Template is not automatically updated: It still uses the original parameter set names and values.

In many cases, you will need any such changes to be reflected in the Hot Ticket/ Ticket Template. To do this, you need to run a 'Consistency Check'. This checks every Ticket Template (both Jobs and Hot Tickets templates) and Hot Tickets - in that order - for changed job resources. Any out-of-date references are listed in a Consistency report.

You have the option to simply check if there are any discrepancies (without making any changes), or to both check and update your Hot Tickets/Ticket Templates.

NOTE: Consistency checking is only available to users with Administrator or higher access level, and does not affect existing jobs.

▷ To check the consistency of a Hot Ticket or Ticket Template

1 From any of the Apogee main menus, choose File > Check Consistency.

The Consistency Check dialog box is displayed. By default, both the Hot Tickets and Ticket Templates options are selected.

2 Select one or both check boxes, and then click either of the following buttons:

- Verify Only: The selected items are checked and a consistency report is displayed in a browser window. The report lists any consistencies found in the selected items.

- Verify and Update: The selected items are checked and a consistency report is displayed in a browser window. The report lists any consistencies found in the selected items, and indicates that these items have been updated.

Fully Automated Imposition

A Hot Ticket can be set up so that the newly created job takes a number of product settings from the uploaded document and is imposed based on predefined imposition settings. Such a ticket uses the From Input options in the Products tab.

NOTE: This fully automated imposition can only be used for jobs consisting of one product. Only one document can be uploaded to the Hot Ticket.

Create a From Input Hot Ticket

1 Create your Hot Ticket.

2 In the Products tab, make sure the following are enabled:

- Product Type > Number of Pages: select the **From Input** check box.
- Default Part > Page Size: choose **<From Input>** in the top of the drop-down list.

The Auto Impose button changes to **Set Up Auto Impose**.

3 Click the Set Up Auto Impose button and specify the settings in the Auto Impose window.

4 Click OK.

NOTE: You cannot prepare the actual imposition in this scenario. The imposition will be created on the fly when you create your job from the Hot Ticket.

5 The Auto Impose window closes and details of the imposition are displayed next to the **Run Auto Impose** check box.

These Auto Impose settings are saved to the Impose resource.

6 Select the Run Auto Impose check box.

7 Save the Hot Ticket.

Jobs created with the Hot Ticket will take the number of pages and the page size of the uploaded document and use the saved Auto Impose settings for the imposition. The document file name (without extension) is used as the name of the product.

Wide Format Hot Tickets

Wide Format Hot Tickets allow you to automate the creation of wide format jobs. Files can be dropped in a Hot Folder or uploaded, and new wide format jobs are created and submitted automatically.

For each product or document, the system creates an individual job that takes the file name as job name and the job name of the hot ticket as order number. Depending on whether the input is an image file or document, the processing is as follows:

- Input file is an image: a wide format job is created for each image and this job consists of one sheet and one Print Layout.
- Input file is a document: each page is assigned to a sheet in the same wide format job; a layout hot ticket can only have one sheet, so additional sheets are replicated from this one sheet.

There are two options for the placement of the images on the sheet:

- Sheet without frames: the image is placed in the default image placement position, i.e. in one of the corners of the sheet, aligned with the lay of the printer.
- Sheet with frames: the image is used to fill all the frames on the sheet; each frame on this sheet can have a different size, fitting options, etc.

Wide Format Hot Tickets are managed in the Hot Tickets window.

▷ Create a Wide Format Hot Ticket

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

1. Go to the Hot Tickets window.
2. Choose File > New from Templates and then the Wide Format Hot Tickets tab.
3. Choose the template you want to use in the list, enter a name for the hot ticket and choose a Printer.
4. Click Open.

   The Layout Editor opens and you can set up the sheet just like you would do for a regular wide format job. Leave the sheet empty if you want images to be placed in the default image placement position. Draw frames on the sheet if you want multiple instances of the same image on the sheet.

NOTE: Only create 1 sheet. Additional sheets will be discarded when you save the hot ticket.

---

5. Go to the Media Layout inspector, which is slightly different for hot tickets than for regular wide format jobs. In the Layout Products panel, select the options as required:
   - Automatically place images on sheets: select this option if you want your images to be placed automatically on sheets
   - When no frames, place: Single image per sheet or Multiple images per sheet
   - Optimize orientation: If you selected the first option to place images, you can choose to automatically rotate images so they fit in the frames.
6. Click the Submit Job button to save your hot ticket and choose the **Print Files** and **Cut Files** option you want to use for all the jobs created from the hot ticket.
7. Click Submit to save your changes.

▷ Create jobs from a Wide Format Hot Ticket

1. Go to the Hot Tickets window.
2. Context-click the hot ticket you want to use in the Hot Ticket list and choose Upload Document.
3. Browse to the images or documents you want to upload. Multiple images and documents can be uploaded.
4. Click Open.

   The system creates one or more wide format jobs in the background. Go to the Jobs window and you will see the new jobs appearing in the Job list. An individual job is created for each image and/or page in a document. For example, if you uploaded 20 images, the system creates 20 jobs.
5. Double-click a job to edit and fine-tune in the Layout Editor.

▷ Make a Wide Format Hot Ticket template

A Wide Format Hot Ticket is always created from a template. You can create your own templates from an existing Wide Format Hot Ticket.

1. Go to the Hot Tickets window.
2. Select the hot ticket you want to save as a template in the Hot Ticket list.
3. Choose File > Save as Template.
4. Choose a template Category and click Save.

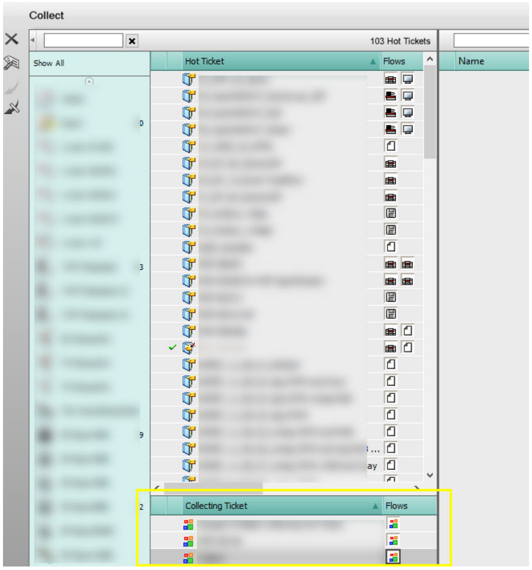
   The template is added to the list of templates.

NOTE: To delete a template, go to the Templates resource. Read the section “Monitoring and Configuring Your System” on page 459.

Collecting Hot Tickets

A Collecting Hot Ticket is a special kind of Hot Ticket which is used to collect and arrange images and create wide format jobs. These Hot Tickets use the Collect task processor to organize multiple images and multiple pages in a multi-page file and output imposed sheets. Collecting Hot Tickets typically have a Hot Folder, Normalize and Collect task processors but may also include the Automate task processor for even more automation.

Collecting Hot Tickets are displayed in a separate panel in the Hot Tickets List.



CHAPTER 7

Previewing Job Results

This section describes how you can view and analyze job results.

Raster Preview

Raster Preview allows you to examine rasterized job data. Once Apogee has rendered one or more jobs, you can select and view the individual job pages by double-clicking the job results in the Job Layout pane. Apogee creates an exact, viewable image of the data on your front-end workstation. The requested raster data is displayed as a series of overlapping separations. You can open and view pages at different magnifications, and check individual color separations, ink coverage, and screen angles.

On the basis of this detailed job preview, you can approve and send the job directly to your output device (platesetter, imagesetter, etc.) or abort the job before submitting it to output. You can also save the rendered job data to disk.

Preview supports all resolutions, screening modes, and page sizes. You can simultaneously preview several pages from the same job, and multiple previews of a single page. Images can be displayed at any zoom factor from 1:128 to 32:1.

You can preview one page of a job which has been rendered, while the following page is being rendered. Overlap between “rendering/previewing” and “imaging” is also supported on a page-by-page or flat-by-flat basis.

NOTE: Preview is a “read-only” application: Tools are provided for zooming and panning the image, and for displaying various types of image information. However, no changes can be made to the raster data. If errors are found in the previewed data, the job content must be corrected in the original application, and then re-submitted.

Post-Preview Options

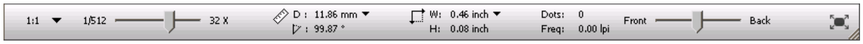
When you have finished previewing the pages of a job, you can:

- Approve the results: You can approve the previewed page, or the entire job, and send it directly to your output device. Once it has been output, the raster data is automatically deleted, and will no longer be available for previewing or imaging.
- Reject the results: You can reject the previewed page, or the entire job. Rejected items are marked with a red stripe.
- Approve rejected results: You can approve a job or item which is currently marked as rejected. This item is then treated the same as an approved item.

Preview Window and Tools

When you select and open a page or flat for previewing, the Preview window is opened on your desktop. This window displays the selected raster data, and provides a set of tools and options for viewing and measuring the data.

At the bottom of the Preview window is the status bar.



The Preview status bar contains the following tools:

- Zoom slider: You can drag the zoom slider left or right to change the zoom level. This zooms the image around the center of the Preview window.
- Screen angle measurement results: Displays the results of any screen angle measurements you perform.
- Width and height measurement results: Displays the width and height of the box defined by the diagonal you draw with the Measurements tool.
- Screen frequency results: Displays the results of any screen frequency measurements you perform (only displayed when you zoom in to view the raster data).
- Light table tool: Displays blended front and back views of your raster data. This allows you to check the registration of the front and backs, or check if there are problems with the ink coverage.
- Full screen display button: On the right is a button which switches the Preview window to full screen (the shortcut key is ‘f’). You can return to normal view by pressing the Esc key.

You can also display a series of small palettes for the currently active Preview window:

NOTE: These palettes are hidden when the active window is not a raster Preview window.

- Navigator Palette: Provides a snapshot of the entire page or flat, as a low resolution continuous tone image. Using this palette, you can focus on the detail of one area of the selected page or flat. This view can be panned and zoomed over the entire area of the page.
- Inks Palette: Allows you to view the different separations, and measures the ink coverage within the selected area of the Preview window.
- Tools Palette: Provides quick access to common tasks and procedures.

- Adjustments Palette: Allows you to modify the appearance of an image by adjusting constraints, saturation, and contrast settings.
- Compare Palette: Allows you to compare the results of two jobs with each other.
- Depth Palette: Displays a depth map of a monochrome, 8-bit file using indexed colors.
- Distortion Palette: Allows you to control the distortion view.

The Preview window and the Navigator and Inks palettes can be resized using the resize handle in the lower right corner. The location and size of all windows is remembered between sessions.

You can open several Preview windows, but only one Inks palette. These display information about the active Preview window. You can close or minimize each of the smaller palettes individually, or you can hide them all at once.

Preview Window

The Preview window displays in detail the area of the image that is currently selected by the Navigator palette locator. The Preview window displays:

- A Title bar: Shows the name of the job, followed by the page or signature number and Task Processor name.
- The selected raster data: When you open an item to preview, the selected raster data (page or flat) is initially shown as a low resolution continuous tone image. When you zoom in to approximately an 8x zoom factor, the continuous tone image is replaced with the high resolution raster data. This allows you to preview traps, halftone dots, etc. The way in which raster data is by default displayed can be customized, as described in “Preferences” on page 51.
- Ruler and Grid (optional): Preview windows can display rulers in user-selectable units of measurement (millimeters, centimeters, inches, pixels, or picas).

You can open as many Preview windows as your system resources allow. You can have several Preview windows showing the same raster data at different magnifications, or windows showing different raster data.

Navigator Palette

The Navigator palette displays a snapshot of the entire page or flats as a low resolution continuous tone image. This palette can be switched on or off by selecting Window > Palettes > Show/Hide Navigator.

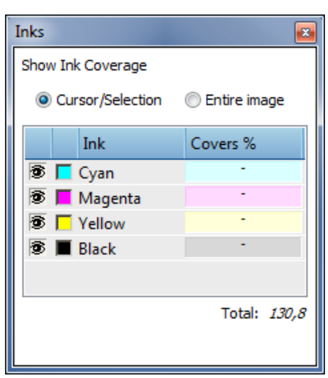
You can open a Navigator palette for every page that you preview.

The Navigator provides a view of the entire page or flat, at a low magnification: A red “locator” rectangle in the Navigator palette indicates which part of the page is enlarged in the Preview window. You can quickly preview different areas of the page by clicking the mouse pointer inside the locator and dragging it to another position. You can click outside the locator to center the view area on the clicked point.

Inks Palette

The Inks palette automatically measures the ink coverage within the selected area of the Preview window. This palette can be switched on or off by selecting Window > Palettes > Show/Hide Inks.

The Inks palette contains a table which lists the separations in the selected page or flat.



The table has three columns:

- Visibility control (eye icon): You can click the eye icon to hide the associated separation. The eye icon then disappears. You can click the same icon to display the separation again.

- Color well: Click here to open the system color picker, and select the color of the associated box. For White, Primer or Varnish, you can also set the transparency.
- Ink: The name of the separation. This may be a CMYK separation, or a spot color. This can also be White, Primer or Varnish if these are included in the document.
- Covers %: The ink coverage is expressed as a percentage, and is represented both numerically and as a color bar. The bar shows the color of the separation. The ink coverage calculation is accurate to within 3 percent of the actual ink coverage.

NOTE: You can press the Alt key and click on a hidden separation to show that separation, hiding all others.

The Inks palette can be resized using the resize handle in the lower right corner, and can be switched on or off by selecting Window > Palettes > Show/Hide Inks.

Light Table Slider

The Light Table slider allows you to display blended front and back views of your raster data. This allows you to check the registration of the front and backs, or check if there are problems with the ink coverage.

NOTE: This feature only works on the front and backs of the same signature/page. You cannot combine sides that belong to different signatures/flats.

You control this feature using the Light Table slider. This slider allows you to shift the opacity of the results from the front view to the back view. When you move the slider, a percentage of both sides (front and back) is blended in the results you are viewing.

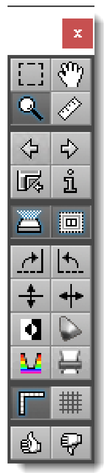
NOTE: In Press sheet mode, the side that is in front (front or back) will always be right reading. Typically, the other side of the Light Table view that shines through will be wrong reading.

The preview takes longer to build when the Light Table option enabled in the View menu. The buildup of the preview will progressively show all separation colors from the front and backside. In most cases this means the load time will double when Light Table is active. Each time you slide the opacity slider the preview will rebuild.

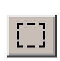
The Light Table options are disabled if you are viewing one-sided results (pages with no imposition) or if this feature in not licensed.

Tools Palette

The Tools palette provides quick access to common tasks and procedures.



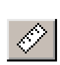
Each of these tools is described below.



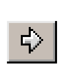
Marquee tool: Allows you to draw a rectangle in the Preview window by clicking and dragging. The ink values for the selected region are measured and displayed in the Inks palette. For more information, see “To measure the ink coverage of a selected area” on page 342.

Hand tool: Pans the image, allowing you to view a page that exceeds the size of the Preview window. With this tool selected, click inside the Preview window and drag the image around.

Zoom tool: Zooms in to the next zoom level in the Preview window. You can zoom out by holding down the Alt key. Alternatively, you can click and drag to zoom into a specified area. For more information, see “To zoom in on a point using the Zoom tool” on page 336.



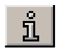
Measure tool: Measures raster angles, and distances between the raster points. You can also use it to calculate the line ruling of a separation. For more information, see “To measure screen angles” on page 344.



Next tool: Displays the next side result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Front > Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Front > Cover Sig 2 Back etc.). If you hold down the ‘C’ key while clicking the tool, Apogee displays the next sheet result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Back > Cover Sig 3 Back).

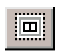
Previous tool: Displays the previous side result. If you hold down the ‘C’ key while clicking the tool, Apogee displays the previous sheet result.

Turn Sheet tool: If your results have 2 sides (front and back), Raster Preview can switch between the two sides. Click this tool (Ctrl-T) to toggle the view (front or back). This tool is disabled if the result only contains one side.



Info tool: Displays information about the selected item.

Light Table tool: Displays or hides blended front and back views of your raster data. This feature only works on the front and backs of the same signature/page.



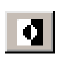
Rule-Ups tool: Displays or hides additional layers of information on top of the Raster Preview image. The Rule/ups palette contains a table which lists the layers you can display.

Rotate clockwise tool: Rotates the current view 90 degrees clockwise.

Rotate counterclockwise tool: Rotates the current view 90 degrees counterclockwise.

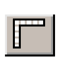
Flip vertical tool: Flips the current view vertically.

Flip horizontal tool: Flips the current view horizontally.

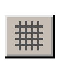


Invert tool: Inverts the current view (negative). For more information, see “To invert an image (negative)” on page 339.

Color Managed tool: Activates color-managed raster preview. This allows you to preview the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space (based on ICC profiles).



Show/Hide rulers tool: Shows/Hides ruler coordinates in the units set in your Preferences.



Show/Hide grid lines tool: Shows/Hides grid lines for every major and minor division of the ruler. The default setting is specified in your Preferences.

Preview Menus

All the Preview settings and commands are grouped in the View, Control and Window menus.

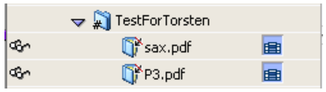
Opening/Closing Pages or Flats for Preview

This section describes the different ways that you can open and close pages or flats in Preview mode.

▷ To open pages or flats for preview

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Look in the Job List, and select a job that has a Soft Proof status icon.



NOTE: Do not select a folder: You need to expand folders in order to select jobs.

After a few seconds, the job data is retrieved.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Look in the Job Layout pane.

You will see a graphical thumbnail representation of the selected job pages or flats.

A successfully rendered page or flat will have solid separation indicators.

5 Double-click one or more page or flat thumbnails that have been successfully rendered.

The first of the selected items is displayed in Preview mode. The default view is set to “Fit to window”, and the view settings display a positive, upright, right-reading image.

When opening pages for preview, the page is initially shown as a low resolution continuous tone image. When zooming in, if you have the Raster Preview option, the continuous tone image is replaced with the high resolution raster data (from approximately 1:8 zoom factor). This allows you to preview traps, halftone dots, etc. Only the full version of Apogee allows you to preview high resolution raster data. The Apogee Light version can be upgraded to include the Raster Preview option.

NOTE: More than one Preview Window can be opened for a particular page, each with its own zoom factor. You can also open multiple different pages within a job, but you cannot simultaneously open and view pages from different jobs.

▷ To open multiple views on a page

In addition to opening multiple pages, you can also open up multiple windows on the currently selected page to display detailed views on different areas of the image.

1. Open a page or flat, as described in "To open pages or flats for preview" on page 332.
2. While your selected page is active, select Window > New Window.

   Preview opens a new Preview window for the current page. Each of the windows you open can display a different part of the page with a different zoom factor.

NOTE: The maximum number of windows that you can have open at any given time depends largely on your system's memory configuration. However, you can preview only one job at a time.

▷ To close a preview window

1. Click the mouse inside the Preview window that you want to close.

   This makes the window the active window.
2. Select File > Close, or directly click the close button in the Title bar.
3. The selected Preview window is closed.

   If this is the only Preview window open, then the Navigator and any other associated Preview windows that may be open are also closed.

Browsing your Results

To view your results you can select multiple results in the Results tab, and multiple raster preview windows will open. However, once Raster Preview is launched, it offers an alternative way to browse through your results within a single raster preview window. This way you can avoid switching back and forth between the Results tab and Raster Preview.

▷ To view next and previous results

1. Double-click on a page in the middle of a set of results to launch Raster Preview.

2 Click the Next and Previous buttons to browse forwards and backwards through the results from front to back.

Raster Preview displays the next and previous side results (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Front < > Cover Sig 1 Back < > Cover Sig 2 Front < > Cover Sig 2 Back < > etc.).

3 Hold down the C key while clicking the Next and Previous buttons to browse forwards and backwards through the results from sheet to sheet.

Raster Preview displays the next and previous sheet results (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Back < > Cover Sig 2 Back < > Cover Sig 3 Back, etc.).

▷ To view the first and last results

1 To display the first result, press the Home button.

2 To display the last result, press the End button.

NOTE: If a job consists of 10 signatures: Sig 1 Front is the first result and Sig 10 Back is the last result.

▷ To turn a sheet

If your results have 2 sides (front and back), Raster Preview will always group these results.

1 Select both the front and back of one and the same sheet and double-click.

A single raster preview window will open.

2 Click the Turn Sheet tool (CTRL+T) to toggle the view (front or back).

Alternatively, you can click the Side Switcher in the Light Table palette.

The Turn Sheet tool is disabled if the result only contains one side.

NOTE: The zoom factor, Navigator view and position and Inks separation selection remain the same when you turn a sheet.

Zooming Images

There are a number of different ways to zoom in and out, as described below.

The zoom level is always expressed in powers of 2. The available zoom factors are: 1:512 (1 screen pixel corresponds to 512 raster data pixels), 1:256, 1:128, 1:64, 1:32, 1:16, 1:8, 1:4, 1:2, 1:1, 2:1, and so on up to 32:1.

NOTE: When opening pages to preview, the page is initially shown as a low resolution continuous tone image. When zooming in, if you have the Raster Preview option, the continuous tone image is replaced with the high resolution raster data allowing for previewing traps, halftone dots, etc. Only the full version of Apogee will allow for high resolution raster data previewing. Other versions of Apogee can be upgraded to include the Raster Preview option.

▷ To zoom the Preview window using the slider or menu option

1 In the Preview status bar, drag the zoom slider to the left to zoom out (up to 1/512), or to the right to zoom in (up to 32X).

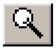
To the left of the zoom slider, Raster Preview displays the current zoom factor. When zooming out, “1/” is displayed, followed by the zoom factor (1/2, 1/8, 1/128). When zooming in, the zoom factor is displayed, followed by a “X” (32X, 4X, 1X).

2 You can also select a zoom level from the View menu (View > Zoom In/Out). This zooms the image around the center of the preview pane. The View menu also includes the following options:

- Size to Fit. This selects a zoom level that fits the entire image in the Preview window.
- Actual Pixels. This sets the zoom level to 1(i.e. each raster pixel is represented by a single display pixel).

▷ To zoom in on a point using the Zoom tool

1 Click the Zoom tool.



2 Click a point in the Preview window to zoom in on that point in the image.

Preview calculates an appropriate zoom factor to fit the active Preview window on your screen. Each time you click the Zoom tool, the zoom factor is doubled, until you reach the maximum zoom-in level (32:1).

▷ To zoom out on a point using the Zoom tool

1 Click the Zoom tool.

2 Click a point in the Preview window while holding down the Alt key.

3 Preview zooms out on that point in the Preview window.

▷ To zoom in on an area using the Zoom tool

1 Click the Zoom tool.

2 Click-and-drag in the Preview window to select a rectangular area of your choice.

The selected area is re-scaled to fill the current window size. The re-scaling is performed to the nearest zoom factor to the power of 2.

▷ To zoom out on an area using the Zoom tool

1 Click the Zoom tool.

2 Click-and-drag in the Preview window to select a rectangular area of your choice while holding down the Alt key.

The selected area is re-scaled to fill the current window size. The re-scaling is performed to the nearest zoom factor to the power of 2.

NOTE: Each successive zoom operation that you start will interrupt any ongoing operation. This means that if you start a new operation, such as a zoom in, before an ongoing operation is completed, then the ongoing operation will be aborted.

Changing the Default View

This section explains how to manipulate the images you preview, and how to customize your viewing options. In addition to panning, rotating, flipping, and inverting images, you can also display raster data as if it were a press sheet (positive and gripper edge down), or as if it were output from an imaging device (with polarity, orientation, and reading set accordingly).

▷ To pan an image

1 Select the Pan tool.

TIP: You can also pan an image by dragging the rectangular locator in the Navigator palette.

2 Click and hold down the mouse button on a point in the Preview window.

3 While still holding down the mouse button, pan the image by moving the mouse around the Preview window.

The image is updated when you release the mouse button.

▷ To fit the image size to the screen size

1 Select View > Size To Fit.

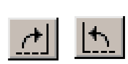
This calculates an appropriate zoom factor to make the active Preview window fit on your screen. Image re-scaling is performed to the nearest zoom factor to the power of 2.

In this mode, any area that is not covered by the image is shown with a gray and white checkerboard pattern.

▷ To rotate an image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to rotate.

2 Select View > Transform > Rotate 90 CW to rotate the image 90° clockwise, or View > Transform > Rotate 90 CCW to rotate the image 90° counterclockwise. You can also use the Rotate tools:



3 Repeat the procedure to rotate an image through 180°, or 270°.

The thumbnail in the Navigator palette reflects the new orientation. The Navigator palette does not resize; the thumbnail does. The feed direction and punch indicators are also rotated.

In “Size to Fit” mode the window size may need to grow to accommodate the new orientation and to keep the same zoom level. If this is not possible, the zoom level is adjusted to the “Size to Fit” mode. The window only grows if necessary; it never shrinks.

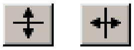
NOTE: Rotating an image does not change the raster data, or affect other views.

▷ To flip an image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to flip.

2 Select View > Transform > Flip Horizontal to flip the image on the horizontal axis (left-to-right).

3 Select View > Transform > Flip Vertical to flip the image on the vertical axis (upside-down). You can also use the Flip tools:



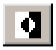
The thumbnail in the Navigator palette reflects the new orientation. The feed direction and punch indicators are also flipped.

NOTE: Flipping an image does not change the raster data, or affect other views.

▷ To invert an image (negative)

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to invert.

2 Select View > Transform > Invert, or click the Invert tool.



The image is inverted. The thumbnail in the Navigator palette also reflects the new state.

Inverting an image is useful for previewing negative separations. It transposes the solid areas of an image to transparent, and transparent areas to solid, and is applied to each of the image separations.

For example, suppose an image is made up of 4 separations; cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Each separation is actually made up of only 2 types of areas - solid areas (black) and transparent areas. When you select Invert, Preview reverses the display of these areas individually on each separation. This means that, on the cyan plate, all cyan areas are displayed as transparent, and all transparent areas are displayed as cyan. The same reversal is applied to the magenta, yellow, and black plates.

NOTE: Inverting an image does not change the raster data, or affect other views.

▷ To display a full-size image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to display.

2 Select View > Actual Pixels.

The image in the currently active Preview window is displayed full size, at the zoom factor of 1:1 (i.e. one raster data pixel is displayed using 1 screen pixel).

NOTE: Only the full version of Apogee allows you to preview high resolution raster data (in order to check traps, halftone dots, etc.). Certain Apogee versions can be upgraded to include the high resolution Raster Preview option.

▷ To display/hide separations

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view.

2 Select the Inks palette.

This window allows you to toggle individual separations on or off.

3 Click the eye icon next to one or more of the ink names to toggle the separations on or off.

You can hold down the Alt key when you click on the eye icon. This hides all other separations, showing only the one you clicked on. Repeat this action to bring back all hidden separations. Alt-clicking on a hidden separation shows that separation, hiding all others.

All combinations of process and spot color separations can be selected.

▷ To view raster data as a press sheet

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view.

2 Select View > Press Sheet.

The raster data is displayed as a press sheet (positive and gripper edge down).

NOTE: This does not change the raster data or your Client Preference settings, and does not affect any other views.

▷ To view raster data as output from an imaging device

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view.

2 Select View > Device Output.

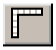
The raster data is displayed as if it were the output of the imaging device (polarity, orientation, reading, and punch marks are set accordingly). In this view, the feed direction indicator in the Navigator palette always points up.

NOTE: This does not change the raster data or your Client Preference settings, and does not affect any other views.

▷ To show / hide the Ruler

1 Select the Preview window.

2 Select View > Rulers, or click the Rulers tool to toggle on or off the Ruler in the Preview window.



The Ruler is displayed along the edges of the Preview window, starting from the top left corner. The default unit of measurement is taken from your Preferences.

When the zoom level is sufficiently high, the ruler has the following marks:

Units	Numbered marks	Major marks	Minor marks
cms	Every cm	Every 1/2 cm	Every mm
inches	Every inch	Every 1/2 inch	Every 1/8 inch

You can display rulers for each of the Preview Windows.

▷ To show / hide the Grid

1 Select the Preview window.

2 Select View > Grid, or click the Grid tool to toggle on or off the Grid in the Preview window.

Gridlines are displayed for every major and minor division of the Ruler. Major divisions are drawn in dark blue, subdivisions in light blue.

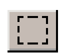
NOTE: The gridlines do not necessarily match with the ruler divisions.

Measuring Ink Coverage

The Inks palette indicates the percentage of ink that is used in any given area of the currently active Preview window. This feature is used in conjunction with the Marquee tool.

▷ To measure the ink coverage of a selected area

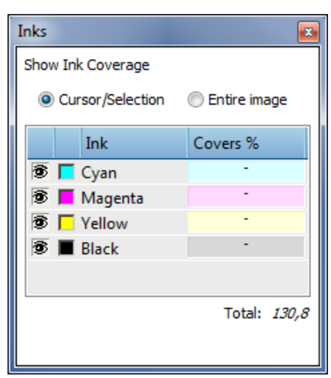
1. Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to measure.
2. Make sure the Inks palette is displayed and the **Cursor/Selection** button is selected.
3. Select the Marquee tool.



4. Click and drag the mouse to define a rectangular area in the Preview window.

The selected area is displayed with a dotted outline.

The Inks palette displays the ink coverage within the selected area. To indicate that it is not the global coverage, the total percentage is displayed in italics. If no area was selected, the ink coverage for the entire active Preview Window would be displayed, and the total percentage would be displayed in normal characters.



The ink coverage percentage is displayed for each process color, and any spot colors. This information is calculated on the basis of the real pixel data, and is accurate to within around 3%. When zoomed in at 1:1, the information is accurate to 1%.

NOTE: Calculating ink coverage might take a while. A dash is displayed until the result has been calculated. When you change the selection, Preview restarts the calculation; you do not have to wait for the calculation to finish.

---

5 If you wish, you can select the rectangular area you defined in the Preview window, and drag it around to measure different areas of the image.

6 Click outside the rectangular area to cancel this selection.

When calculation is off, or in progress, the Covers % displays dashes (-).

NOTE: When the Inks palette is displayed, it is updated every time a new area is selected in the Preview Window. If an ink is deselected in the Inks palette, no Cover % for that ink will appear.

▷ To measure the ink coverage at cursor point

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to measure.

2 Make sure the Inks palette is displayed and the **Cursor/Selection** button is selected.

3 Click where you want to measure the ink coverage.

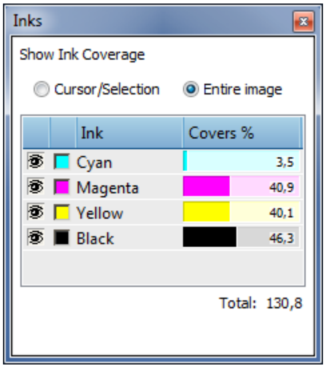
The Inks palette displays the ink coverage within the selected area. To indicate that it is not the global coverage, the total percentage is displayed in italics.

▷ To measure the ink coverage of the whole page/image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the page or image you want to measure.

2 Make sure the Inks palette is displayed and the **Image** button is selected.

The Inks palette displays the ink coverage for the entire active Preview Window. To indicate that it is the global coverage, the percentages are displayed in normal characters (not in italics).



The ink coverage percentage is displayed for each process color, and any spot colors. This information is calculated on the basis of the real pixel data, and is accurate to within around 3%. When zoomed in at 1:1, the information is accurate to 1%.

NOTE: Calculating ink coverage might take a while. A dash is displayed until the result has been calculated. When you change the selection, Preview restarts the calculation; you do not have to wait for the calculation to finish.

When calculation is off, or in progress, the Covers % displays dashes (-). If an ink is deselected in the Inks palette, no Cover % for that ink will appear.

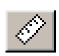
Measuring Screen Angles

This section describes how to measure screen angles. This helps you to avoid unwanted moiré effects in your final output.

▷ To measure screen angles

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to measure.

2 Select the Measurement tool.



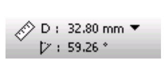
TIP: You need to select a good pattern to achieve useful results.

3 Click a reference point inside the Preview window and drag the mouse pointer to another position in the window.

As you move the mouse, Preview automatically calculates the distance and angle between the point where the mouse button was pressed and the current mouse position. Distances are measured in the units you have specified.

NOTE: If you press the Shift key while dragging the mouse, the direction of the line you draw will be restricted to a horizontal, vertical, or diagonal direction.

A line connects the start and end reference points. The distance between the reference points and the angle of the line are displayed in the status bar.

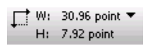


- ☐ The first of these two values indicates the actual distance between the two points, in the user-specified units.

- The second value indicates the screen angle between the two points, expressed in degrees.

The angle is measured counterclockwise from the zero angle reference axis through to the starting point (i.e. the point you started dragging the mouse). If the value is greater than or equal to 180, the read-out will be decremented by 180.

To the right of the displayed values in the status bar, you will see some additional measurements.



- The first of these two values indicates the horizontal distance between the two points, in the user-specified units.

- The second value indicates the vertical distance between the two points, in the user-specified units.

NOTE: By default the unit of measurement for the above fields is taken from your Preferences.

Measuring Line Frequency

This section describes how to measure the line frequency of a separation.

▷ To measure the line frequency of a separation

1. Select the Preview window which contains the separation you want to measure.
2. Select the Measurement tool.

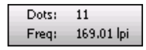
   

3. Zoom the image so that you can see the raster dots.

   When you do this, you will see that

4. Select a dot, and drag the mouse pointer along the line of the raster to another dot.

   As you move the mouse, Preview counts the number of dots along the line and automatically calculates the line frequency. The readout in the Status bar shows the number of dots found and the resulting frequency. The frequency is displayed in line per inch (lpi) or lines per cm (lpc), depending on the units you specified in your Preferences.



Color-Managed Raster Preview

Color-managed raster preview is a preview of the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space, based on ICC profiles. Contract proofing quality can be achieved, provided you have a calibrated monitor and correctly configured monitor profile.

NOTE: Color-managed raster preview is a licensed feature.

▷ Activate color-managed raster preview

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to preview.

2 Click the Color-managed Preview tool to activate the color-managed preview.

Selecting Color-managed mode will disable the ink display in the Inks palette.

To activate the enhanced visualization of overlapping spot colors, the following additional preview license is required:

- accurate spot color mix preview

In this enhanced mode, spot color visualization is superior to the standard color-managed mode.

Depth Tool

With the Depth tool you can display a depth map of a monochrome, 8-bit file using indexed colors. Each pixel value (1–254) is mapped to a different color in a one-to-one relation between pixel value and color depth. The color palette uses the colors of a rainbow with color value 0 shown as black.

▷ Activate and show the Depth palette

The tool is only available when the required license is present and the file type being viewed allows for the tool to be used.

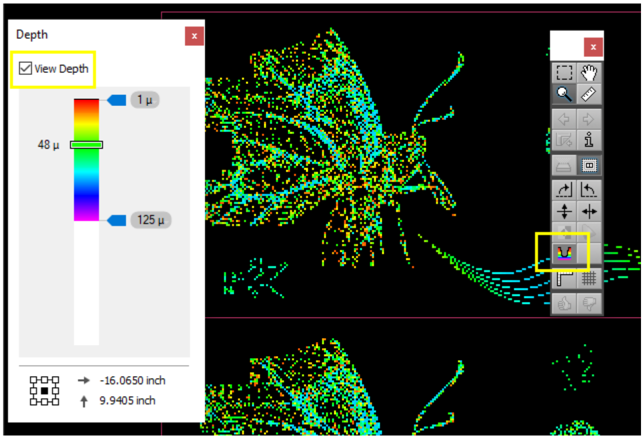
- Choose **Window > Palettes > Show Depth** to open the Depth palette or press CTRL+ALT+H. The option is only enabled if a required file type is being viewed.

  OR

- Click the **Depth** tool in the Tools palette.

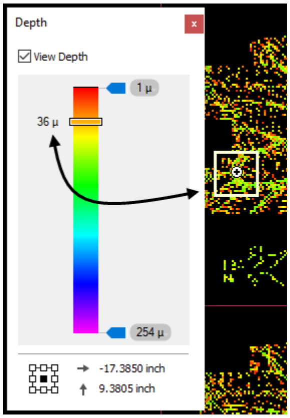
▷ Enabling Depth view

- In the Depth palette, select the **View Depth** check box or press ALT+H.



The depth map is applied to the image and the state of the Depth tool icon changes to enabled. Now you can move the cursor over the image and read the depth on the rainbow bar in the Depth palette.

Depth Palette



View Depth check box Select the check box to show/hide the image using mapped indexed colors.

Rainbow bar The vertical, colored bar represents the full range (1-254) of pixel values. The top of the bar has the lowest values, with black representing zero. The maximum pixel value is 254 at the bottom of the bar.

Range sliders The two sliders define the depth range from 1 to 254. Drag the sliders to adjust the range or click in a slider to type an integer value between 1 and 254.

Pointer value As you move the mouse cursor over the image you can see the depth value on the rainbow bar for the pointer position in question, with the actual values shown next to the sliding marker.

Pointer position The horizontal and vertical distance between the pointer and the selected reference point, with arrows depending on the selected reference point.

Reference point The point on the sheet that serves as the reference point for the pointer position. Click one of the nine reference points to set the reference point.

Saturation, Contrast and Channel Adjustments

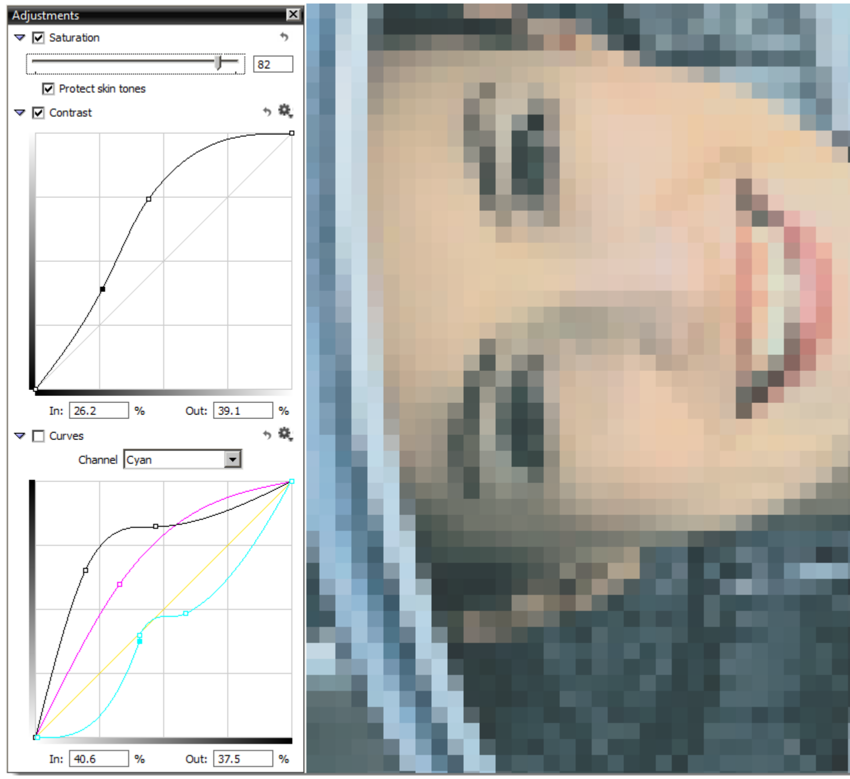
The Adjustments palette has three panels with the following tools to adjust rendered results:

- Saturation slider: The slider has a range from -100 to +100 with a default value of 0 as the neutral setting. You can apply an adjustment by selecting the check box and dragging the slider, clicking in the slider path or entering a value. The *Protect skin tones* option lets you disable the saturation adjustment for skin tones.

- Contrast adjustment curve: This adjustment controls the luminance of the rendered result which can range from 0% (black) to 100% (white). The plot area consists of a horizontal *In* axis and a vertical *Out* axis, and a diagonal baseline where the In and Out values are the same. The baseline is black if no adjustments have been applied and changes to gray once you begin to make adjustments. Drag any point on the black baseline or curve to make adjustments. You can also choose an adjustment preset by clicking the cogwheel and selecting a preset you defined in the Contrast Adjustment resource for this particular device. Make sure the Contrast check box is displayed to see the effect on the sheet.

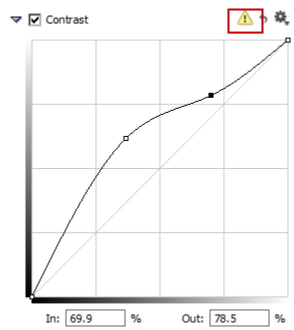
- Channel adjustment curves: These curves control the CMYK ink coverage of the device within a range of 0% (no ink) to 100% (full coverage). The plot area consists of a horizontal *In* axis and a vertical *Out* axis, and a diagonal baseline where the In and Out values are the same. Choose the channel that you want to adjust from the drop-down list (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black) to activate one of the four channel curves. Drag any point on the curve to make adjustments. You can also choose an adjustment preset by clicking the cogwheel and selecting a preset you defined in the Curve Adjustment resource for this particular device. Make sure the Curves check box is displayed to see the effect on the sheet.

Figure 7.28: Saturation slider, Contrast and Channel Adjustment curves in Raster Preview

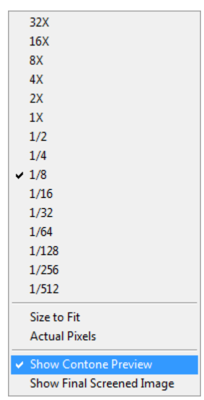


You can revert to the initial values by clicking the revert button.

A warning icon is displayed when you make adjustments and these adjustments cannot be shown in the current preview mode.



Switch to Contone Preview using the zoom level menu to see the effect of the adjustments on the sheet.



Comparing Results

The Raster Compare feature lets you compare the results of two jobs with each other. This is particularly useful for security printing applications where you may need to check extremely small differences in the raster data. The feature can also be used in regular commercial printing environments to compare the difference between previously rendered data and the latest result.

You start the Raster Compare using the Compare palette, and you can also use the Inks palette to compare ink coverage in the two images.

NOTE: You cannot compare with a job archive result.

▷ Compare the results of two jobs

1 Open the first page or flat you want to use for the comparison.

2 Choose **Window > Palettes > Show Compare** to open the Compare palette.

The current image you are viewing is image A of the comparison and the job name and signature are specified at the top of the palette.

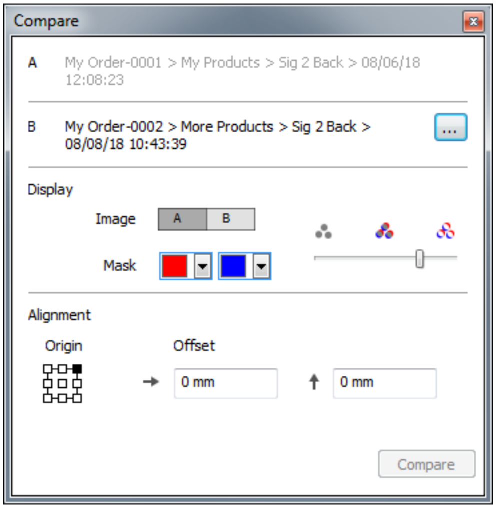
3 Click the browse button on the second line to choose the preview data you want to compare the current image with (image B or reference image).

4 Select the reference job (image B) in the list on the left; if the list is long, use the filter.

The available Results for the selected job are listed on the right.

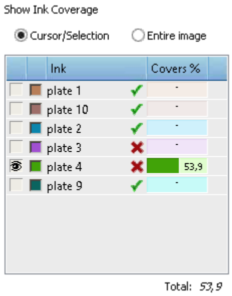
5 Choose the Results you want to compare with and click Open.

A blue progress bar is displayed as the system compares the two images, and the reference image is now specified on the second line in the palette.



6 A **mask** for each image shows the pixels which are only in the respective image. In the Display panel, moving the slider to the right increases the intensity of these masks and hides the actual image. You can alternate between both images by clicking A or B. You can change the color of the two masks by clicking the patch and selecting another color in the picker.

7 In the Inks palette, you can check whether the ink coverage for the two images is the same (indicated with a green check mark) or not the same (indicated with a red cross).



8 In the Alignment panel you can enter positive or negatives values (Offset) to move the reference image (image B) horizontally and/or vertically and align the images. You can choose a reference point (Origin) to apply the offset.

NOTE: When you've finished comparing and close the Preview window, none of your alignment changes are saved.

NOTE: You cannot compare in Depth-view mode or in Color Managed mode.

Viewing/Editing Raster Preview Preferences

A set of Raster Preview Preferences allow you to specify default viewing settings (units of measurement, etc.) that will be used each time you launch Raster Preview.

▷ To open and edit your Raster Preview Preferences

1. From the Jobs window, choose Edit > Preferences...
2. Select the Viewers tab.
3. Edit the Raster Preview fields, as described in “Preferences” on page 51.

CHAPTER 8

Task Processor Resources

This section provides information on the Asanti Resources that are available for each Task Processor. Resources are collections of objects such as fonts, preflight profiles, or calibration curves that are required by the Task Processors.

About Task Processor Resources

Most Resources can be configured and customized in the System Overview, and you can create, edit, and delete Resources in the available Resource categories. The Resource pane displays the resource categories that are available for the currently selected item in the System Overview. The displayed resources will therefore vary in accordance with the selected item. The first icon in the list is the Parameter Sets icon, which allows you to create and manage Parameter Sets for the Task Processor (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 496).

Administrator access level only!

Alignment Pin Sets

Alignment pins represent a fixed set of alignment positions to which the media can be aligned on a print layout.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Alignment Pin Sets Resource category is available for:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

Overview

Name and Pin Width The name of the pin set and the width of the physical pins. Leave at 0 if the alignment positions take up no physical space on the bed.

Reference Alignment pin set corner references. Select one of the options from the drop-down list: Bottom / Left, Bottom / Right, Top / Left, Top / Right, or Swap Left/ Right alignment edges in entire Alignment Pin Set.

Pin Configuration Several pin configurations can be specified in a set, e.g. Small, Medium and Large, with different alignment positions.

Name The name of the pin configuration.

Machine ID Enter a string that you want to send to the Automatic Board Feeder (ABF) to activate the chosen pin configuration. Leave empty if not applicable.

Alignment Position All the individual alignment positions for the selected pin configuration are shown in this list; for each position you can set the distance between the alignment pin and the printer’s default side lay, and whether to align left, right or against both sides of the pin.

Apogee Preflight Action Lists

Action lists are useful for performing repetitious tasks either within a single PDF document or in multiple PDF documents.

An action list usually consists of several actions or checks and once you have created an action list, you can re-use it to perform these tasks in the predefined sequence.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Apogee Preflight Action Lists Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- Apogee Preflight

Apogee Preflight Action Lists Overview

The Apogee Preflight Action Lists overview lists all available Apogee Preflight action lists.

A set of action lists is provided by default with your system. Additional actions list can be obtained and imported. Some action lists, e.g. Hairline in the Standard category, can be duplicated and customized.

In the Production Plan, the available action lists are filtered depending on their position in the plan.

Category In this list you can select the action lists by category. For example:

- Color Management
- Standard

Type The Job Type list is used in combination with Category to filter Apogee Preflight Actions displayed in the Action List pane. You have 3 options:

- Any: displays all actions of the selected category for all job types
- Wide Format Jobs: displays actions of the selected category only for the Wide Format Jobs.
- Other Jobs: displays actions of the selected category for other jobs.

Apogee Preflight Action Lists The Action Lists pane displays the action lists as selected in the Category list. Select an action list to see its settings in the pane below.

Name The name of the action list as it appears in this resource and the Apogee Preflight task processor.

Description A short description of what the action list does.

Tabs Depending on the type of action list, you will see Settings and/or Info tabs that define the behavior of the action list:

- Settings: in this tab you set the criteria and options for the preflight checks
- Info: an explanation of what the action list does
- Availability: Make Action List available for either Wide Format Jobs, or other jobs.

NOTE: You can filter the list of action lists by typing keywords in the Search box at the top of the list.

To create a new Action List

Editable action lists can be customized or duplicated to create a new action list.

NOTE: An action list can be customized if it has a Settings tab and in this case the Duplicate option is available when clicking the cogwheel.

---

1. Unlock the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource.
2. In the Apogee Preflight Action List, choose the action list that you want to duplicate, e.g Hairline in the Standard category.

   Enter ‘hairline’ in the search box to locate this action list.
3. Click the cogwheel and choose Duplicate.

   A duplicate appears in the list with the same name and the **- copy** extension.
4. In the settings pane below, rename the action list and enter a Description.

5 Modify the Settings as required.

For example change the width.

NOTE: You cannot edit the Info tab.

---

6 Lock the resource.

The action list name is updated in the list. This new action list is now also visible in the Apogee Preflight task processor parameter settings.

▷ To edit an Action List

NOTE: An action list is editable if the Duplicate option is available when clicking the cogwheel.

---

1 Unlock the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource.

2 In the Apogee Preflight Action List, choose the action list that you want to edit, e.g Hairline in the Standard category.

Enter ‘hairline’ in the search box to locate this action list.

3 In the settings pane below, modify the Settings as required.

For example change the width.

NOTE: You can’t edit the Info tab.

---

4 Lock the resource.

The action list is locked with the new settings.

▷ To import an Action List

1 In the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource, click the cogwheel and choose Import.

2 Browse to the location where you saved your Action List files with extension .MIME, and click Open.

The imported action list is added to the list and the category is also added in Category list if this list does not yet exist.

▷ To export an Action List

1 In the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource, click the cogwheel and choose Export.

2 Browse to the location where you want to save your Action List files with extension .MIME, and click Save.

The exported action list is saved in the location specified.

Borders

The Borders Resource category allows you to predefine border marks for specific job requirements. A Border is extra information that you can add to film or plate. This extra information can contain the order number, the print date or time, slug lines, separation names, registration marks, crop marks, etc.

A border can contain either of the two following mark types:

- Text mark: Text marks are defined with variables in Asanti. You can also choose a font type and point size for the variable.
- File mark: A file mark can be a special registration mark in the form of an EPS file or a PDF document.

You define the borders in the Resources of your output device. If you have several platesetters, filmsetters or proofing devices, the borders Resource is shared amongst the same type of output device.

When should you use Borders?

You should use borders when you have to work with a PDF document that lacks some essential information that should have been added in the source application (e.g. QuarkXpress, Imposition Template Manager). This can be registration marks or separation names, for example. Registration marks are needed to assemble the different colors correctly on top of each other. Separation names give information on the colors used.

NOTE: If you are using Apogee Impose, text marks and file marks can also be applied with the Mark Engraver. See “Mark Engraver” on page 395 for more information.

Associated Task Processors

The Border Resource category is available for:

- All Output Task Processors except for Collect, Export, Raster Link, and Plate-Maker Link
- All Print Task Processors.

For information on creating, editing, importing, exporting and deleting borders, refer to “Managing Resources” on page 499.

Administrator access level only!

Borders Overview

The Borders overview lists the available borders. You can create, duplicate, edit, import and export borders.

Border Mark Editor

You can exactly define the Border Mark settings: the mark type and the exact location of the mark on the page or sheet.

Mark Type

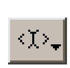
Select the Mark type (for output devices only):

- A Text Mark
- A File Mark (EPS/PDF Mark)

Text Mark

Text: In the Text field, you can specify which text is to be used as a mark. You have three options:

- Type some text in the Text field.
- Select a variable from the drop-down list. This list appears when you click the button next to the field.

- Use a combination of text and one or more variables.

Font: Select a font and a point size for the text mark.

Color: Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the text mark will be printed:

- Registration (all plates). When this option is selected, you will see an asterisk (*).
- Process Colors (CMYK)
- Cyan
- Magenta
- Yellow
- Black

Rotate: Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Stripping Text Mark

A stripping text mark serves as a placeholder for a StripMark. The main difference with the normal text mark is that the content of the stripping text mark is set by JDF. The JDF also specifies the stripping element to which the mark refers: The object whose edges are to be used as positioning references are set by JDF, but the offsets themselves are specified in the stripping text mark.

Crop Mark

Crop marks indicate where to crop the page or image. A crop mark sets crop marks around pages or around the image. They are dynamically imaged according to the specified properties.

Distance from image/page corner: Specifies the distance between the marks center and the images or pages corner.

Length of mark: Specifies the length of the mark.

Line width : Specify the width of the marks lines.

Print crop marks inside of imposition: Print crop marks that appear inside the imposed area (i.e. in between the pages). You should disable this option if you want the crop marks to appear only on the outside of the imposition (Imposition Borders only).

NOTE: Crop marks do not require the Position options.

Fold Mark

Fold marks indicate where to fold the sheet. A fold mark sets several marks to indicate where the sheet is to be folded. They are dynamically imaged according to the specified settings.

Distance from pages: Specifies the distance between the marks center and the page edges.

Length of mark: Specifies the length of the mark.

Line width : Specifies the width of the marks lines.

NOTE: Fold marks do not require the Position options.

Collation Mark

Signature/Section Collation marks offer a way to quickly inspect the correct collation order of folded sheets.

Mark: The mark is the actual marking on the spine or fold. It is printed in black, and may optionally contain an index number.

- Thickness: The thickness (or width) of the mark. Also sets the width of the step area. The default is 3mm.
- Length: The length of the mark. Also sets the step size with which the mark is offset. Note that there is no gap between two adjacent marks. The default is 11mm.

Step Area : The step area is the area in which the mark travels. The mark starts at the top (or bottom) of the step area, and advances one step with each section/signature.

- Offset from Edges: Insets the height of the step area in the available space. The default is 0.
- Step Area Length: Sets the length of the step area. When you enter a value, Asanti calculates and displays the Number of steps.
- Number of Steps: Sets the number of steps in the step area. When you enter a value, Asanti calculates and displays the Step Area Length.

Pattern : The pattern defines the position of the first mark, the direction in which the mark is stepped (normal or reverse), and what to do when arriving at the end of the step area (sawtooth or zigzag). Asanti graphically represents the four possibilities. The default is to use normal direction with the sawtooth movement.

Index : Select whether to print the collation mark number (should correspond with the signature/section) inside the mark, and with which orientation (0, 90, 180 or 270). Asanti graphically represents the five possibilities. The default is to print no index.

File Mark Use this option, if you want to use a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark.

File: Click the File list and select one of the available EPS or PDF files. The file is selected as the mark to be used.

Apply curves: Select the check boxes to apply the Linearization, Calibration or Simulation curves to the content of the file. By default, all curves are selected.

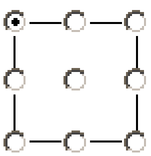
Rotate: Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

You can manage the Marks in the Marks Resource category. See “Marks” on page 430.

NOTE: The selected file is copied into a reserved directory on the server.

Position

Mark origin You can specify the exact position of the mark. This position is defined by a horizontal and a vertical distance from different parts of the sheet or plate.



Horizontal For the horizontal position, select:

- distance...
- to right or left of...
- Sheet Left Edge, Sheet Right Edge, Sheet Center, Output Size Left Edge, Output Size Right Edge, or Output Size Center.

Vertical For the vertical position, select:

- distance...
- below or above...
- Sheet Leading Edge, Sheet Trailing Edge, Sheet Center, Output Size Leading Edge, Output Size Trailing Edge, or Output Size Center.

Print on
- Front side

- Back side
- Both sides. If you select this option, the following check boxes are enabled:
  - Mirror Position on back
  - Mirror Content on back

Conflicts

Notify when Mark runs: You can set Asanti to notify you, if the Mark or part of the mark area runs in or out the sheet or plate:

- Into the sheet: Notify when the whole or part of the mark's area overlaps with the sheet area.
- Out of the sheet: Notify when the whole or part of the mark's area does not overlap with the sheet area.
- Out of the Output Size: Notify when the whole or part of the mark's area does not overlap with the output size area (disabled for Imposition Borders).
- Into the Page Content (trim box): Notify when the whole or a part of the mark's area overlaps with the page's content area, as defined by the page's trimbox.

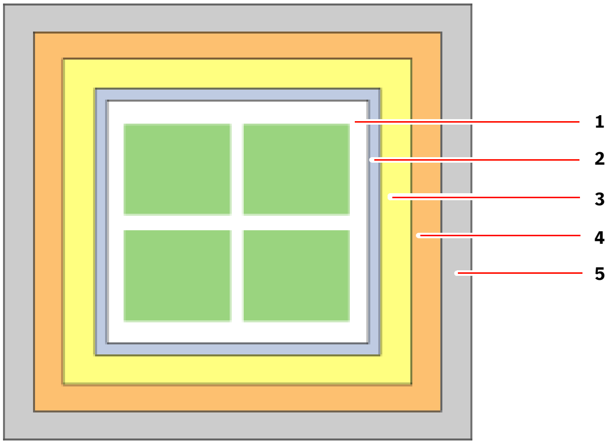
For each option, there is a check box. Asanti will send a message to the Message Board according to the selected options.

NOTE: Notification is a warning only, processing will continue.

Do not print mark when it runs into the Page Content Select this option if you want Asanti to remove a mark when it would otherwise run into a pages content area. The default setting is not to print marks that run into a Page Content.

Borders and Output Sizes

On a medium, you can distinguish different areas, including the borders and the output sizes. The following graphic clearly shows the different areas:



1 Press sheet
2 Border
3 Image size
4 Output size
5 Medium

Working with Borders and Border Marks

You first need to create a border. However, a newly created Border does not contain any border marks sets: You need to select the new border and add border marks to it.

To create and manage border mark sets

1 In the System Overview Window, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to make changes in the Border Marks.

2 Double-click the Borders icon in the Resources pane.

The Borders window appears, containing a list of all the available Borders.

3 Select the Border for which you want to create, edit, duplicate or delete a Border Mark and click the Edit button.

The Border window appears, containing the available Border Marks for the selected Border.

4 Do one of the following:

- Click the New button to create a new set of Border Marks. Enter any required information as described in “Border Mark Editor” on page 363 and click OK.

- Select the Border Marks set that you want to edit and click the Edit button. Enter any required information as described in “Border Mark Editor” on page 363 and click OK.

- Select the set of Border Marks that you want to duplicate and click the Duplicate button. A copy of the Border Mark Set will appear in the list.

- Select the set of Border Marks that you want to delete and press Delete or click the Delete button.

5. Click OK to close the Border window.
6. Close the Borders dialog box.

To quickly copy borders from one Task Processor to another

1. In the System Overview Window, select the Output Task Processor from which you want to copy the Border.
2. Double-click the Borders icon in the Resources pane.

   The Borders overview window appears, containing a list of all the available Borders.
3. Go back to the System Overview Window, and select the Output Task Processor to which you want to copy the Border.
4. Double-click the Borders icon in the Resources pane.

   The Borders overview window appears.

5 Return to the first Borders overview window, select the border you want to copy, and drag and drop it in the second Border overview window.

The selected border is duplicated.

Color Books

Asanti contains a database of colors that are organized in books. As each ink produces a slightly different color depending on the stock it is printed on, each book represents the colors as they appear on a specific paper type.

Associated Task Processors

The Color Books Resource category is available for all Press Task Processors and Proofers.

Color Books Overview

The Color Books overview consists of the books table and the colors table. You can create and partially edit color books, or individual colors within a specific book. You can also import color books, which can be useful if you want to have access to older Pantone colors.

You can click the International button to view translations of the color names in several languages.

NOTE: System Color Books are displayed in italics, and cannot be edited.

NOTE: Spot colors defined as CxF are specified using spectral data. CxF data can be imported into a CxF Color Book.

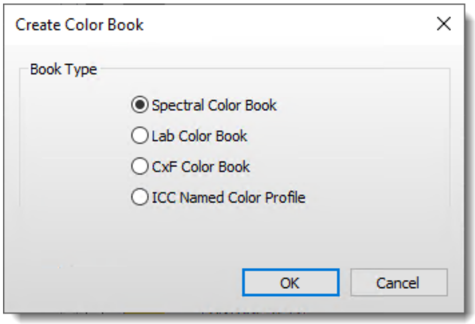
Color Books Editor

The Color Books Editor allows you to create, or modify the attributes of the selected Color Book.

NOTE: You can only modify the dot gain values of the System Color Books. The names of the System Color Books are displayed in italics.

Book Type

When creating a Color Book, start by selecting the Book Type.



Book Settings

Book Name Enter a name for the selected Color Book.

Prefix Enter a prefix (for Spectral Color Book).

Suffix Enter a suffix (for Spectral Color Book).

Suitable for printing on:

Paper type Select one of the paper types that are available for the selected color book.

Dot gain

Specifies the dot gain values for the selected Color Book.

Value Default is 15.

Highest at Default is 50.

Starting at Default is 0.

Ending at Default is 100.

Layer thickness

When creating a Color Book, you can specify layer thickness values. Accurate spot color mixing takes the print order into account to simulate colors correctly. The first layer must always be thicker than the subsequent layers.

Tints

You can also add additional tints to improve interpolation accuracy. A 100% and a 0% tints are required.

Special Colors button

Special colors are color names for unusual inks such as varnishes and die-cutting marks, glue zones, etc. These colors are organized in categories that determine their behavior.

Click the Special Colors button to open the Special Colors editor.

Category Following built-in categories are provided:

- Die line: Not mapped to color strip colors, never printed in the main flows.
- Varnish: Mapped to varnish in in inkset, for main input only and never printed in the proofing flows.
- White: Mapped to white ink in inkset. If white is not part of the inkset, the color is switched off.
- Primer: Mapped to primer ink in inkset. If primer is not part of the inkset, the color is switched off.

NOTE: Special Color categories are also used by Apogee Preflight action lists.

Colors Enter additional color names (for example in your language) or click the Colors button to choose colors that you want to add to this category.

International button

Click the International button to open the International Color Names editor where you can add translations for the four process color names and ensure the correct mapping of these color names when they appear in the different languages.

Color Accuracy

Select the *Show color accuracy (deltaE)* check box to expand the Color Accuracy panel.

Color Editor

The Color Editor allows you to modify the attributes of the selected color.

NOTE: You cannot modify colors that belong to one of the System Color Books. The names of the System Color Books are displayed in italics.

General

Color name

This name should be unique within the Color Book.

Colorant type

Select the ink type:

- Normal
- Opaque
- Opaque Ignore
- Transparent

Color definition

Define the color by its Lab color values.

Db (Neutral Density)

The initial value is calculated from the color definition. These values are used by trapping.

The Calculate button allows you to calculate the Neutral Density.

SID (Solid Ink Density)

Specify the Solid Ink Density (SID).

Color Exceptions

You can specify the color values to be used in case the conversion from Lab color does not produce the expected results. In that case, Asanti will use your values instead of calculating them from the Lab values.

This table lists all of the exceptions that are defined for the print or proofing device that you selected.

▷ To create or rename a color book

1. In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to create a new Color Book.
2. Double-click the Color Book icon.

The Color Book overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 To create or rename a Color Book, do one of the following:

- Click on the New button underneath the left column to create a new Color Book.

- Click the Edit button to rename the Color Book.

The Color Book editor appears.

4 Type an unique name for the book in the Name field and select a paper type from the drop-down list.

5 Specify the dot gain values for the color book.

- Value: By default, this is set to 0.
- Highest at: By default, this is set to 50.
- Starting at: By default, this is set to 0.
- Ending at: By default, this is set to 100.

6 Click OK.

CAUTION: The newly created Color Book does not contain any colors yet. You need to create these in the right column. For more information, see To manage your colors in a selected color book on page 376.

7 Close the Color Books overview.

▷ To import a color book

1 In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to import a Color Book.

2 Double-click the Color Book icon.

The Color Book overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 Click the Import button:

An Open file dialog box is displayed.

4 Browse to the location of the color book you want to import, select the color book file (*.MIME), and click Open.

The color book is imported, and is displayed in the list of color books.

▷ To manage your colors in a selected color book

1 In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to create, edit or delete a color.

2 Double-click the Color Books icon.

The Color Books overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 Select the Color Book in which you want to create, edit or delete a color in the left column or create a new book by clicking the New button. In the newly created book, you can then create new colors as described below.

You need to specify the Paper Type for the new book.

All of the book's colors appear in the right column.

4 Do one of the following:

- Click the New button underneath the right column to create a new color, define the color properties and click OK to save your settings.

- Click the Edit button to edit a color, define the color properties and click OK to save your changes.

- Select the color that you want to delete in the right column and press Delete or click the Delete button. Confirm the deletion.

5 Close the Color Books overview.

▷ To create or edit a color exception

1 In the System Overview window, select a Press Task Processor for which you want to create or edit a color exception.

2 Double-click the Color Books icon.

The Color Books overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 Select the Color Book in which you want to create or edit a color exception in the left column.

All of the book’s colors appear in the right column.

4 Click the Edit button under the right column to edit a color.

5 Expand the Color Exceptions section.

6 Do one of the following to either create or edit the exception.

- Click the New button to create an exception.

- Click the Edit button to edit an exception.

The Color Exception editor appears.

7 Select the ICC Profile that you want to use for this exception.

8 Specify the CMYK values for Lab to Process Color conversion.

9 Click OK to save your changes.

10 Click OK to close the Color Editor window and save the color exception.

NOTE: When you create an exception, standard CMYK values are calculated for the selected profile.

▷ To delete a color exception

1. Edit a color.
2. Expand the Color Exceptions section.
3. Select the exception that you want to delete and click the Delete button.

4. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.
5. Click OK to close the Color Editor window and delete the color exception.

NOTE: If you click Cancel, all color exception changes are lost.

Content Profiles

The Content Profiles Resource category contains the Color Profiles (*.icm and *.icc files) that are available to the Normalize and Render Task Processors. These Profiles have no effect on the Profiles selected for the Press.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Content Profiles Resources are available for the following Task Processors:

- All Render Task Processors
- Normalize
- Apogee Preflight

Content Profiles Overview

The Content Profiles overview lists the profile names and their color spaces.

Content Profile

The name of the Profile

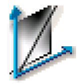
Color Space

The name of the color space to which the Profile belongs. This may be:

- CMYK
- Grayscale
- RGB

You can import, export or delete a Content Profile.

Contrast Adjustments



This resource allows you to create adjustments for the contrast of rendered results. For more general information on Contrast Adjustments, see “Saturation, Contrast and Channel Adjustments” on page 348.

Administrator access level only!

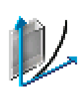
Associated Task Processors

The Contrast Adjustments Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

To create a new contrast adjustment curve

1. In the System Overview window, select the M-Press Task Processor for which you want to create a new Contrast Adjustment Curve.
2. Double-click the Contrast Adjustments icon in the Resources pane.

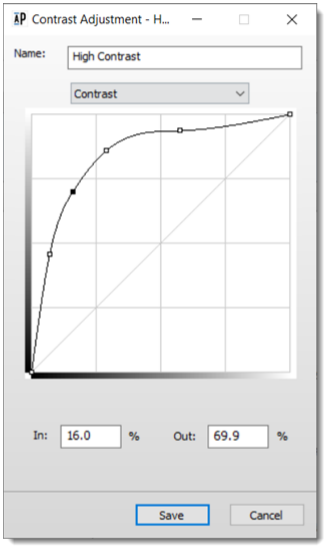
   

   The Contrast Adjustments overview appears, containing all of the available Contrast Adjustments for the M-Press Task Processor.
3. Click the New button.

   The curve editor is displayed.
4. Enter a name for your new curve, e.g. High Contrast, Low Contrast.

   This is the name that appears in the presets list in Raster Preview.
5. Drag the curve to set the adjustments as desired.



For more general information on working with the curve editor, see “Saturation, Contrast and Channel Adjustments” on page 348.

6 Click Save.

Your new adjustment appears in the Contrast Adjustments List.

7 Close the overview.

Curves Adjustments

This resource allows you to create adjustments for the CMYK channels of rendered results. For more general information on Curves Adjustments, see “Saturation, Contrast and Channel Adjustments” on page 348.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Curves Adjustments Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

To create a new curves adjustment

1 In the System Overview window, select the M-Press Task Processor for which you want to create a new Curves Adjustment Curve.

2 Double-click the Curves Adjustments icon in the Resources pane.

The Curves Adjustments overview appears, containing all of the available Contrast Adjustments for the M-Press Task Processor.

3 Click the New button.

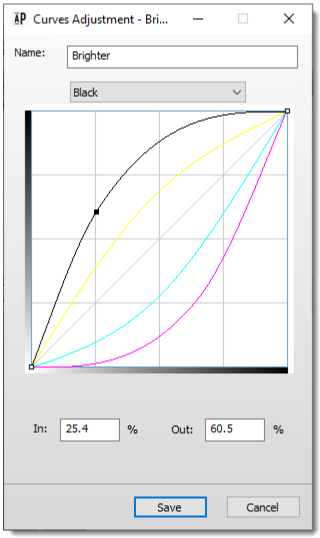
The curve editor is displayed.

4 Enter a name for your new curve.

This is the name that appears in the presets list in Raster Preview.

5 Select a Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black channel in the drop-down list to activate the respective channel.

6 Drag the curve to set the adjustments as desired.



For more general information on working with the curve editor, see "Saturation, Contrast and Channel Adjustments" on page 348.

7 Click Save.

Your new adjustment appears in the Curves Adjustments List.

8 Close the overview.

Device Link Profiles

The Device Link Profiles Resource category contains the profiles (*.icm and *.icc files) that are available to the Normalize and Render Task Processors. These Profiles have no effect on the Profiles selected for the Press.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Device Link Profiles Resources are available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

Device Link Profiles Overview

By default, the Device Link Profiles overview list is empty. You can import, export or delete profiles.

Finishing Hub

The Finishing Hub is where you manage cutters, finishing operations and finishing margins. You can create new resources or edit existing ones using the File and Edit menus, or by context-clicking in the various lists.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

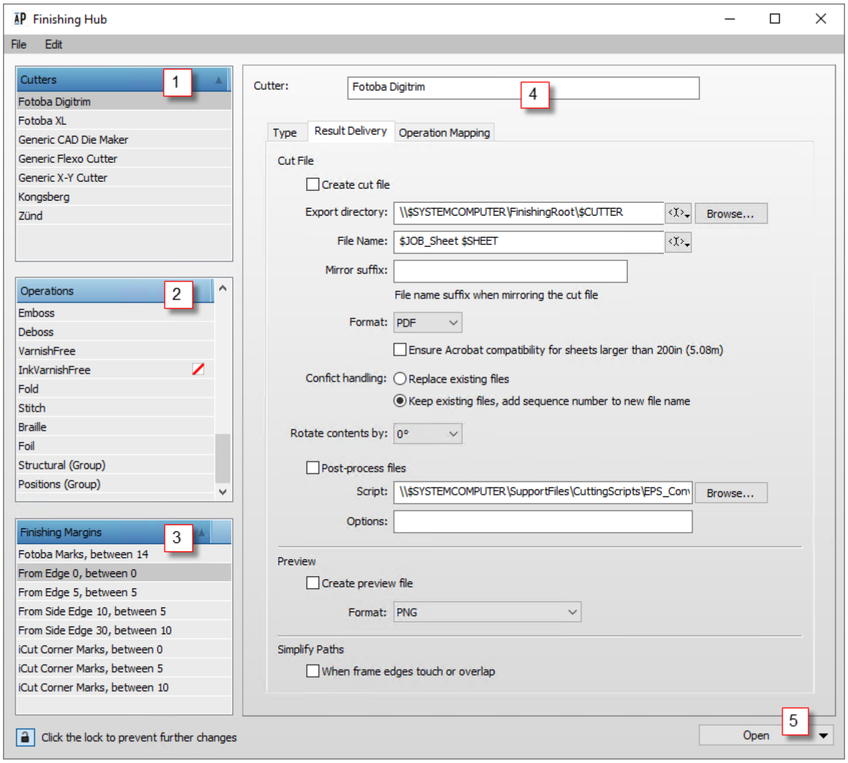
The Finishing Hub is available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

▷ Open the Finishing Hub

- ♦ In the Layout Editor, choose Window > Resources and select Finishing Hub, or go to System Overview.

Finishing Hub Overview



1 Cutters
2 Finishing operations
3 Finishing margins
4 Details of cutters, operations or margins
5 Open other resources button

Cutters

This panel lists the cutting devices. The Type and Result Delivery tabs contain the details for each cutter.

Name The name given to the cutting device.

Type tab The type of cutting device:

- X-Y cutter: A cutter, such as a table cutter or plotter, that can cut out any possible form and perform a variety of operations/tools.
- Roll cutter: A cutter that can cut a roll into sheets and slice them into strokes as well.

- Guillotine: A cutter that cuts in straight lines from edge to edge while taking into account the sheet layout.
- CAD Die Maker: A cutter that exports a CAD file for die-making.

Result Delivery tab

Here you can choose to create a cut file automatically for each sheet or not.

Create cut file: If the check box is selected, a cut file is generated and sent automatically to a directory as specified. If the check box is not selected, you can still send the file manually.

Export directory: The directory where the cut file is saved.

File name: The name of the cut file. The directory and file name can be generated using variables. See “System Variables” on page 539 for more information on using variables.

Mirror suffix: The suffix to append to the filename when a cut file is mirrored.

Double-sided sheets: : If the check box Create for both sides is selected, two cut files are generated, one per side. By default, check box is not selected, a cut file is generated for the front side only

Format: The file format of the cut file:

- PDF: the default and most common format for a cut file
- EPS: for large sheets

Acrobat compatibility for large sheets: Select for sheets larger than 200 inches or 5.08 m to process the file using User Units.

Conflict handling: Choose what you want to do if a cut file has the same name as an existing file: replace the existing file or keep the existing file and append a sequence number to the new file.

Rotate contents: The content of the cut file can be rotated 0°, 90°, 180° or 270° without having to rotate the sheet. The default is 0° so the cut file has the same orientation as the sheet.

Post-process files: After a cut file has been created, the system can run a script on this file, for example to change the file format:

- Script: the full path to the script you want to run. It must be accessible by the computer running Asanti. Click browse to open a file explorer and select the location of the script.

- Options: Optional arguments that can be passed to the script. They are passed as entered; the options are not enclosed in quotes or double quotes, so the script can see them as individual arguments. The file name of the cut path is always the last argument.

Preview panel Here you can choose to create a preview of the cut file. This file is saved in the same directory and with the same file name (except the extension) as the actual cut file. The following file formats are available:

- PNG
- BMP

Simplify Paths This section provides options to simplify the paths in the cut file.

When frame edges touch or overlap: Select this check box to simplify the paths by merging overlapping or touching lines.

NOTE: This is not only for the contour cutting operations, it simplifies the paths of any Operation.

Operation Mapping tab This tab provides a mapping table to define whether the available finishing operations are selected for the cutter in question and how the generic names (left column) are mapped to cutter-specific names (right column).

Clear the check box next to an operation if it is not supported by the cutter.

The default operations and any operations you add in the Finishing Operation panel appear in this table with the generic name in the left column. To map an operation to a cutter-specific name, select the operation in the list and enter the cutter-specific name in the panel on the right. You can also set a Path Color for the cutting path in the cut file.

Finishing Operations

A Finishing Operation is a line that is drawn in the artwork or in a CAD file that represents various processing operations, such as:

- shape the product (e.g. Cut and Crease, Through Cut)
- identify zones that require special treatment (e.g. Gluing, Perforate)
- provide information (e.g. Dimensions).

Operation: The name of the Operation.

Special behavior: You can choose one of the following special behaviors for the selected operation, except for the Camera Registration which has a built-in behavior that cannot be changed.

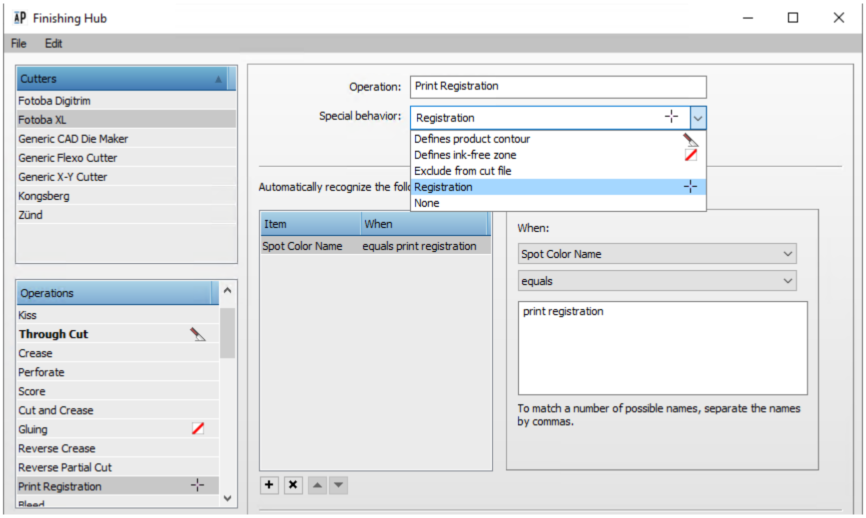
- Defines product contour: A Contour-defining Operation marks the path or box that defines the shape of the final product. It is used to calculate the clipping and bleed paths, it sets the initial size of the frame and determines nesting.

- Defines ink-free zone: An Ink-free Operation provides a way to mark the ink-free areas on a product, e.g. on flaps those need to be glued together. An ink-free area only clears the content of the artwork. However, you can still have marks inside that area.

- Exclude from cut file: Operations marked with this behavior will not be included in the cut file. However, you can still proof and display them via a Line Appearances set.

- Registration: The main purpose of this behavior is to print specific CAD lines on the main output. This special behavior has no effect on how the lines appear in the client or on the proof, which is still determined by the Line Appearance sets. It has no effect on how lines are presented in cut-file, that remains controlled by the Operation Mapping of each cutter.

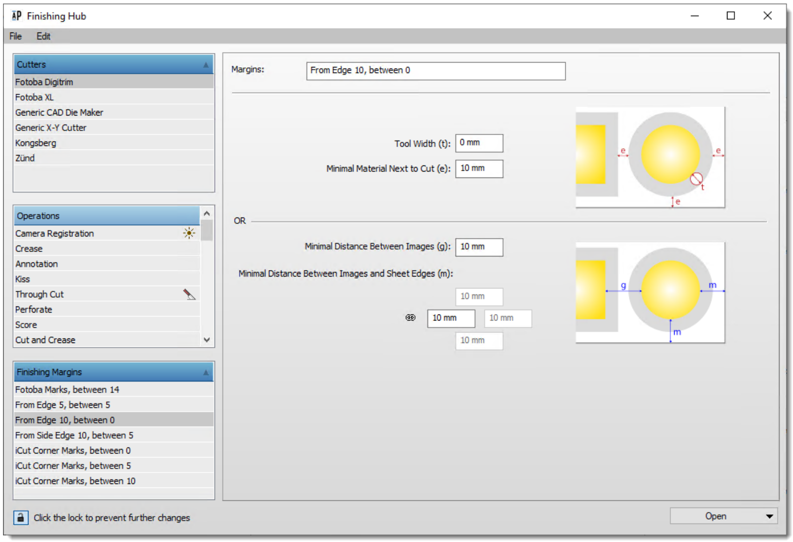
- None: This behavior is for backwards compatibility. Paths are made available to the cutters, but they have no other behavior.



In the details panel, you can specify one or more conditions for applying an existing or new operation to an image automatically. The conditions can be set to check the following items in your images and map these items to a finishing operation:

- Spot color name: If you select the spot color name as condition, you can choose one of the following options for matching the value or values you enter in the comma-separated list of possible names:
  - equals
  - contains
  - begins with
  - ends with

Finishing Margins



Finishing margins can be defined in two ways as reflected by the settings of the Finishing Margins dialog:

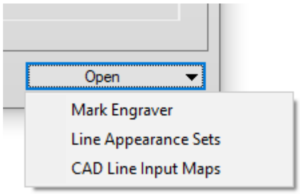
- Tool width (t)
- Minimum Material Next to Cut (e)

OR

- ☐ Minimum Distance between Images (g)
- ☐ Minimum Distance between Images and Sheet Edges (m)

Click the link icon if you want to set specific values for Left, Right, Top or Bottom. Margins are relative to the frame which initially corresponds with the trim box of your image.

Open Button

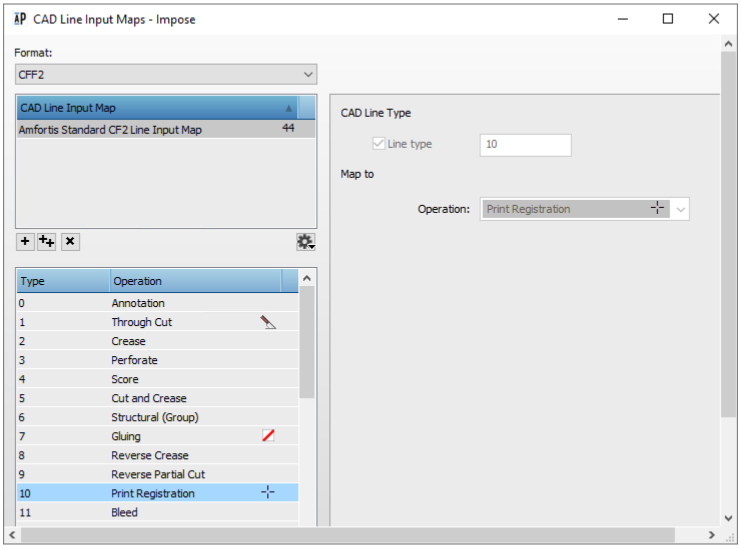


Click this button to open related resources:

Mark Engraver See “Mark Engraver” on page 395.

Line Appearance Sets The Line Appearance Sets resource is where you can control the color of the various lines that represent operations and whether or not these lines are visible on the sheet. Click a color patch if you want to change the color or thickness of the line. In this dialog you can also change the solid line to a dashed line in various styles. Click the eye icon to make the line visible or to hide it. Click the **Show only visible** check-box to filter the list of lines in this dialog. You can work with the default set or create your own sets that you can apply in different situations (regular proofing, imposition proof, etc.).

CAD Line Input Maps This resource maps the lines detected in CAD files to operations (Cut, Crease, Perforate, Print Registration, etc.). Default maps are provided for selected CAD files formats. Select a file format (CFF2, DXF, etc.) in the Format drop-down list to see the maps for that format and then select a name in the list to see all the lines included in the map. Each line has a type number and a mapped operation that you can change in the line inspector on the right.


CAD Line Input Maps - Impose
Format:
CFF2
CAD Line Input Map
Amfortis Standard CF2 Line Input Map
44
CAD Line Type
Line type
10
Map to
Operation:
Print Registration
Type
Operation
0
Annotation
1
Through Cut
2
Crease
3
Perforate
4
Score
5
Cut and Crease
6
Structural (Group)
7
Gluing
8
Reverse Crease
9
Reverse Partial Cut
10
Print Registration
11
Bleed

Fonts

The Fonts resource category contains the default fonts that were installed with the Asanti software, together with any other fonts that have been imported.

Associated Task Processors

Asanti is delivered with a font database comprising the most common PostScript fonts. There is one common font database for the following Task Processors:

- PDF Render
- Normalize

Font Overview

Displays a list of the currently installed fonts, and allows you to filter the list.

Display resources containing

Any text entered here will dynamically filter the list of fonts to display only the font names which contain this text.

Font

Displays the font name.

Type

Displays the font type, which may be any of the following:

- PostScript
- True Type (*.ttf)
- Type 1 (*.pfb)
- PostScript (*.pfa)
- Open Type fonts (*.otf)

- CID

File Name

Displays the name of the font file. This is normally the same as the font name.

Except for the filtering feature, the general procedures for managing resources apply also to fonts. You can also import ttf, pfb, pfa, and otf fonts into the Asanti font database

▷ To filter the fonts list

1 Select a Task Processor that uses the Fonts Resource, by clicking it.

The resources associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.

2 Double-click the Fonts icon in the Resources pane.

The Fonts dialog box appears containing the available fonts for your system.

3 If necessary, filter the Fonts List by font name or part of the font name. For example, type the word “Arial” in the text field at the top of the dialog box and press Enter.

The dialog box lists only the Fonts containing the word Arial.

4 Close the Fonts dialog box.

Mark Engraver

▷ Open the Mark Engraver

- In the Layout Editor, choose Window > Resources and select Mark Engraver, or go to System Overview.

  At the top of the Mark Engraver you have an overview of marks in the different categories.

  The section under the overview shows the conditions for the selected Mark Set or the details of the individual Marks within each Mark Set. This section can be opened by clicking the grey triangle.

  By default, the conditions and details are locked. You can unlock the conditions and details for editing by clicking the Lock icon in the bottom left corner.

Mark Sets Overview

The left column of the overview section displays the three Mark Sets categories and the number of Mark Sets in each category. The Mark Sets consist of marks which are brought together and placed according to the specified positioning and conditions.

The Mark Sets are organized in the following categories:

- Image Marks: Text, File, Crop, Grommet, Color Bar, Line, Rectangle, Circle
- Sheet Marks: Text, File, Cut, Registration, Fotoba, Cutter Registration, Grommet, Line, Rectangle, Circle, Density Bar
- Product Marks: Text, File, Station Number, Color Bar

The middle column lists all the Mark Sets for a particular category and the number of Marks in the selected Mark Set. The Name of the Mark Set is preceded by an icon that indicates the condition applied to the Mark Set.

The right column lists all the Marks of the selected Mark Set.

▷ To add/edit a Mark Set

1 Unlock the Mark Engraver and click a Category.

2 Click the new button above the Name column.

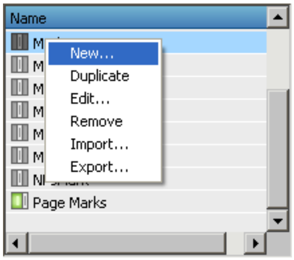
OR

Right-click in the middle column and choose New from the list.

A new Mark Set name appears in the list with a default name and 0 Marks.

OR

Right-click an existing Mark Set and choose New or Edit from the list.



3 Set the conditions for this new Mark Set.

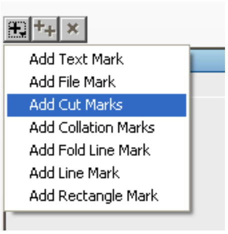
4 Lock the Mark Engraver.

▷ To add a Mark

1 Unlock the Mark Engraver and click a Mark Set name.

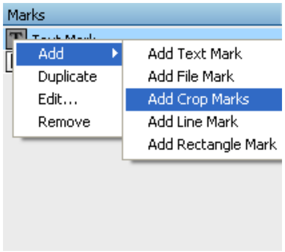
2 Click the new button above the Marks column.

A drop-down is displayed with a list of the different Mark types.



OR

Right-click in the Marks column.



3 Select the Mark type you require.

The Mark is added to your Mark Set with a default name.

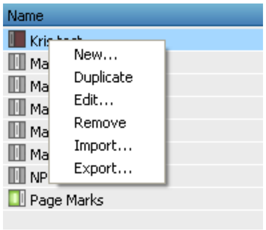
4 In the Details section, edit the settings for your new Mark.

5 Lock the Mark Engraver.

▷ To duplicate a Mark/Mark Set

1 Unlock the Mark Engraver and right-click a Mark/Mark Set name.

A menu is displayed.



2 Select Duplicate to copy the Mark or Mark Set.

The new Mark Set contains the same Marks as the original and has the same conditions. The Marks have the same details.

3 Edit the settings for the new Mark Set/Mark as required.

▷ To move/copy Marks between Sets

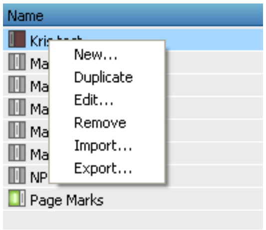
- Drag a Mark from one Mark Set to another or press the Ctrl key while dragging to duplicate the Mark.

NOTE: You cannot move between categories.

▷ To name/re-name a Mark/Mark Set

1 Unlock the Mark Engraver and context-click a Mark/Mark Set name.

A menu is displayed.



2 Select Edit to rename the Mark or Mark Set.

Mark Set Conditions

The Conditions section of the Mark Engraver is the same for the four categories of Mark Sets. By default you see one line where you can enter criteria. Criteria lines can be added, edited or deleted. The printing of the marks can also be limited to proofs.

Examples of conditions:

Apply `When all criteria are met` with criterion `$product.name equals MyProduct`.

Apply `When some criteria are met` with criterion `$press_sheet.side.press.name equals Large Press`.

- Click a Mark Set category and then the Name of a Mark Set to display the Conditions section.

Apply to “Split for Proof” results only

Select this check box if you only want the mark set to appear on the proofs of a press sheet and not on the actual press sheet when it is printed. If you select this option, the proof-only marks do not appear in the Mark Sets inspector nor in Sheet View and no checks are performed for conflicts. Proofs always include the actual press sheet marks.

Apply

- Always: the Mark Set is always applied and does not take the criteria into account.
- Manually only: The Mark Set can only be placed manually.

- When all criteria are met: The Mark Set is only applied when all the criteria lines are true.
- When some criteria are met: The Mark Set is applied when at least one of the criteria lines is true.

The selected condition is indicated with an icon in the Mark Sets list.

	Mark Set is always applied.
	Mark Set is only applied manually.
	Mark set is applied when all/some criteria are met.
	Mark set is applied partially (for example, mark deleted manually).
	None of the marks of the mark set are applied (for example, marks deleted manually).

Variable

This drop-down lists the variables you can use for your criteria.

Expressions

Depending on the variable you use for your criterion, you will see expressions that test against a string (e.g. the name of a Press or Product) or a number:

- equals (string or number)
- does not equal (string or number)
- less than (number)
- greater than (number)
- less than or equal to (number)
- greater than or equal to (number)
- is even (number)
- is odd (number)
- contains (string)
- does not contain (string)

Value

In this field you enter the value you want to apply for the variable:

- a string: e.g. your Product, your Press
- a number with/without unit: e.g. 1000 mm

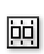
▷ To create/edit a Mark Set condition

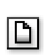
1. Click a Mark Set Category and then a Name to display the Conditions section.
2. Choose one of the options from the **Apply** drop-down list, e.g. **When all criteria are met**.
3. Click the **New** button next to the conditions line to create a new criteria line.
4. Choose a variable from the first drop-down list, e.g. $job.order, an expression from the middle list, and enter a value in the right field to complete the criterion.

Mark Types

The different Mark types are indicated with a specific icon:

 Circle Mark: draws a circle with or without fill color

 Cut Mark: a horizontal and a vertical line in the corners of a Fold Sheet to indicate the boundaries of the Fold Sheet and where it is to be cut

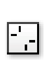
 File Mark: places a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark

 Fotoba Mark: draws horizontal and vertical lines to enable cutting with a Fotoba cutting device.

 Grommet Mark: draws sequential marks along the sides of an image or layout. These marks are printed on the layout and indicate where reinforced eyelets can be produced.

 Cutter Registration Mark: draws reference dots to enable cutting with X/Y cutting devices.

 Line Mark: draws a line

 Crop Mark: a horizontal and a vertical line to indicate where the page has to be cropped

 Rectangle Mark: draws a rectangle with or without fill color

 Registration Mark: draws a series of marks which are used to check that the registration of the different printing colors is correct

 Station Number Mark: indicates the station of an instance of a product, i.e. its position on the sheet

 Text Mark: prints the job name, order number, color name, etc. on the Press Sheet

 Color Bar Mark: generates a bar of color patches, using the colors that are present on the press sheet (offset and wide format) or in the product.

Each Mark type has its own settings which are displayed in the Details section of the Mark Engraver. The Details section has a number of tabs depending on the Mark type:

- “Mark Attributes” on page 401
- “Mark Repeat” on page 421
- “Mark Position” on page 422
- “Mark Conflicts” on page 424
- “Mark Special” on page 425

Mark Attributes

The Attributes are explained for each Mark type.

- “Circle Mark Details” on page 402
- “Color Bar Mark Details” on page 403
- “Crop Mark Details” on page 406
- “Cross Mark Details” on page 407
- “Cut Mark Details” on page 408
- “Cutter Registration Mark Details” on page 408
- “File Mark Details” on page 410
- “Fotoba Mark Details” on page 412
- “Grommet Mark Details” on page 414
- “Line Mark Details” on page 415

- “Page Fold Line Mark Details” on page 416
- “Rectangle Mark Details” on page 416
- “Registration Mark Details” on page 417
- “Station Number Mark Details” on page 418
- “Text Mark Details” on page 419

Circle Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Element

The Circle Mark draws a rectangle with a border and fill color. This mark is always printed using knock-out.

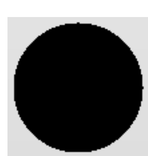
Width Specifies the horizontal size of the mark. You can create oval shapes by unlocking the link and entering different values for Width and Height.

Height Specifies the vertical size of the mark.

Border pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: The border is created on the *inside* of the bounding box.

Fill with color This option is selected by default.



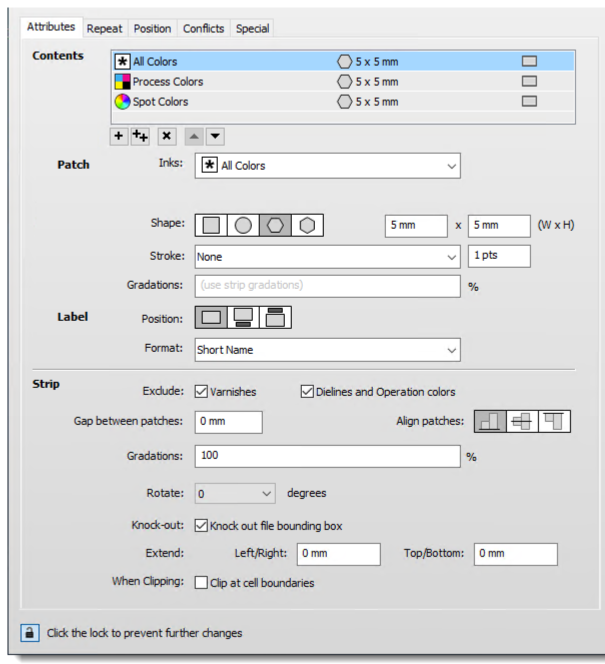
Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Color Bar Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Press Sheet, Image, Product Marks

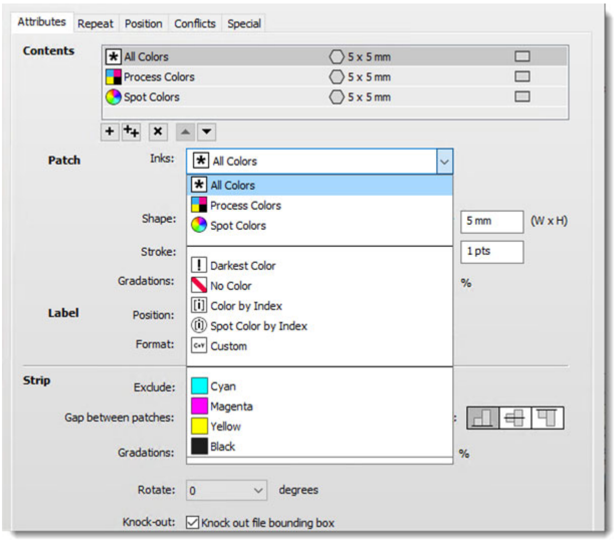
The Color Bar generates a bar of color patches using the colors that are present on the press sheet (offset and wide format) or in the product.



Contents Each row shows the type of the element, the shape and stroke of the patch, the size, the local gradations and the presence and position of the label. You can add, duplicate, delete and change the order of elements in the list.

Patch

- Inks: Select the inks (colors) to add to the color bar. The drop-down lists the Inks’ options.



Ink	Description
All colors	Generates patches for all colors in scope.
Process colors	Generates patches for all process colors in scope.
Spot colors	Generates patches for all spot colors in scope.
Darkest color	Generates a patch for the darkest color.
No color	Generate a patch that prints no color.
Color by index	Generates a patch that prints the specified i^{th} color, with i being integer numbers starting from 1.
Spot color by index	Generates a patch for the specified color specification, using the extended color specification syntax.
Custom	Generates a patch for the specified process color. The menu shows a list of the colors in the currently selected ink set. In the Mark Engraver, the lists shows the four standard process colors (CMYK).
Process color list	Generates a patch for the specified spot color.
Spot color list	The menu shows a list of the actual spot colors that are in scope. The circular icons show the actual color.

- Shape: Select the shape of the patch.
- Size: Specify the width and height of the patch. The shape always fills the specified size.
- Stroke: Specify how to stroke the patch.
  - Registration: Prints the stroke in all colors in the current scope, same as "*".

- Darkest Color: Prints the stroke in the darkest color in the current scope, same as "!".
- Knock out: Knocks out the stroke, i.e., no ink in any of the separations, same as "*:0".
- None: Do not stroke the patch.

- Width: The width of the stroke. It is disabled when the stroke is set to None.
- Gradations: Specify the gradations as a comma-separated list of densities (0–100). An empty entry signifies that the patch follows the gradations of the bar. In that case, the field shows the text in gray text.

Label

- Position: Select whether to have no label or a label below or above the patch.
- Format: Select how to format the label.
  - Short name: Print the short name of the color.
  - Full name: Print the full name of the color.
  - Short name, Gradation: Print the short name of the color and the gradation (without %).
- Single line: Select to print the gradation on the same line as the color name (separated by a space) or below the name (centered). It is disabled when not printing the gradation.

Strip

- Exclude: Select the special colors that will not be included when using any of the following patch entries; All colors, Process colors, Spot colors. These colors will not be listed in the color selection menus, either.
  - Varnishes: Exclude all colors that are found in the Varnish category of the Special Colors.
  - Dielines/Operation Colors: Excludes all colors that are found in the Dielines category of the Special Colors or that are recognized as Operations.
- Gap between patches: The gap between two successive patches.

NOTE: The bounding box of the color bar is at the edges of the outer patches; it does not include 1/2 gap size.

- Align patches: The vertical alignment of the patches when they have different heights. An empty value is interpreted and replaced by 100%.
- Gradations: Enter 1 or more comma-separated graduation values in range 1–100.
- Rotate: The rotation of the color bar.

NOTE: When the Arbitrary Rotation feature is available, you can rotate the mark to any angle. Without the license, only fixed rotations of 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270° are supported.

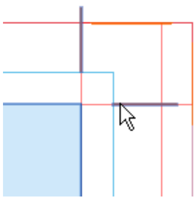
- Knock-out: Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.
- Extend: Extends the knock-out area of the mark by the specified values for the left and right edges and for the top and bottom edges; can be used for conflict checking.
- When Clipping: Select to clip the mark (when it needs clipping) at the boundaries of each cell so that all patches are printed with the full size.

NOTE: The left and right edges of the bounding box of a color bar are always at the edges of a patch, i.e., it does not include the gap.

Crop Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Pages, Image

A Crop Mark is a horizontal and a vertical line to indicate where the page has to be cropped.



Type A drop-down list with 2 options for what the crop mark indicates:

- Page Trim: the final size of the pages
- Page Bleed: perpendicular lines at the corner of the bleed zone of a page, indicating the bleed area

Distance from corner Specifies the distance between the center of the mark and the page corner; the page corner can be for the Page Trim or the Page Bleed.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Hiding Selected by default and hides the marks between adjacent pages.

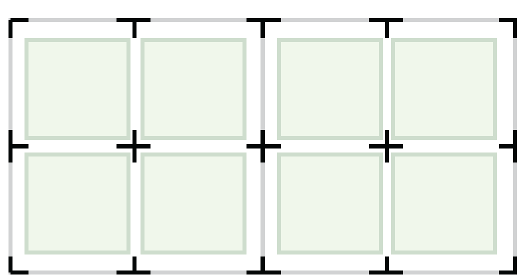
Shingling Specify whether shingling is to be applied or not.

NOTE: Crop marks only have the Layer settings to be defined in the Position tab.

Cross Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Fold Sheet, Element

A Cross mark indicates the crosspoint of two gutters, or at the endpoint of a gutter. They are commonly used in web production schemes to verify the correctness of cutting, slitting, and folding.



Length Specifies the length of the line in a full cross, e.g. the line segments of a cap are half the specified length.

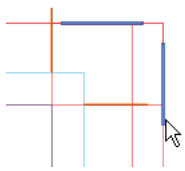
Pen Choose a pen to draw the cross lines.

Hiding Hides the marks on the outside of the fold sheet.

Cut Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Fold Sheet, Sheet, Element

A Cut Mark is a horizontal and a vertical line in the corners of a Fold Sheet to indicate the boundaries of the Fold Sheet and where it is to be cut.



Distance from corner Specifies the distance between the corner end of the mark and the Fold Sheet corner.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: There is no option to hide marks between adjacent Fold Sheets.

Cutter Registration Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Sheet

Cutter registration marks are reference dots which are drawn on a layout to enable cutting with X/Y cutting devices.

Type The following types of Cutter Registration marks are available:

- Filled circle
- Reversed circle
- Filled rectangle
- Reversed rectangle

Diameter/Width, Height The diameter/width and height of the circle/rectangle.

Outer size The diameter of the reversed circle.

Distance from images The distance of the dots from the edge of the image or image block.

Color/Reverse Color The colors of the filled circle and reversed circle can be specified separately. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Location

In the location panel, you specify where you want the dots to appear, and depending on the chosen location, the number of marks. The following options are available from the drop-down list:

Corners Dots are placed at the corners of the image block. 3, 4 or 5 dots can be placed to indicate the lay of the cut block.

Individual Images Dots are placed along a cut path that takes into account the nested arrangement of all the images. Here you can choose between Few and Many.

Top/Bottom Dots are placed along the top and bottom of the image block, and you can set the number of dots by specifying the distance between them.

Left/Right Dots are placed along the left and right side of the image block, and you can set the number of marks by specifying the distance between them.

All Sides Dots are placed along all sides of the image block, and you can set the number of marks by specifying the distance between them.

Extra dot at Lay Select the check box to add an extra dot at the lay.

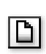
Max. distance between marks Set the distance between adjacent dots if you require more than the default number of dots.

Shift top/left marks The offset applied to the dots on the top or left side.

Distance from The distance of the dots from the edges of the images or media.

File Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Product, Element



Use a File Mark, if you want to place a specific EPS, TIFF, or PDF file as a mark.

File Click the File list and select one of the available EPS or PDF files. The file is selected as the mark to be used and you see the size and number of colors used for the mark.

NOTE: You can open the Marks Resource by clicking the Open File Marks button, for example, to import a new mark.

- Scale: Specifies the scaling percentage of the file. The default is 100% in both directions. The link button keeps both directions at the same scale.
- Knock-out: Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.
- Extend: Extends the knock-out area of the mark; can be used for conflict checking.

When clipping Only enabled if the selected file has an internal cell structure. Select if you only want the mark to be clipped at the cell boundaries of the mark (e.g. color bars); clear if it is alright to clip the mark anywhere.

Rotate Specify the rotation angle for the mark.

NOTE: When the Arbitrary Rotation feature is available, you can rotate the mark to any angle. Without the license, only fixed rotations of 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270° are supported.

NOTE: The selected file is copied into a reserved directory on the server.

PaperTune tab

NOTE: PaperTune requires a special license, otherwise this option is disabled.

Step mark when PaperTune is active Enable this option to allow the mark to be stepped by PaperTune. Disable it if you do not want the mark to be stepped, even when PaperTune is active.

- Direction: Choose the direction in which the mark should be stepped.
  - Towards leading edge: The mark is stepped from its original (non-stepped) position toward the leading edge. This makes the current step the first one encountered by the color bar reader.

    NOTE: The mark's anchor must be set to the top. Any other anchor position will prevent stepping.

- Away from leading edge: The mark is stepped from its original position away from the leading edge. This makes the current step the last one encountered by the color bar reader.

  NOTE: This direction typically requires the previous step to be masked (invalidated). The mark's anchor must be set to the bottom. Any other position will prevent stepping.

- Number of slots: Defines how many slots to reserve for stepping.
  - Use available space: Uses the space above or below the non-stepped position (as defined in the Position tab).
  - Fit in fixed height: Specify the height of the area reserved for the stepper. The system calculates how many slots fit within that height.
  - Fixed: Specify the exact number of slots to reserve. The system calculates the required step area size.

  NOTE: Specifying a fixed size or number of slots does not guarantee that the stepper will fit on the press sheet. If the defined area overlaps with content or exceeds sheet boundaries (e.g., gripper or sheet edges), a conflict will occur.

- Safety margin: Defines the minimum distance between the edge marking the end of the available area (opposite the anchor) and the nearest slot.
- Gap between slots: Specifies the distance between two successive steps. Measured between the bounding boxes of the files. Knock-out extents are not considered and do not affect positioning.

Invalidate previous slot Enable to print a mask across the full width of the previous slot.

- Color: Select the color for the mask:
  - Darkest Color
  - Black

Fotoba Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Sheet

Fotoba marks consist of horizontal and vertical lines which are drawn on a layout to enable cutting with a Fotoba cutting device.

Horizontal/Vertical Cut Marks

Fotoba cut marks are drawn along the horizontal and vertical sides of the individual images on a layout. Horizontal lines are drawn by default and you can optionally specify vertical lines.

Type: Single mark, Double mark Draws single or a double lines to indicate cutting.

Line thickness The thickness of each line.

Inner white The distance between the lines of a double mark.

Side Mark

The side mark is a vertical line which is drawn in addition to the vertical cut mark.

Distance from image The distance from the image to the side mark.

Line thickness The thickness of the side mark line.

Color

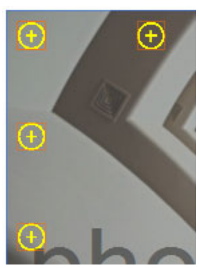
The color of all the cutting lines. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color of the cutting lines:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Grommet Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Image, Sheet

Grommet marks are sequential marks which are placed along the sides of an image or layout. These marks are printed on the layout and indicate where reinforced eyelets (grommets) can be produced. The marks are not part of the cut file.



Mark

First you specify the appearance of the marks.

Grommet type Three types of grommet marks are available:

- Circle
- Circle with cross
- Cross

Diameter The diameter of the circle.

Line thickness The thickness of all the lines.

Line length The length of the 2 lines of the cross.

Color The color of all the cutting lines. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color of the cutting lines:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Placement

In the placement panel, you specify where you want the grommet marks to appear.

Placement You can choose to place the grommet marks along all sides of the image or layout, left and right, or top and bottom.

Distance from edge The horizontal and vertical distances of the grommet from the edge of the image or sheet.

Max. distance between marks The maximum horizontal and vertical distances between adjacent marks.

Line Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Element

The Line Mark draws a line that can be used for various purposes in production.

Type You can choose to draw a line at a specific location and with a specified size (custom), or let the line resize automatically to match a chosen target (auto-sizing).

Auto-sizing line settings:

Target Choose the edge where you want to place the line (left, right, top, bottom) and the target box (page, fold sheet, spine, etc.). The available targets depend on the mark category. In the Offset field you can specify a distance from inside or outside the target box. The distance is from the center of the line to the target.

Length An auto-sizing line is delimited by the target box you chose to position the line, (from target), or from other available boxes depending on the mark category.

Extend Enter a negative or positive value to respectively shorten or extend the line in both directions.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Custom line settings:

Length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Angle Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Page Fold Line Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Page

A Page Fold Line Mark draws a set of vertical or horizontal lines that indicate where to fold on a single page element.

Distance from page trim Specifies the distance from the nearest end of the mark to the page trim.

By default, Apogee Impose only prints the fold marks on the outside of the page, but not on the inside. To draw them on the inside of the page, specify a negative value for Distance from page trim and allow the mark to overlap the page content.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Rectangle Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Element

The Rectangle Mark draws a rectangle with a border and fill color. This mark is always printed using knock-out.

Around Choose the reference for drawing the mark. Choose *Custom* to use all the options on the Position tab, or choose a target object (Image block, sheet, etc.) if you want to draw the mark around an object. The available objects depend on the mark category.

Expand If you choose a target object for the Around option, you can also set a distance from the object where the mark will be drawn. Enter a positive value to draw a mark which is larger than the object (e.g. a rectangle around an image block), or a negative value for a mark which is smaller than the object.

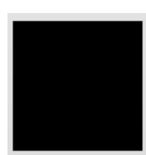
Width Specifies the horizontal size of the mark.

Height Specifies the vertical size of the mark.

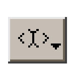
Border pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: The border is created *inside* the mark.

Fill with color This option is selected by default.



Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

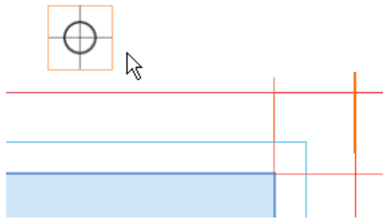


See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Registration Mark Details

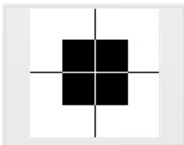
Mark Sets Category: Press Sheet, Fold Sheet, Sheet, Element

A Registration Mark draws a series of marks which are used to check that the registration of the different printing colors is correct.



File Click the File list and select one of the available EPS or PDF files. The file is selected as the mark to be used and you see the size and number of colors used for the mark.

The preview pane shows the selected mark.



NOTE: You can open the Marks Resource by clicking the Open File Marks button, for example, to import a new mark.

Knock-out Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.

Extend Extends the knock-out area of the mark; can be used for conflict checking.

Rotate Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Where Click in the diagram to specify where the mark is printed on the Press Sheet: in the four corners, the four center-side positions, or any other combination.

Offset from edges Distance between the center of the mark and the edges of the Press Sheet (including the lay).

Station Number Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Product

See Text Mark Details, except for the Text field which is a number that is generated automatically to indicate the position of the product on a sheet.

Text Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Product, Element

Text Marks are used to print text on a Press Sheet and identify Press Sheets by printing the job name, order number, color name, etc.

Text In the Text field, you can specify which text is to be used as a mark. You have three options:

- Type some text in the Text field.
- Select a variable from the drop-down list. This list appears when you click in the Text field the button next to the field.
- A combination of the two previous methods, e.g. some text followed by a variable.

Font Select a font and a point size for the text mark.

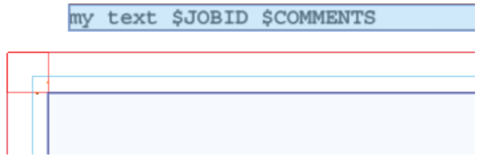
Length If you want you can change the calculated length of the text mark which is based on the amount of text, the point size and the variable. You can revert to the default, calculated length by clicking the revert arrow.

Script Select a Roman, Chinese, Hebrew or Japanese script for the text mark. Choosing Chinese or Japanese activates the Writing Direction option.

> **NOTE:** If you choose Chinese or Japanese, don't forget to select a relevant font for these languages in the Font drop-down list.

Writing Direction Horizontal is selected by default for Roman script (e.g. European languages) and can't be changed; choosing Chinese or Japanese script activates the following options:

Horizontal: Select this option to place the text characters horizontally; the text is left-aligned in the text box.



NOTE: The anchor point in the Mark Position tab is also used for aligning a Text mark. For example, placing a Text mark in the top right position means the text will grow from right to left and it is right-aligned in the text box.

Vertical: Select this option to place the characters underneath each other (certain Asian languages).

Use Arabic Numerals: Select this option to use Arabic numerals in vertical text.

Color Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine which plate(s) will print the mark:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Readability Select the options to improve the readability:

- Underline text: Underlines the text.

- Outline text: The text is outlined with a 1-point line at 0% of the specified text color, printed in knock-out around the type.
- Knock-out text box: Knocks out the area under the text. The knock-out area is the bounding box of the mark.

Extend Extends the knock-out area of the mark; can be used for conflict checking.

Rotate Specify the rotation angle for the mark.

NOTE: When the Arbitrary Rotation feature is available, you can rotate the mark to any angle. Without the license, only fixed rotations of 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270° are supported.

Mark Repeat

In the Repeat tab of the Details section, you can choose to repeat a mark by selecting the **Repeat mark** check box. The fields are disabled if this check box is not selected.

NOTE: The Repeat tab is only available for File Marks and these settings are used to repeat color bars.

Step Area

The Step Area is the area where a Mark is repeated.

Orientation Choose Horizontal or Vertical to define the orientation for repeating the Mark.

Number of Steps You have the following options to define how many times the mark is repeated:

- Fit within available space: the mark is repeated within the available space
- Fit within fixed length: choosing this option enables an extra field where you can enter the length of the step area
- Fixed: in the extra field that is displayed, enter the number of times (steps) you want to repeat the mark

Stepping

Direction

- If Horizontal orientation is chosen, then the direction is Left to right and Right to left; if Vertical orientation is chosen, then the direction is Bottom to top or Top to bottom;

- Inside/Out: positions the mark on each side of the center of the Step Area and repeats the mark in both directions
- Centered: positions the mark in the middle of the Step Area and repeats in both directions

Mirror mark around center Option to mirror the mark when repeating Inside/Out.

Center Gap The gap between the two center marks when repeating Inside/Out and the number of steps is even.

Spacing The gap between repeating marks; this option has no effect on Center Gap.

Partial last step This option defines what happens when the last step extends beyond the available area:

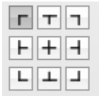
- Draw clipped: the mark is clipped at the end of the available area
- Omit: the mark is not drawn and consequently not clipped

Mark Position

The Position tab in the Details pane contains settings that apply for all of the Mark types. These settings are explained in this section for all Mark types.

Mark

Anchor Point You can specify the exact position of the mark. This position is defined by a horizontal and a vertical distance from different parts of the sheet or plate.



Target

Reference Choose a reference for the anchor point from the drop-down list. This reference depends on the Mark type:

- Image Marks
  - Image Frame
  - Image Trim box
  - Bleed

- Sheet Marks
  - Sheet
  - Image Block

Horizontal For the horizontal position, select:

- distance...
- to right or left of...
- Left Edge, Right Edge, or Center.

Vertical For the vertical position, select:

- distance...
- below or above...
- Top Edge, Bottom Edge, or Center.

Clip mark You can clip the mark in the two directions:

- Horizontally
- Vertically

In addition, you can add an extra margin that narrows the clipping area. By default, Apogee Impose does not clip and the margins are set to 0.

Print on

- Front side
- Back side
- Both sides. If you select this option, the following check boxes are enabled:
  - Mirror position on back
  - Mirror content on back

Layer See “Mark Layers” on page 426 for information on how layers are used to arrange content:

- Top marks
- BelowTop

- Page Content
- AboveBottom
- Bottom marks

Mark Conflicts

Conflicts may arise if a mark overlaps another mark, a mark runs into the page content or bleed zone, or a mark falls *outside the area of interest* or box. The areas of interest are the Pages, Gutters, Gripper, Press Sheet, etc. for each respective Mark type. For example, press sheet marks must fall inside the Press Sheet.

Clipped

These are the possible actions if a mark falls outside the box or area where it is expected to be drawn.

These are the possible actions if a mark falls outside the box or area where it is expected to be drawn clipped: The mark is clipped to fit in the box and printed.

- Print clipped: Print the mark clipped. Select Notify if you want to receive a notification when the mark is clipped.
- Do not Print: The mark is ignored.
- Fail: The job will be aborted. The notify action is selected and an error is displayed for the job.

NOTE: You can choose to be notified by selecting the **Notify** check box.

Overlaps

These are the possible actions if a mark overlaps with Page Content (Trim), Page Bleed or another mark.

- Print: The mark is printed even if it falls outside the box.
- Do not Print: The mark is ignored.
- Fail: The job will be aborted. The notify action is selected and an error is displayed for the job.

NOTE: You can choose to be notified by selecting the **Notify** check box.

Include knock-out for conflict checking

When selected, the knock-out area is included for conflict checking.

Mark Special

In the Special tab of the Details section, you can choose to apply special settings to the mark.

Apply curves

- Linearization
- Calibration
- Simulation

NOTE: The Apply Curves option is only available for File Marks.

Finishing

Include in cut file: Draws the mark in the cut file if applicable.

Do not print: The mark is not drawn on the printed sheet.

Overprint

- Force mark in overprint: You can force a mark to be printed in overprint. The Force Overprint mode overrules all knock-out options you may have set in the pen or in the main attributes of the mark.

CMS

- Apply color management: When you select to apply color management, the mark follows the exact same processing path as the content of the pages.

Mark Pens

Pens are used to define a thickness and style for lines and borders used to draw certain Marks.

Name The name of the pen.

Thickness The thickness or weight of the line in points.

Width The width of the line in points.

Color/Depth The drop-down list lets you choose a color or, for certain applications, you can choose to define the Depth of the pen.

- Color: Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 428 for more information on using colors to print marks.

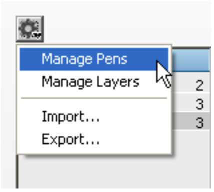
- Depth: Enter a value to set the depth of the engraving in micron (mu).

Knock-out around pen Select to knock out the area under the pen line.

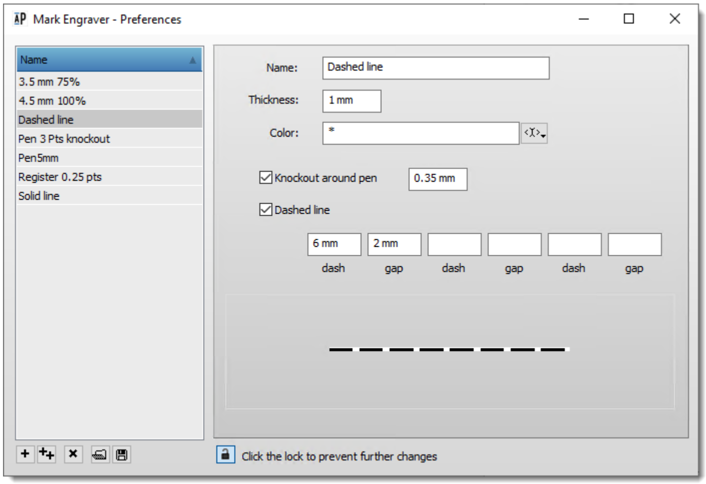
Dashed line Select this check box for a pen with a dashed line. Enter the size in points of the dash and the distance between the dashes. The default values are 12 pt for the dash and 6pt for the gap.

To create/edit Mark pens

1 In the Mark Engraver, click the cogwheel in the top left corner and choose **Manage Pens**.



2 Click the **New** button and a new Pen appears in the list.



3 Enter a name in the **Name** field.

4 Complete the fields as required.

Mark Layers

Layers are used to arrange marks in a certain order, with the highest layer having the highest priority.

Layers are controlled at the bottom of the Position tab. There are three default layers which cannot be deleted:

Top marks Marks to be printed on top of the Page content, e.g. crop marks

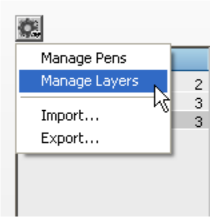
Middle (Page Content) The reference layer.

Bottom marks Contains marks to be printed below the page content, e.g. all marks except crop marks.

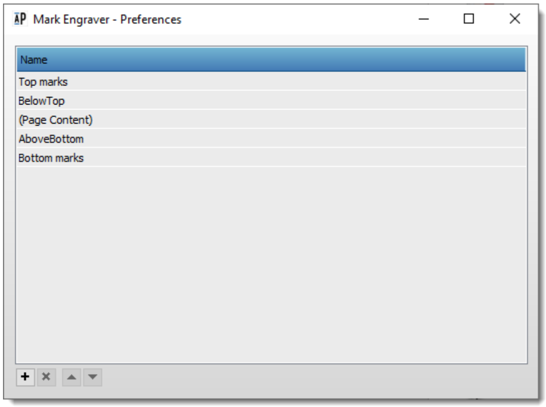
Additional layers can be created and deleted.

▷ To create Mark Layers in the Engraver

1 In the Mark Engraver, click the cog wheel in the top left corner and choose **Manage Layers**.



2 Click the **New** button and a new Layer appears in the list.



3 Click this new **Layer** to edit its Name.

4 Use the **arrow** buttons to move the new Layer in the list and change the order.

About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks

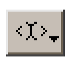
Certain marks have a Color (default) or in certain applications a Depth. One of these options can be chosen from the drop-down list.

Color

For certain marks you can choose in which color they will be printed. You do this by choosing the plates and optionally also specifying the density.

In the Color field you choose one of the plates or create a comma-delimited list with several plates.

♦ Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:



The default is an asterisk (*) which means that the mark will be printed on all plates; in the drop-down list this corresponds to Registration (All Plates). You can also choose from the following:

- Process Colors: C, M, Y, K plates only, not spot colors
- Darkest Color
- Cyan
- Magenta
- Yellow
- Black
- White, Varnish, Primer
- Spot colors

You can also specify the density for printing the mark and combine colors, for example:

- *:50 means print on all plates at 50%
- Cyan:40 means print on Cyan plate at 40%
- Cyan:40, Magenta:50 means print on Cyan at 40% and Magenta at 50%

Depth

Enter a value to set the depth of the engraving in micron (μm).

Marks

In the Marks Resource category, you can manage the file marks used in the Mark Engraver and Borders Resource categories.

The Marks can be EPS or PDF files. You import them or delete them.

Associated Task Processors

The Marks resource category is available for:

- All Output Task Processors except for Collect, Export, Raster Link, and Plate-Maker Link
- All Print Task Processors.

Administrator access level only!

Marks Overview

The Marks overview lists all available marks. You can import, export or delete marks.

Related topics:

- To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Resources on page 499

▷ To import marks

1. In the System Overview Window, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to import the Mark.
2. Double-click the Marks icon in the Resources pane.

   The Marks dialog box appears, containing an overview of all the available Marks.
3. Click the import button.

4 Locate the folder from which you want to import the marks, and click Open.

5 Close the Marks dialog box.

After adding a mark, Asanti will try to calculate it's bounding box. This will be displayed in the Dimensions column.

Media Hub

The Media Hub is where you manage Calibrated Printing Modes (CPMs). CPMs are presets that you can select in the Layout Editor to obtain the best possible printing results for the selected printing quality, press and media on the specified printing device.

Associated Task Processors

The Finishing Hub is available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

▷ Open the Media Hub

- ♦ In the Layout Editor, choose Window > Resources and select Media Hub.

Administrator access level only! Select a printing device in the System Overview and you will see that the Media Hub is a resource.

You can select a CPM in the list of Calibrated Printing Modes. You can use the filter box to filter the CPMs by printing device for example.

▷ Create a CPM

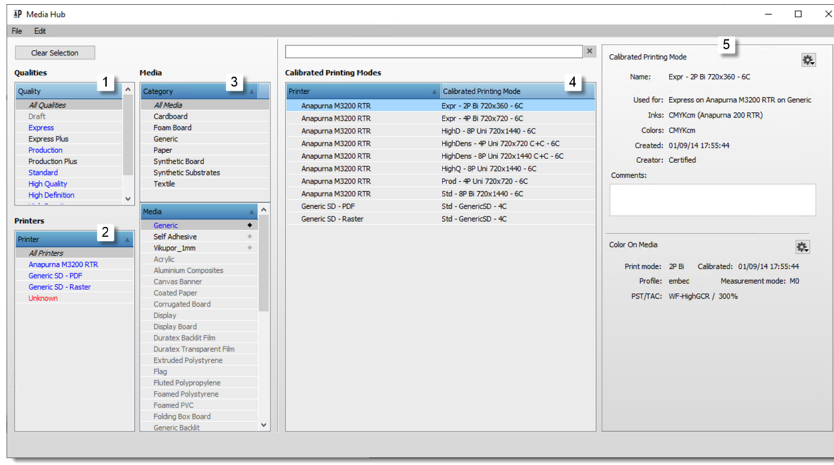
New Calibrated Printing Modes are generally based on a default CPM, but you can also create them from scratch.

- ♦ In the Media Hub, choose File > New Calibrated Print Mode.

The CPM Creation Wizard opens.

The wizard consists of 3 steps. Visit the *Tutorial* page on the *AsantiNetwork* for a detailed procedure.

Media Hub Overview



1 Quality
2 Printer
3 Media Category and Media
4 List of Calibrated Printing Modes (CPMs) for the selected quality, printer and media
5 Details of the selected quality, media or CPM, or adjust Printer Parameters for category

A series of base or default CPMs are included with your system and new CPMs can be created based on these CPMs. You can see the default CPMs if you select All Qualities + All Printers + Generic Media (in the All Media or Generic Media).

When you start a job in the Layout Editor, you need to choose a Calibrated Printing Mode (CPM) that corresponds with the requirements of the job. A number of CPMs are available for each printing device (Anapurna, Jeti, etc.) to ensure optimum printing results on each device. The CPM settings take into account the following parameters:

- Quality: The Quality parameter allows you to choose a desired quality level for the printed product. The quality level you choose depends on the characteristics of the images to be printed, the desired color gamut, the viewing distance and the printing speed. The following quality levels are available:
  - Express
  - Express Plus
  - Production
  - Production Plus
  - Standard

- High Quality
- High Definition
- High Density
- Custom

- Printer: A particular printing device cannot necessarily handle all quality levels. Only the quality levels that apply for the available printing devices are shown when you set up a job.
- Media: The expected quality varies according to the chosen media.
- Clear Selection: This button resets the selection to All Qualities, All Printers and All Media.

Calibrated Printing Modes Details

General

The name and properties of the Calibrated Printing Mode.

Color On Media

The printing mode and color mode for printing the process color inks directly on the substrate, and the associated calibration and characterization resource. This applies when printing without white, or when printing with post-white, regardless of the kind of white application.

Color On White

The same set of properties for printing the process color inks on white ink.

White

The print and screen properties for printing white.

CPM cogwheel menu

- Click the cogwheel to open the CPM menu which has the following commands:
  - Rename CPM: Edit the CPM name.
  - Accept Changes: Set the state of a CPM back to Available. Requires confirmation.

- Revert: Shows the History dialog where you can choose a calibration date to revert to.
- Redo Wizard: Launches the wizard to redo the calibration wizard.
- Resume Wizard: Resumes the Wizard from where you left off.
- Duplicate: Creates a copy of the CPM.
- Delete: Deletes the CPM.
- Export: Exports the CPM to a chosen location.

Calibration Sets cogwheel menu

- Click the cogwheel to open the CPM menu which has the following commands:
  - Calibrate: Opens the CPM Calibration Wizard, and redo the calibration.
  - Calibrate G7: Only active if the CPM includes a G7 calibration step. Use this option to update this step.
  - Tune Profile: Opens the CPM Profile Tuning Wizard, and tunes the embedded profile.
  - Edit Profile Settings: Opens the Edit Profile Settings dialog.
  - Manually Adjust Neutrals: Tunes the neutrals.
  - Edit Print Mode: Opens the Edit Print Mode dialog.
  - Report: Creates and opens a CPM Quality Report. You can save the report as a PDF or print it.
  - Import External Profile: Replaces the current profile by an external one.
  - Export Profile: Exports the profile (embedded or imported).

NOTE: Visit the *Tutorial* page on the *AsantiNetwork* for detailed procedures.

Media Details

General

Name How you want to call the media.

Sheet only The media can be used on flat-bed or hybrid printers.

Roll only The media can be used on roll-to-roll or hybrid printers.

Both The media can be used on any type of printer.

Default thickness The default thickness of the media.

Categories One or more categories that the media belongs to. Select the categories from the drop-down list.

Media Calibration

Here you can choose whether the new media needs a dedicated CPM, or can use that of an existing media by choosing one from the drop-down list.

▷ Create New Quality

- In the Media Hub, choose File > New Quality.

  A new quality is added to the list. You can edit the Name, Short name and Description in the Quality details panel.

▷ Create New Media

- In the Media Hub, choose File > New Media.

  A new media called Media is added to the list. You can edit the name and specify the settings in the Media details panel.

Other Media Hub Commands

▷ Configure Printer

- In the Media Hub, choose File > Configure Printer to open the configuration window for the selected printer.

NOTE: Depends on access level.

▷ Manage Sheet Sizes

♦ In the Media Hub, choose File > Manage Sheet Sizes.

The Sheet Size resource is displayed. See “Sheet Sizes” on page 485.

▷ Import/Export CPMs

♦ In the Media Hub, choose File > Import or Export.

The file browser is displayed.

NOTE: Many of these commands are available by context-clicking the appropriate item.

▷ Adjust Printer Parameters

1. Select a category and click the Adjust button in the Printer Parameters panel on the right. Unlock the parameters first.
2. The Printer Parameters dialog box is displayed where you can specify device specific settings. Click the cogwheel icon if you want to restore the settings.

Output Sizes

The Output Sizes Resource category defines the different available output sizes that can be used for printing the image on a particular imagesetter or platesetter. This also allows you to define a punch calibration, and link it to the used output device.

Punch Calibration defines how the sheet is being “punched” to ensure a correct sheet position. There are two punching methods supported by Asanti: head punching and tail punching.

Associated Task Processors

The Output Sizes Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- All of the Imagesetter, Platesetter, and Proofer Task Processors
- Commercial digital Print Task Processors

Administrator access level only!

Output Sizes Overview

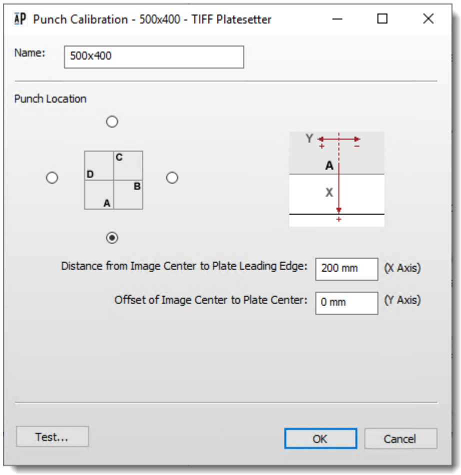
The Output Sizes overview lists the available Output Sizes. You can create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Output Sizes.

Output Sizes Editor

The Output Sizes Editor allows you to create or modify an Output Sizes. You can specify a height, width, orientation and punch calibration.

Punch Calibration Editor

In this window, you can specify the punch settings for the imagesetters or platesetters and print a test page in order to measure the offsets.



Name

The name of the punch calibration. This field cannot be left empty.

Punch Location

The location of the Punch (virtual or real) on the test image. This can be the device punch or the transfer punch.

X Axis The distance between the center of the test image and the punch reference (punch center for film and leading edge for plate).

Y Axis The offset between the center of the test image and the punch center for films. This option is disabled for platesetters.

Plate Exposure Unit Pin Bar (Imagesetters only)

Specify the distance between the film punch and the edge of the plate when both the film and the plate are mounted on the pin bar. This option is disabled for platesetters. The initial value is the last entered value.

Test Page

You can print a test page in order to measure the offsets. Proceed as follows:

1. In the Punch Calibration dialog box, click the Test button.

   The Punch Calibration Test Page dialog box is displayed.

2. Select the Output Size that you want to associate with the Punch Calibration.
3. Click the On list and select the media you want to print the test page on.
4. Select any Parameter Sets you may have created for the Image and Output operations.
5. Click Print.

   A test job is composed and automatically submitted to the device, and a progress indicator appears. You are notified when the job has been successfully submitted.

NOTE: The OK button is disabled if you have not selected a valid tray.

▷ To create and edit an output size

1. In the System Overview, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to create or edit an Output Size.
2. Double-click the Output Sizes icon in the Resources pane.

   The Output Sizes overview appears.

3. Do one of the following to create or edit an Output Size.

   - Click the New button to create a new Output Size.

   - Select the Output Size that you want to edit in the Output Size list in the upper pane and click the Edit button.

   The Output Size editor appears.

4 Type the name for the Output Size and specify the width, height and orientation.

5 Select a punch calibration from the Punch Calibration list.

NOTE: You can select None if you do not want to use a Punch Calibration. In that case, no offsets are applied.

6 Click OK.

Your settings are saved. The newly created Output Size appears in the list.

7 Close the Output Sizes dialog box.

▷ To create and edit a new punch calibration

1 In the System Overview, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to create or edit a punch calibration.

2 Double-click the Output Sizes icon in the Resources pane.

The Output Sizes overview appears.

3 In the lower pane, do one of the following to create or edit a Punch Calibration.

- Click the New button to create a new Punch Calibration.

- Click the Edit button to edit a Punch Calibration.

The Punch Calibration editor appears.

4 Specify the Punch Calibration settings.

5 Click OK to save your settings.

The settings are saved. The newly created Punch Calibration appears in the lower pane. You can select the required Punch Calibration in the Output size dialog box when creating or editing an Output Size.

6 Close the Output Sizes dialog box.

▷ To delete a punch calibration

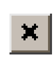
1 In the System Overview, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to delete a punch calibration.

2 Double-click the Output Sizes icon in the Resources pane.

The Output Sizes dialog box appears.

3 In the lower pane, select the Punch Calibration that you want to delete and do one of the following:

- Press Delete.
- Click the Delete button.



4 Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

5 Click either Yes or No depending on whether you want to delete the linked Output Size.

The Punch Calibration is deleted and no longer appears in the lower pane.

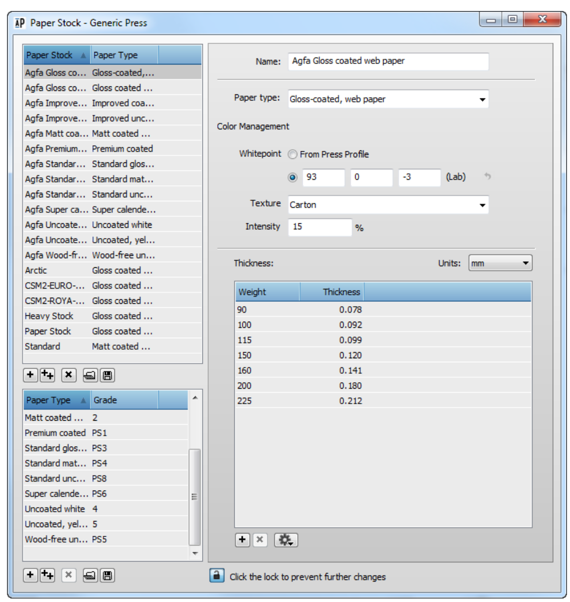
6 Close the Output Sizes dialog box.

Paper Stock

This resource category groups the paper that you can use for all presses, and is used to describe the surface type and weight of the paper. The choice of paper has a serious impact on the processing of a job. The paper type defines the profile and calibration to be used, and also selects the ink books. If a specific paper behaves other than expected, you should create a new paper type for it.

A Paper Stock is mapped to one of the standard Paper Types and a series of weights.

♦ Click the Paper Stock icon in the Generic Press Resources pane to open the Paper Stock dialog box.



Associated Task Processors

The Paper Stock resource is available for the following Task Processors:

- Press
- Generic Press

Administrator access level only!

Paper Stock Overview

The Paper Stock dialog box lists all available Paper Stocks in the top list and the available Paper Types in the bottom list.

- Click a Stock to display the Paper Type and Weight in the panel on the right.

Paper Stock

Name A unique and meaningful name such as the brand of the paper, what it will be used for (e.g. cover), or a generic description (e.g. Matt-coated).

Paper Type The type that describes the surface of the paper. The paper types you see and can select in the drop-down are managed in the Paper Type list in the bottom left corner. These types are mapped to the JDF grades as explained below.

Color Management

You can set the white point and the texture of the stock, and this information is used by proofing color management to mimic the final print on this specific stock:

Whitepoint Here you can choose the source of the white point to be used:

- From Press Profile: This is the default value used for the paper type associated with the press selected for the job.
- LAB: Specify a different value for the white point; use the revert button to go back to the default.

Texture 4 textures are provided (Carton, Coated paper, Newspaper, Uncoated paper) which are images of unprinted paper stock.

Intensity Enter a percentage to control the intensity of the selected texture.

Weight and Thickness This table displays the available Weights with corresponding Thickness in mm or mil.

Paper Type

Paper types are mapped to **JDF grades** for automatic selection by Apogee Impose or to **Not mapped** for manual selection.

Name A unique and meaningful name that refers to the grade

JDF grade A number from 1 to 5 for the following JDF paper grades:

- 1 for gloss-coated paper
- 2 for matt-coated paper
- 3 for gloss-coated, web paper
- 4 for uncoated, white paper
- 5 for uncoated, yellowish
- 0 for Not mapped: manual selection, no JDF mapping selected

To work with Paper Stocks

You can create, edit or delete a Paper Stock, map it to a Paper Type and then choose the Weights you want to make available for your production. This is done with the usual procedures for working with resources.

You can also import a .txt file with the weights and thicknesses for a particular Paper Stock.

NOTE: The Paper Type determines the profile, calibration and the ink books. When a specific paper behaves differently, you should create a new Paper Type.

To add a Paper Weight

1. Click the new button below the Thickness box.

   OR

   Click the cogwheel and choose **Copy from** and then select the Paper Stock you want to copy the Paper weight from.

   A new Weight and Thickness appear at the top of the list.
2. Edit these two settings as required.
3. Lock the Paper Stock settings.

To import a Paper Stock from a tab-delimited text file

You can import a paper stock database from a plain text file. The text file must be formatted with paper records on each line, and each paper record containing tab-delimited values for stock name, weight, thickness, thickness units and paper type.

- Click the import button under the Paper Stock table and choose the .txt file you want to import.

```
NewStock1	90	0.078	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	100	0.092	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	115	0.099	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	150	0.120	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	160	0.141	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	200	0.180	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	225	0.212	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	260	0.230	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	300	0.254	mm	Gloss coated wood free

NewStock2	90	0.077	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	100	0.090	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	115	0.098	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	150	0.118	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	160	0.131	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	200	0.170	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	225	0.201	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	260	0.215	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	300	0.234	mm	Matt coated wood free
```

The file is checked for validity and if applicable a report is generated indicating how to remedy import issues.

The above example creates two new Paper Stocks, each with its own thickness table and the values from the records you imported.

Print Modes

The Print Modes resource category is where set the following parameters:

- Resolution width
- Resolution height
- Device Print Mode
- Droplets per dot
- Bits per pixel

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Print Mode is available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic SD (Sign and Display) and other wide format presses

Profiles

ICC Profiles are standards for describing color characterizations of different output devices. Asanti provides you with a set of standard ICC color profiles. You can import additional color profiles (*.icm or *.icc files), and delete profiles.

You can also import (and delete) color exceptions, in tab-delimited format (*.dat files) and in MIME format (*.mime files). The colors will then appear in the Color Exceptions table, together with their process value percentages.

You can create auto-select maps to make a profile available for automatic selection. For more information, see “Using Resource Auto-Select Maps” on page 455.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The ICC Profiles Resources are available for:

- All Proofer Task Processors
- All Print (Press) Task Processors
- Apogee Preflight

Profile Selection Maps Editor (Press)

You can specify which job settings the automatic selection of the profile will depend on. For Press, these are as follows.

Generic Press

Press Name Select the press type from the drop-down list.

Printing Stock

Paper Type Select the appropriate paper type from the drop-down list. For example:

- Gloss coated wood free
- Matt coated wood free
- Uncoated white

Ink Set Select the ink set from the drop-down list. You can choose from the available Ink Sets in the Ink Sets Resource category that have the same color space as the profile.

Workflow

Displays the polarity (for information only):

- CTP or Positive CTF
- Negative CTF

NOTE: Computer to Plate printing is always positive.

Halftone Screen

Specify the halftone screen settings:

Screen Select the screen type from the drop-down list.

- ABS
- Adobe Accurate
- Rational Tangent

Resolution Specify the screen resolution from the drop-down list.

Frequency Select the line frequency (lpi) from the drop-down list.

Dot Shape Select the dot shape from the drop-down list.

Profile Selection Maps Editor (Proofers)

You can specify which job settings the automatic selection of the profile will depend on.

Media

Media Type Select the Media type from the drop-down list.

Output

Inkset The ink set corresponds to the Color Space of the Profile.

Quality

Quality Select the required output quality from the drop-down list.

Quality

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

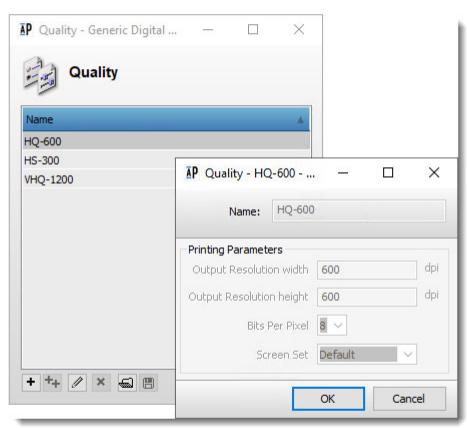
The Quality Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- Generic Digital Press

Quality Overview

Quality dialog box lists all the available Qualities.

- Double-click a Quality in the list to display its settings.

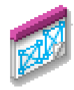


Name Name of the Quality

Printing Parameters

- Output Resolution width
- Output Resolution height
- Bits Per Pixel
- Screen type

Sheet Layout Templates



This resource lists the Sheet Layout Templates you create in the Layout Editor.

- Double-click the Sheet Layout Templates icon for an overview of the available templates.

  You can only delete the templates you create in the Layout Editor. This resource cannot be used to create templates.

Associated Task Processors

The Sheet Layout Templates resource is available for the following Task Processors:

- Impose
- Raster Impose

Administrator access level only!

▷ Open the Sheet Layout Templates

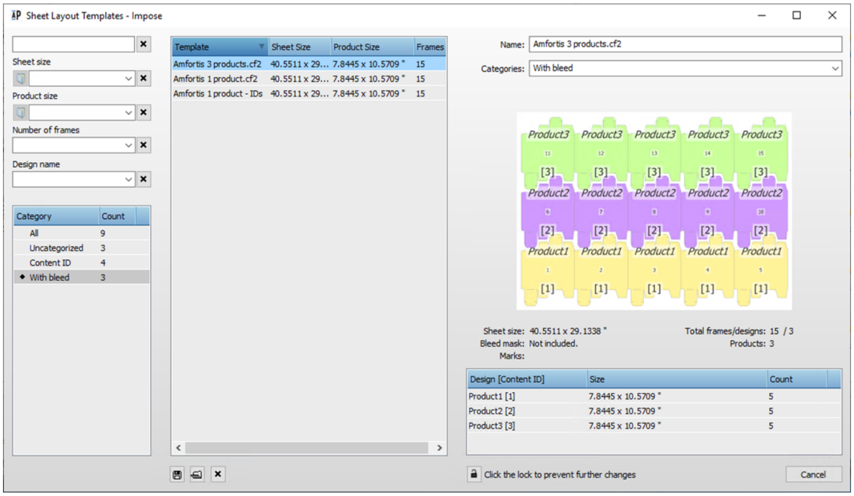
- In the Layout Editor, choose Window > Resources and select Sheet Layout Templates, or go to System Overview, choose Impose or Raster Impose and double-click the Sheet Layout Templates.

Sheet Layout Templates Overview

The Sheet Layout Templates window is used to rename, change their category, import, export, and delete the Sheet Layout Templates as resource editor. You can also manage the categories by adding, removing and renaming them.

For more information about the Sheet Layout Templates, refer to “Sheet Layout Templates” on page 158.

NOTE: You cannot edit the layout of a Sheet Layout Template in this Sheet Layout Templates resource window.



XSLT Conversions

A resource for importing XSLT transformation files. The Export Task Processor can produce an ApoXML file for the results it exports, with an XSLT conversion that can read the custom variables set by the Automate Task Processor(s). The ApoXML file can then be built by the XSLT to drive certain processing parameters, for example, by choosing a parameter set or explicitly setting processing parameters.

Associated Task Processors

The XSLT Conversions Resources are available for the following Task Processors:

- Automate
- Export

You can import, export or delete XSLT conversions.

Using Resource Auto-Select Maps

When creating a Ticket, you can specify how the Task Processor will select the required Resources. There are two options:

- Manually select the Resources to be used in the settings of the Task Processor.
- Have the Task Processor itself automatically search for the required Resource based on predefined look-up rules. Briefly, you create an 'automatic look-up' mechanism by mapping those rules in an 'Auto-Select Map'. For more information on creating an Auto-Select Map, see "To create an Auto-Select Map" on page 455.

For example, if you select a specific medium in the output settings of a Press Task Processor and activate the automatic selection for calibration, Asanti will automatically look for the required Calibration Curve.

If Asanti does not find a match, you can tell it what to do by clicking the Fallback button. For more information see Fallback on page 457.

Associated Task Processors

You can create Auto-Select Maps for the following Resource categories:

- Calibration Curves
- Linearization Curves
- Profiles

▷ To create an Auto-Select Map

1. In the System Overview, select an Output or Print Task Processor.
2. Check that the Task Processor has one or more of the following Resource categories associated with it in the Resources pane:
   - Calibration Curves
   - Linearization Curves
   - Profiles
3. Double-click one of these associated Resource categories.

   The Resources overview dialog box appears.

4 Select a Resource that you want to use as a basis to create a look-up rule and click the Add Map button. You can also drag and drop a resource into one of the map overview lists

The Resource dialog box appears where you can change the settings.

5 Click **OK**.

The Resource appears in the Auto-Select Map or Profile Selection Map pane. It will function as a look-up rule.

6 Close the Resources dialog box.

NOTE: You can also drag and drop a profile onto the Profile Selection Maps table.

▷ To edit and delete an Auto-Select Map

1 In the System Overview, select an Output or Print Task Processor.

2 Check that the Task Processor has one or more of the following Resource categories associated with it in the Resources pane:

- Calibration Curves
- Linearization Curves
- Profiles

3 Double-click one of these associated Resource categories.

The Resources overview dialog box appears.

4 Do one of the following to edit or delete an Auto-Select Map:

- Select the Auto-Select Map that you want to edit in the Auto-Select Maps pane and click the Edit button. Click OK to save your changes.

- Select the Auto-Select Map that you want to delete and press Delete or click the Delete button to delete it. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

5 Close the Resources overview.

Fallback

Click the Fallback button to specify what Asanti should do if the automatic selection does not find a match.

NOTE: This function is available for Calibration, Linearization and Ink Tables. Check those Resource categories for the information on the Fallback settings.

CHAPTER 9

Monitoring and Configuring Your System

This section describes how you can monitor and configure the Apogee System from the System Overview window.

System Overview Window

The System Overview is one of the three main windows of the Apogee Client. It provides an overview of the overall configuration of your Apogee System and the Hardware System(s) running the system.

The System Overview is divided into 3 panes:

- Hardware Pane
- Task Processor Pane
- Resources Pane

Use this window primarily for:

- Configuring the Task Processors
- Creating and editing Parameter Sets for the Task Processors
- Monitoring Task Processor activities

NOTE: Task Processor configuration is for service engineers only. However, the Press can be configured by an administrator.

Hardware Pane

This pane displays the Apogee System icon and one or more Hardware System icons.

- The Apogee System stands for the entire software system running on one or more Hardware Systems. When you click the Apogee System icon, you will see all of the Task Processors available for the entire Apogee System.

- Next to the System icon, Apogee displays the Hardware System(s) running the Apogee software. There is always at least one Hardware System icon which corresponds to the main Windows 2003/2008 server on which the Apogee System was installed. If, during installation, the Apogee System processes were distributed over additional “satellite” hardware systems, you will see the corresponding Hardware System icons (see “Hardware System Scalability” on page 461).

Hardware System Scalability

To provide faster and more efficient use of tasks and resources, your Apogee System processes may be distributed over 2 or more physical hardware systems. In this case, you will see additional “satellite” Hardware System icons in the Hardware pane, each one corresponding to a physical system. One of the Hardware Systems is highlighted in bold: This is the main Hardware System, which is running the “core” Apogee System software.

If you select one of these icons, you will see the Task Processors that are available on the selected Hardware System. All the other Task Processors will appear faded out. By selecting each of the Hardware Systems in turn, you can see which Task Processors are installed on which systems.

Similarly, if you select a Task Processor, you will see to which Hardware System it belongs: The other Hardware Systems will appear faded out.

You may also see that some Task Processors (such as Normalize and Render) are duplicated on two or more Hardware Systems. This can reduce the processing burden on a single Hardware System, and greatly increase the speed with which jobs are handled by the Apogee System.

For information on setting up Satellite servers, refer to the Apogee Installation Guide.

Activity Monitoring

Your Apogee System can run certain maintenance tasks, such as Job Housekeeping, in the background. These tasks may slow down the processing of jobs.

This kind of activity is indicated with a green border around the main or satellite icons in the hardware pane and implies that processing speed may be affected.

- Double-click a hardware icon to open the Activity Monitor dialog and display a list of current tasks and components.

Task Processor Pane

This pane displays all of the available Task Processors for the selected hardware system. You can also check the Task Processors' activity by double-clicking their icon.

The Task Processors are divided into four categories:

- Input Task Processors
- Processing Task Processors
- Output Task Processors
- Print Task Processors

Managing your Task Processors

This section explains how you can manage your Task Processors from the System Overview window. You can start, stop and restart any Task Processor. Stopping a Task Processor (if you are not planning to use it) will improve system performance, since Apogee will then require fewer system resources. Output Task Processors need to be restarted if you change the configuration of the associated output device.

Additionally, Task Processors associated with physical output devices can be put online and offline. You can also create a PostScript Printer Description file (PPD) containing all job-related information specific for your output environment.

TIP: In Apogee, you can create PPD files for different PS Printer Drivers for Macintosh as well as PC. You can further specify some content-related options.

See also "Monitoring your Task Processors" on page 466.

▷ To start a Task Processor

1 In the System Overview, locate the inactive Task Processor.

When a Task Processor is inactive, the icon will have static horizontal stripes running through it.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Start from the context menu.

▷ To stop a Task Processor

1 In the System Overview, locate the active Task Processor.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Stop from the context menu.

The Task Processor will stop after a few moments. When the Task Processor has stopped, the icon will have static horizontal stripes running through it.

You can re-activate it by context-clicking it and selecting Start from the context menu.

▷ To restart a Task Processor

1 In the System Overview, locate the active Task Processor.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Restart from the context menu.

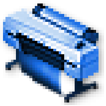
While the Task Processor is restarting, the icon will have moving horizontal stripes running through it.

▷ To put an Output Task Processor offline

1 In the System Overview, locate the active Output Task Processor.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Put Offline from the context menu.

The Task Processor is colored blue to indicate that it is offline.



▷ To put an Output Task Processor online

1 In the System Overview, locate the offline Output Task Processor.

Offline Task Processors are colored blue.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Put Online from the context menu.

The Task Processor comes back online, and the blue shading is removed from the icon.

▷ To print an exposure test page for platesetters

When you first start to use your platesetters, you should submit an Exposure Test job to check the output and to select the engine's best exposure settings. You should continue periodically to submit Exposure Test jobs to make sure that the engine is still producing good quality output.

NOTE: This option is currently supported only for the Galileo and XCalibur platesetters.

---

1 Select the System Overview.

2 Select your platesetter.

3 Double-click the Linearization Curves icon in the Resources pane.

The Linearization Curves overview appears. In the upper pane, you see all of the available Linearization Curves for the selected platesetter.

4 Click the Exposure... button (only available for Galileo and XCalibur platesetters).

The Exposure Parameters dialog box is displayed. The name of the selected engine is displayed in the title bar of the dialog box.

You will see a list of resolutions at which you can print an exposure test. For each resolution, you will see default frequency and exposure settings. If you wish, you can change these default settings.

5 To change the frequency and exposure settings:

- Select a resolution, and click the Edit button:

The Resolution Test Settings dialog box is displayed.

- Click the Frequency list, and select one of the available frequencies.

- Enter an Exposure setting.
- Click OK to return to the Exposure Test dialog box.

6 Use the check boxes in the Print column to select one or more of the available resolution settings.

7 Click the Print button.

The Exposure Test dialog box is closed, and test pages are printed out on the engine at the selected resolutions. The print date is automatically added to the test pages.

In the Job List, all exposure tests are grouped under the same order number called “Exposure Test”. The job name of the test file to be printed is called “<device name> Exposure Test”.

Monitoring your Task Processors

The current status of a Task Processor is indicated by the appearance of the Task Processor icon. The icon may be adapted with a series of different colors and overlays which indicate the hardware or component status of the Task Processor.

Output Task Processor Hardware Status

The hardware status is the status reported by the physical output engine.

When a physical output device is not idle (i.e. able to communicate and process jobs), it will be in one of the following states:

Paused: The output engine is able to communicate, but cannot process any tasks. A user interaction has taken place on the device itself to trigger this status.

Disconnected: The output engine’s cable has been unplugged.

Warning: The hardware engine requires attention (e.g. ink low), but can still receive tasks.

This platesetter is managed by the PlateMaker Client. The yellow ‘sun’ patch indicates that the device is in attended state (i.e. A user is logged in to the PlateMaker Client).

This platesetter is managed by the PlateMaker Client. The gray ‘moon’ patch indicates that the device is in unattended state (i.e. no one is logged in to the PlateMaker Client).

Error: The hardware engine requires attention - it cannot continue to receive and process tasks until the problem has been resolved (e.g. no ink).

In each of the above cases, the relevant status icon will appear as an overlay on the Output Task Processor.

NOTE: The hardware status is not the same as the component status. For example, the component status may be online and ready while the physical hardware engine is actually disconnected or paused.

Task Processor Component (Software) Status

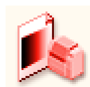
This reflects the status of the connection between the Apogee System and the Apogee Task Processor component. As such this is a software setting which has no relation to the actual physical status of the associated output device.

NOTE: The component status is not the same as the hardware status. For example, the component status may be online and ready while the physical hardware engine is actually disconnected or paused.

The Task Processor component status is indicated visually as described below.

The Task Processor is ready, and is currently idle.

The Task Processor turns green when it is processing a task. For example, the Avantra Task Processor is busy processing a separation.



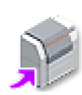
The Task Processor turns red if a processing error occurs. In this case an error notification is sent to the Message Board, explaining the nature of the error.

The Task Processor turns blue if it is offline.

When the Task Processor has been stopped (inactive), the icon will have horizontal stripes running through it. You can re-activate it by context-clicking on the icon and selecting Start from the context menu.

The Task Processor is starting up (moving horizontal stripes).

The Task Processor is locked, because you do not have a license to use it.



A purple arrow is attached to the Task Processor icon if:

- You have a remote license. This means that this Task Processor is not licensed to execute tasks: These tasks are processed remotely on another Apogee System. However, you can use this Task Processor to specify the settings in the Production Plan.
- A remote proofer is installed (as specified in the installer). The remote proofer is combined with the Remote Proofer Controller Task Processor.

These status indicators can also be seen in the Output Device List, in the Job and Hot Ticket Managers.

Activity Window

The Activity window consists of two panes and a toolbar:

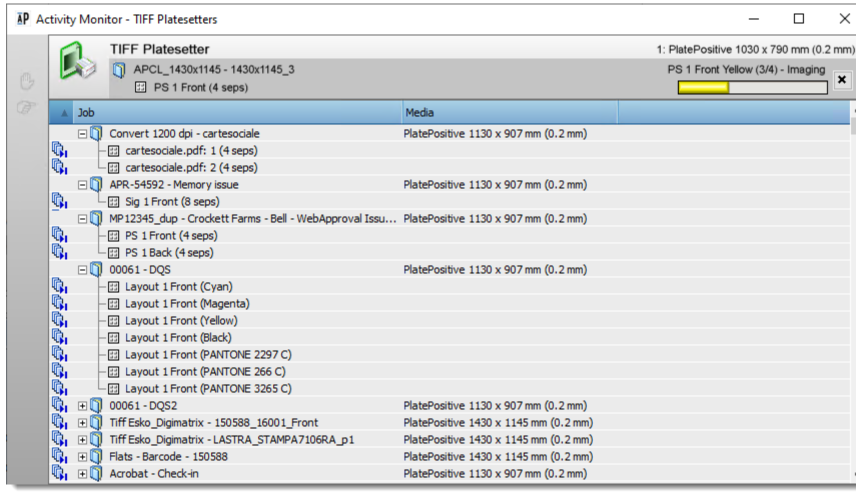
- In the upper pane, you can see the selected Task Processor icon, and a brief summary of the Task Processor's activity. This indicates how many tasks are being processed or are waiting to be processed, and the number of errors. The status of the Task Processor is indicated by the color of the icon. For more information on icon color codings, see “Task Processor Component (Software) Status” on page 467.

You can see which tasks are currently being processed by the selected Task Processor. The progress of the activity is shown by a progress indicator. If more Task Processors of the same type are installed on the Apogee System (e.g., two Normalizers or two Renderers), then you will see the activity for all Task Processors of this type.

NOTE: If you are viewing the activity of an output Task Processor with ganging enabled (such as a Sherpa proofer), you will also see a Flush button. If you click this button, Apogee will stop collecting input (ganging) and start printing the available pages (see “To flush job results” on page 472). Apogee will also indicate which type of media is currently loaded.

- In the lower pane, you can see the tasks that are waiting to be processed. This information is displayed in three columns:
  - Status icon: Indicates the current status of the task (waiting for media, waiting for a soft proof, etc.). For a description of all these icons, see “Job Status Icons” on page 244.
  - Job: Lists the jobs, and the individual tasks within each job.
  - Destination/Media: Indicates to which output device the job will be sent. If you are monitoring the activity of an output device, this column will display the type and size of the media that is being used.

  By default, the tasks are sorted according to status. You can sort the list according to job name or job status, in ascending or descending order, by clicking the appropriate column title. You can also re-order the tasks by dragging and dropping.
- On the left side of the window, you can see the Activity Toolbar.



Activity Toolbar

The Activity toolbar includes the following buttons that allow you to manage the activity of the selected Task Processor:

Continue processing a selected result that is on hold.

Put the selected activity on hold.

NOTE: The buttons you actually see depend on the current status of the task you are viewing.

▷ To check Task Processor activity

1 In the System Overview, locate the active Task Processor. It has changed color or is surrounded by a colored glow.

2 Double-click the Task Processor icon.

The Task Processor's Activity window appears, where you can monitor the activity of Task Processors. The Activity window shows:

- The jobs that are currently being processed
- The jobs that are waiting to be processed
- Any errors that have occurred

▷ To abort a task

1 In the System Overview, locate an active Task Processor.

An active Task Processor will have changed color, or is surrounded by a colored glow.

2 Double-click the Task Processor icon.

The Task Processor's Activity window appears.

In the middle pane, you can see which jobs are currently being processed. The progress of the activity is shown by a progress indicator.

3 To abort the current task, click the Abort button to the right of the progress bar:

The selected task is immediately aborted.

▷ To hold a task

1 In the System Overview, locate the Task Processor which has scheduled the task you want to put on hold.

2 Double-click the Task Processor icon.

The Task Processor's Activity window appears.

3 Select the task you want to hold.

4 Click the Hold button.

The selected task is put on hold. You will see the following status icon next to the task name:

▷ To resume a task that is on hold

1 In the System Overview, locate the Task Processor with a task on hold.

2 Double-click the Task Processor icon.

The Task Processor's Activity window appears. Any tasks on hold will have the following status icon next to the task name:

3 Select the task on hold.

4 Click the Continue button.

The selected task resumes processing.

▷ To flush job results

1 In the System Overview, locate an active output Task Processor.

NOTE: This must be a Proofer device.

An active output Task Processor will have changed color, or is surrounded by a colored glow.

2 Double-click the Task Processor icon.

The Task Processor's Activity window appears. If you are viewing the activity of an output Task Processor with ganging enabled (such as a Sherpa proofer), you will see a Flush button.

3 Click Flush.

The selected Task Processor stops its current activity, and is forced to immediately output it's collected results.

Grouping Task Processors for Load Balancing

If you have several task processors of the same type, you can group these task processors and subsequently use this group in your production plans. Apogee automatically chooses the task processor which is available and the most suitable for the job, effectively balancing the load applied to these task processors.

▷ To group Task Processors

1 In the System Overview, context-click one of the identical task processors and choose New Group.

The Edit User Group is displayed.

2 Enter a Group Name. You can change this name later if you want.

3 Select the check boxes for the additional Task Processors that you want to add to the group.

4 Click OK.

The new Task Processor group is displayed with the group icon.

You can now use this group in your production plans.

▷ To delete/edit a Task Processor group

1. In the System Overview, context-click the Task Processor group you want to delete or edit.

   The Edit User Group is displayed.

2. Choose Delete Group to ungroup the Task Processors and delete the group

   OR

3. Choose Edit group to add or remove Task Processors in the group.
4. Click OK.

Resources Pane

The Resources pane displays the resources that are available for the currently selected System or Task Processor:

- If the Apogee System is selected in the Hardware pane, in the Resources pane you will see the Configuration, Job Housekeeping, Logging, and Templates icons. If you have additional options installed, you may also see the Accounts, JDF Server, and JDF Stripping icons.
- If a Hardware or "Satellite" System is selected in the Hardware pane, you will see the Disk Storage icon in the Resources pane.
- If a Task Processor is selected, you will see the available Resources for the selected Task Processor in the Resources pane. These will always include a Parameter Sets icon, which allows you to create predefined Task Processor settings.

NOTE: Most of these resources are intended for administrators, and are hidden to operators.

Job Housekeeping

If you select the Apogee System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Job Housekeeping icon in the Resources pane.

Administrator access level only!

By double-clicking the Job Housekeeping icon, you can access the housekeeping options for archiving and deleting jobs. These tasks are performed on a daily or weekly basis, and cannot be switched off. You can specify, however, the exact time at which the archiving is carried out.

Whether a job will be archived or not, can be set in the Archive after finish option in the Options tab of the Ticket Editor. During the archiving, Apogee examines each job and archives the eligible ones.

NOTE: Preferably, you should schedule housekeeping activities at night, so that they do not interfere with your processing tasks.

Job Housekeeping Settings

Double-click the Job Housekeeping icon to access the Housekeeping settings for a selected System.

Administrator access level only!

Run Job List maintenance

Choose when Apogee runs the maintenance tasks by selecting the appropriate options from the lists:

Every: Specify how frequently Job List maintenance should be performed. This may be every day, or on a specific day of the week.

at: Specify the time of day when the Job List maintenance can start. You can either enter a time, or use the up and down arrows to select one.

Do Maintenance Now... Click this button to run all job maintenance tasks without waiting for the scheduled time. Note, however, that deleted jobs will only be cleaned up if you have set the 'Keep deleted jobs...' option to 0.

1- Put jobs offline

Put jobs offline that are marked to be put offline. You can specify how long to keep a job online before it is put offline.

2- Archive jobs

Save job archive as Specify the directory in which job archives and dumps are saved. You need to specify the exact path name and use variables to guarantee a unique file name. You can also use the browse button next to the field to browse for the required location. This location must be a shared disk accessible by both Apogee Client and Server. For more information on variables, refer to System Variables.

Include Job Log: Check this option to also archive the Job Log (selected by default).

Create archive folder Apogee system creates the archive directory on the occasion of following events:

When creating the job: Creates an archive folder, when you create a new job or duplicate from an existing one.

When archiving the job: Creates an archive folder, if that job has no current archive folder.

Pre-process archive folder with Select to run a pre-process script only after creating an archive folder for a new job. You must provide the full path name to the script.

Options Specify any optional extra arguments that should be passed to the script.

Post-process archive with Select to run a custom external script after the archive has been written. You must provide the full path name to the script.

Options Specify any optional extra arguments that should be passed to the script.

3 - Delete jobs

When you run the Job List maintenance, Apogee automatically deletes all finished jobs that are marked for deletion, and that have exceeded their "keep" period, as specified in the Options tab of the Job Ticket. However, although it deletes all of the job's documents, processing results, and processing parameters, it does not delete the job description and log entry. The job is only completely removed using the options in "Clean up deleted jobs".

4 - Clean up deleted jobs

Keep deleted jobs for at least Specify how long you want to keep deleted jobs by typing a number in the field and selecting the time unit (hours, days, weeks) in the list next to it.

If you do not want to keep deleted jobs, enter 0.

Maintain Databases

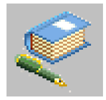
This task runs the Database Maintenance, as configured in the DatabaseMaintenance tab of the System Configuration.

Cogwheel menu

Compare Configuration Compares the Job Housekeeping settings against the default values.

Restore Defaults Restores all settings to their factory defaults.

Logging



If you select the Apogee System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Logging icon in the Resources pane.

By double-clicking the Logging icon, you can access the settings related to the Logging activity of Apogee. These allow you to control different aspects of the logging such as the logging schedule, export directory for log files or the items to be logged.

Administrator access level only!

Logging Settings

Select the Apogee System, and double-click the Logging icon to access the Logging settings.

Administrator access level only!

System Log

This tab allows you to specify which events should be logged and when they should be removed from the system.

Events to log Select the appropriate check box to include the required events in the log:

User interactions (start, stop, restart, put online, put offline): This includes Task Processor statuses such as start, shutdown, hold or resume.

Errors & warnings: This includes the error status of Task Processors, device statuses such as error, online and offline and non-informative notifications with their reply.

Informative messages: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Major Task Processor events (start, stop): This includes statuses such as boot or shutdown of Task Processors.

Housekeeping tasks: This refers to cleanup tasks such as archiving or deleting.

Log Clean up Choose a schedule for cleaning up the system log:

Every: Specify how frequently the clean up should be performed. This may be every day, or a specific day of the week.

at: Specify the time at which the cleanup can start. You can either type the time or use the up and down arrows to choose it.

Clean Up Now: Click this button the cleanup the System Log immediately, without waiting for the scheduled time. This opens the Clean System Log dialog box. Here you can have all the events instantly removed regardless of their age, or have them first exported and removed afterwards.

Keep log of system events for at least: Specify the period during which a System event is kept in the log. Once it has exceeded this limit, Apogee will remove the event during the daily cleanup. The minimum period is 1 day.

Specify the period by typing the number in the field and selecting the time unit (days, weeks) in the field next to it. You can use the up and down arrows to select the time unit.

Export events before deletion: Select this check box if you want Apogee to export a copy of the events. This way, you can guarantee that no events will be lost or will appear twice. If you do not select this check box, Apogee will keep all the events, until you clean it manually or switch the option back on.

Export to: Enter the path and filename to be used for exporting the System log. Apogee exports the log after discarding the system events. You can also use the Browse button next to the field to locate the required directory.

There are three possibilities when exporting:

- If the log file already exists, Apogee will try to append the events to the file.
- If it cannot append the events, it will create a new file with a sequence number.
- If there is no existing file, Apogee will create a completely new file.

Job Log

This tab allows you to specify which job events should be logged and when they should be removed from the system.

Events to log

Select the appropriate check box to include the required events in the log:

Media usage: Events related to the use of resources such as film and plate or proofing media.

Used resources: Events related to Resource selection such as screen types, profiles, calibration and linearization curves. Events related to Task Processor parameter sets.

Color Management: Events related to input document color management, press and proofing output color management and spot colors.

Proofing actions: Events related to the proofing result such as waiting, continue, reject.

User interactions: Job related events such as resume, rush, edit. Task Processor related events such as hold, resume, rush. Result related events such as remake.

Errors & warnings: Non-informative notifications and their replies.

Informative messages: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Parameter updates by Task Processor: when a Task Processor changes the job settings.

Task Life cycle events (created, started, finished): When a job is created, has started or is finished.

Export job log

Export the job log when a job finishes: Select this check box if you want Apogee to export the job log. This will happen shortly after the job has finished and not during the daily cleanup.

If you remake a job after it has finished, Apogee will append the new events to the existing exported log. If the log has been removed, it will create a new one.

Export as: Enter the path and filename to be used for exporting the Job log. You can also use the Browse button next to the field to locate the required directory.

There are three possibilities when exporting:

- If the log file already exists, Apogee will try to append the events to the file.
- If it cannot append the events, it will create a new file with a sequence number.
- If there is no existing file, Apogee will create a completely new file.

Reporting

This tab allows you to specify the retention period in weeks, months or years.

Keep Reporting History for Enter the reporting history period in weeks, months or years.

Cogwheel menu

Compare Configuration Compares the Logging settings against the default values.

Restore Defaults Restores all settings to their factory defaults.

Templates

Administrator access level only!

If you select the Apogee System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Templates icon in the Resources pane.

By double-clicking the Templates icon, you can access the Templates dialog box, which allows you to create, edit and manage the different types of templates (Job Tickets, Hot Tickets, Layout Tickets and Layout Hot Tickets). From here, you can edit an existing template and save it with a different name. This is very useful when you regularly need to create tickets for similar jobs. You can start from an existing template and make any necessary changes without having to create a completely new ticket from scratch. You can also create new templates from the Ticket Editor using the File > Save as Template command.

You can save the Ticket Templates in Template Folders. In this way, you can for instance group Ticket Templates that you use for a specific customer or print job.

Related topics:

- Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency on page 318

Working with Template Categories

Template Categories are folders in which you can save your newly created Ticket Templates. You can group your Ticket Templates in different Template categories for specific types of jobs.

Administrator access level only!

▷ To manage your template categories

1. In the System Overview, select the Apogee System icon in the Hardware pane.
2. Double-click the Ticket Templates Resources icon in the Resources pane.

The Templates dialog box appears.

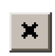
3 Select either the Job Tickets tab or the Hot Tickets tab depending on for which type of Ticket Template you want to create or edit a Template Category.

4 In the Category list, do one of the following:

- Click the New button to create a new Template category, type the name of the new category and click OK.

- Select a Template category and click the Edit button to edit it. Rename the Template category and click OK.

- Select the Template category that you want to delete and press Delete or click the Delete button. Click ‘Yes’ to confirm the deletion.



5 Close the Ticket Templates dialog box.

Related topics:

• Working with Ticket Templates on page 481

Working with Ticket Templates

In the Ticket Templates Resources category, you can edit, delete or set a Ticket Template as default.

Administrator access level only!

▷ To manage your Ticket Templates

1 In the System Overview, select the Apogee System icon in the Hardware pane.

2 Double-click the Templates Resources icon in the Resources pane.

The Templates dialog box appears.

3 Select either the Job Tickets tab or the Hot Tickets tab depending on which type of Ticket Template you want to edit.

4 To select the Ticket Template that you want to edit, delete or set as default, do one of the following:

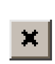
- Select the Ticket Template category in the Category list and select the Ticket Template that you want to edit.
- Select All in the Category list to view all of the Ticket Templates and select the Ticket Template that you want to edit.

5 Do one of the following:

- Click the Edit button to edit the Template in the Ticket Editor. Choose File > Save as Template and specify in which folder you want to save the Template. You can also save it under a new name. Click Save to save it.

- Click the Default button to set the Template as default. It will appear in bold in the Ticket Template list.

- Delete the Template by pressing Delete or clicking the Delete button. Confirm the deletion.



6 Close the Ticket Template dialog box.

▷ To export a Ticket Template

You may want to export a template for use by another Apogee System, or in order to have a temporary backup file.

NOTE: You can only import/export all ticket templates for a specific category.

1 In the Templates dialog box, select a template from the list and click the Export button.

2 Locate the folder to which you want to export the template, and click OK.

The template is exported as a MIME format file (*.mime).

To import a Ticket Template

1 In the Templates dialog box, click the Import button.

2 Locate the folder which contains the template you want to import.

This will be a template that was previously exported. This file will be in MIME format (*.mime).

3 Click Open.

The imported template is displayed in the list.

Related topics:

- Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency on page 318

Create a StoreFront ticket template

A special job ticket template is required to create a job from the data downloaded automatically from the StoreFront application. Read the StoreFront *Help* for more information.

1 Create, set up and submit a new job

OR

Select an existing job in the Job List.

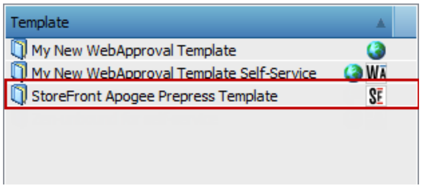
2 Choose File > Save As Template.

3 In the Templates dialog, select the **Make available to StoreFront** check box.

4 Choose a Category and enter a Name and Description.

5 Click Save.

When you choose File > New from Templates you will see the new template has been added to the list and it is indicated with the StoreFront icon.



The icon is also visible in the Template list of the Templates resource.

NOTE: The StoreFront template can also be used for other jobs.

Creating Templates for Wide Format Jobs

When creating a template from a layout job, you have extra options to set the template as default for devices and for new jobs. Image processing automation can be achieved using presets (see “Presets” on page 226).

Create a ticket template for Wide Format jobs

1 Create and set up a Wide Format job.

OR

Select an existing Wide Format job in the Job List.

2 Choose **Save As Template** from the File menu or the context menu.

3 Enter a name for the template in the Name box and choose a category.

You can select the following options:

- Use as default template for device: the new template will be used when creating wide format jobs starting from a particular device (context-clicking a Wide Format device in the Jobs window or dropping files on the device).

- Use as default template for new jobs: the new template will be used when using the New Wide Format Job command on the File menu or context menu.

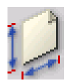
- Make available to StoreFront: Select this check box if you want to use this ticket template to process orders in the StoreFront application. The ticket template will appear in the Default Ticket Template drop-down list.

and the following check box:

- Include all frames, sheet and print layouts: all these settings, including named frames, will be applied to the new Wide Format job.

4 Click Save.

Page Sizes



Administrator access level only!

If you select the Apogee System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Page Sizes icon in the Resources pane. By double-clicking this icon, you can access the Page Sizes settings. This allows you to specify page size resources for use in Multi-part jobs (as a property of a part).

Page Sizes Settings

Administrator access level only!

Name

The name with which this particular page size is known. If you leave it empty, the page size is shown using the dimensions (w x h).

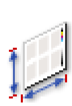
Page Size

The width and height of the page (cannot be blank or 0).

You can specify units by entering them explicitly. Apogee defaults to the standard units (mm) if you do not provide them.

You can create, edit or delete Page Sizes using the supplied buttons.

Sheet Sizes



The Sheet Sizes resource allows you to specify Press Sheet sizes for use with Apogee Impose, as a property of a Press Sheet.

Administrator access level only!

If you select the Apogee System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Sheet Sizes icon in the Resources pane. By double-clicking this icon, you can access the Sheet Sizes settings.

Sheet Sizes Settings

Name

The name with which this particular sheet size is known. If you leave it empty, the sheet size has no name so you must name it.

Sheet Size

The width and height of the page. For web production, leave the height blank or zero and these sizes will be picked up for web presses.

You can specify units by entering them explicitly. Apogee defaults to the standard units (mm) if you do not provide them.

You can create, edit or delete Sheet Sizes in the usual way.

Users

Administrator access level only!

The Users resource is where users are granted rights to Apogee. When a user logs on, the roles assigned to the user in this resource are automatically activated.

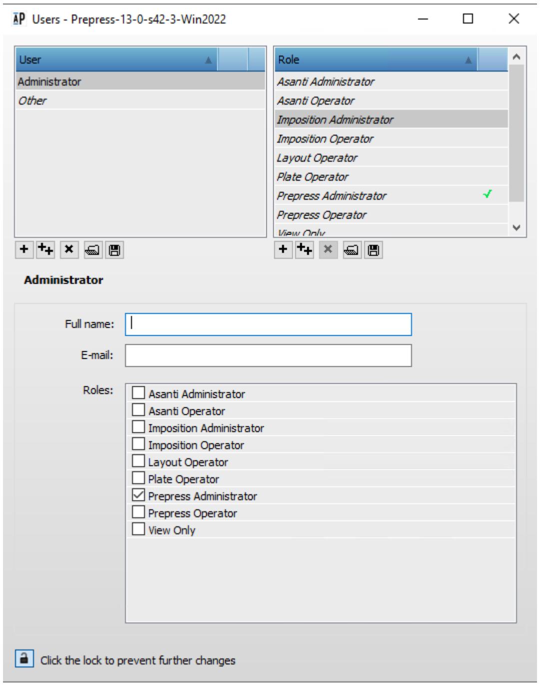
Select the Apogee System in the Hardware pane to see the Users icon in the Resources pane. Double-click the Users icon to open the resource where you can create users and set their roles with detailed privileges.

User Settings

User list

Administrators can add and delete users in this list. Select a user in the list to see personal details and the assigned roles in the details pane under this list. One or more roles can be assigned and these are also indicated with a green check mark in the Role list. Assigning more than one role to a user allows further flexibility for user management. The names of the users in the Users column corresponds with the login names for your organization.

Figure 9.29: User details



NOTE: A role indicated in red in the details pane means that the role was deleted while it was still assigned to a user.

Role list

Each role is a collection of privileges which are displayed in the Privileges tab. Several default roles are provided and these appear in the list in italics. These default roles each have a set of predefined privileges which are relevant for these specific roles. If necessary, these roles can be duplicated and the privileges fine-tuned, or new roles can be created from scratch.

The default roles are the following:

Asanti/Prepress Operator You have access to the main job commands (except Edit Imposition) and to selected Task Processor resources.

Asanti/Prepress Administrator In addition to most job commands, you also have access to administration and system privileges; you can create and edit Task Processor Parameter Sets and ticket templates, and view and manage resources.

Privileges tab

Selecting a role in the Role list displays a breakdown of privileges in the Privileges tab. Privileges are grouped in the following categories:

Job Operations Commands you can perform on tickets.

Prepress Administration Commands for managing Task Processors and licensing

System Resources Commands for managing system resources.

Task Processor Resources A list of all the Task Processors.

Client Display Options Use these options to show/hide specified windows or resources in the Apogee client.

Expand a category to display the privileges.

Edit Filter button Opens the Job Filter where you can fine-tune the privileges even further by specifying a filter to show/hide certain jobs in the Job List for the selected role. For example: user John has the role of Prepress Operator Plant A and can only see jobs whose Job Name contains ‘Plant A’. User Bill has the role of Prepress Operator Plant B and can only see jobs whose Job Name contains ‘Plant B’. See “Filtering the Job List” on page 239. This filter is set for a role so it can be re-used for all users with this role.

Delete Filter button To delete a filter you may have set on a role.

Figure 9.30: Privileges for a typical Administrator role

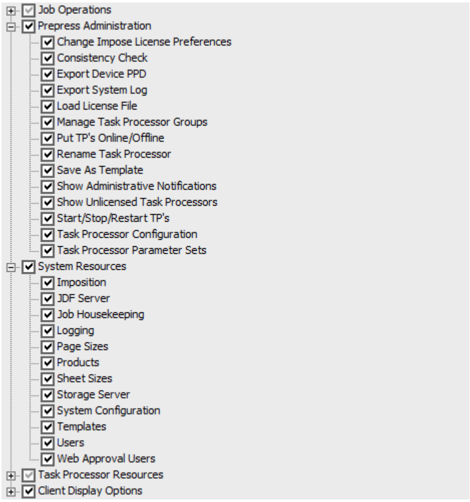
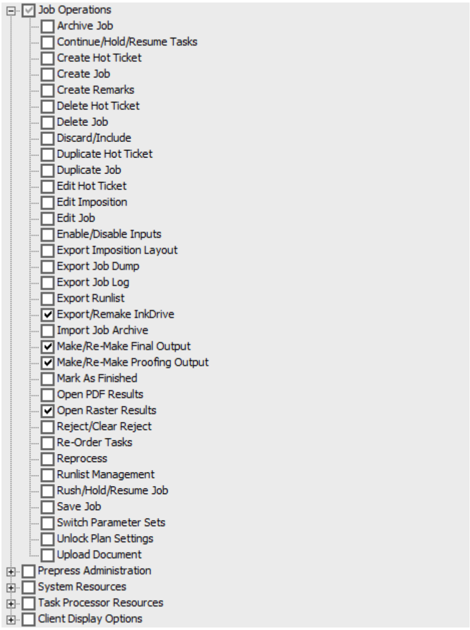


Figure 9.31: Privileges for a typical Operator role

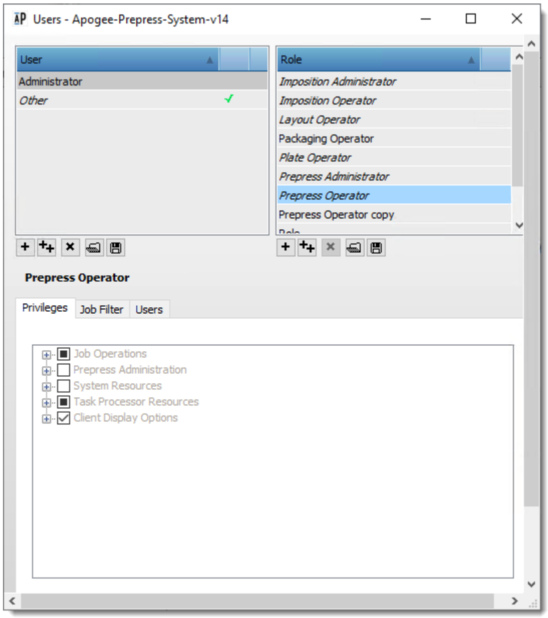


The listed privileges refer to the ability to perform tasks or access resources in Apogee. Privileges can be selected individually within a category or at the category level. If all the privileges are selected within a category, the check mark is black, otherwise it's gray.

User tab

This tab is also used in combination with the Role list. Select a role in the Role list to see which users have been assigned this role.

Figure 9.32: Users displayed in the User list and User tab for a selected role



StorageServer

The StorageServer icon is displayed in the Resources pane when you select a Hardware or “Satellite” System in the Hardware pane. You can double-click this icon to display the StorageServer settings. This dialog box lists all of the available disks or partitions on the selected Hardware System.

Administrator access level only!

Each Hardware System has a Disk Storage resource, comprising two parts:

- Storage Sets: To configure the Storage Sets

- Disk Monitor: To monitor disk usage

What are Storage Sets?

A storage set is a collection of one or more disks or shared volumes that are kept synchronized. When the Apogee System writes a file to a storage set, the file is copied to all disks or volumes which belong to that set. This provides system *redundancy*: If any disk or volume in a set fails, the Apogee System notifies you and disables the failed disk/volume. This disk/volume will not be used again until you enable it. When you do this, the disk is again synchronized with the other disks/volumes in the set. Whenever Apogee needs a file, it searches through every enabled disk in the set until one returns the required file. Normally, the first disk will return the file, so there is very little impact on performance.

If you add a disk or volume to a storage set, it is immediately synchronized with the other disks/volumes in the set.

Each storage set you define can handle only one of the following data types:

- Temporary data
- System files and resources
- PDF and Postscript files
- Raster files

You can define multiple storage sets to handle the same type of data. This increases the total disk capacity, and allows Apogee to alternately write data to each of the storage sets in turn (for example, writing C, M, Y, K separations to different sets).

Disk Storage Settings

The Disk Storage dialog box comprises two tabs which allow you to configure storage sets and monitor disk usage.

Storage Sets

This tab shows all storage sets, the disks or volumes in each set, and the kind of files it can receive. You can add, edit and delete storage sets using the buttons below the list (see “To create a new storage set” on page 493).

Storage Set The name of the disk or volume which contains the storage set.

Sys A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store system data only.

Temp A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store temporary or scratch data only.

PDF A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store PDF data only.

Raster A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store raster data only.

New button Click this button to create a new Storage Set, as described in “To create a new storage set” on page 493.

Edit button Click this button to access the Storage Set Editor, where you can view or modify the setup of the selected storage set.

Delete button Click this button to delete the selected Storage Set. Note that you cannot delete a Storage Set unless there is an alternative Storage Set available to take over the storage of each type of data held in the Storage Set.

Storage Set Editor

This dialog box allows you to view or modify the setup of the selected storage set. You can add and edit storage sets using the buttons below the list (see “To create a new storage set” on page 493).

Files to store

Select the necessary check boxes to indicate which data can be stored on the disk.

Apogee Prepress system data and resources This data is essential to keep Apogee active. The data also includes resources such as fonts, halftone screens or calibration curves.

Apogee Prepress temporary data Various system components and Task Processors need this data to be able to write during their processing tasks.

PDF and Postscript files These are the files generated by the Normalizer and stored in the Page Store.

Raster files These are the high-resolution raster files that need to be sent to the output devices. Generally, you store these files on any Hardware System that hosts the Render Task Processor.

CAUTION: Once Apogee has some data stored on the disk, you can no longer clear the check box corresponding to this data type. The check box will be activated only when there is no longer any Apogee data left on the disk.
If you clear the check box while Apogee is writing to the disk, you will get a warning dialog box telling you that the check box has been selected again.

▷ To create a new storage set

1 From the Disk Storage dialog box, select the Storage Sets tab.

2 Double-click a storage set entry, or select it and click the Edit button.

This opens the Storage Set Editor.

You will also see a set of check boxes at the top of the dialog box, and a set of buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.

3 Click the New button.

A Select Disk dialog box is displayed.

4 Select a local disk or enter a UNC shared volume name, and click OK.

The dialog box is closed. The new storage set appears in the list.

▷ To edit a storage set

1 From the Disk Storage dialog box, select the Storage Sets tab.

2 Double-click a storage set entry, or select it and click the Edit button.

This opens the Storage Set Editor.

You will also see a set of check boxes at the top of the dialog box, and a set of buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.

3 Select the local disk or shared volume, and click the Edit button.

A Select Disk dialog box is displayed.

4 Select a different local disk or enter a UNC shared volume name, and click OK.

The dialog box is closed. The updated storage set appears in the list.

5. Select the file types you want to store on the storage set by clicking the appropriate check boxes.
6. Click Enable, and then click OK.

   The Storage Set Editor is closed. Your new settings are displayed in the Disk Storage dialog box.

▷ To delete a storage set

1. From the Disk Storage dialog box, select the Storage Sets tab
2. Double-click a storage set entry, or select it and click the Edit button.

   This opens the Storage Set Editor.

   You will also see a set of check boxes at the top of the dialog box, and a set of buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.
3. Check that an alternate storage set is available to take over storage of the data from the set you are going to delete.
4. Select a storage set, and click the Delete button.

   A confirmation dialog box is displayed.
5. Click OK to confirm deletion.

NOTE: You cannot delete a storage set unless there is an alternate storage set available to take over the storage of each type of data.

Disk Monitor

This tab monitors the disk usage for all local disks and shared volumes.

Disk or Shared Volume Lists the disks or shared volumes you are using.

Capacity Displays the formatted capacity of the disk.

Sys A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store system data.

Temp A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store temporary or scratch data.

PDF A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store PDF data.

Raster A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store raster data.

SQL Indicates on which disk the database is installed.

Amount Used Indicates the amount of disk space (capacity) used by Apogee. For each disk, a bar displays the used amount in a solid color. For disks that are used for other purposes, the color is slightly faded out.

The bar of the largest disk fills the column width. The other bars are scaled proportionally.

The color of the bar changes when the used amount exceeds a certain limit:

- Green: There is sufficient storage space left.
- Orange: The warning level has been reached.
- Red: The critical level has been exceeded.

NOTE: The warning and critical levels are shown on the bar by two small markers. The first marker is the warning level: the second marker is the critical level.

Free The Free column shows the free disk capacity in absolute numbers and percentages.

Status Indicates the status of the disk or shared volume.

Edit button Click this button to access the Watermarks Editor, where you can specify free disk space warning and critical levels.

Enable button Select a Disk or Shared Volume, and click the Enable button to allow this disk or volume to be used by Apogee.

Configuring Your Task Processors

By double-clicking the configuration icon in the Resources pane for each selected Task Processor, you can access and edit the Configuration settings. For most Task Processors, this is only possible at service level.

Service access level only!

▷ To work with Configurations

1. From the Apogee Navigation Bar, select System Overview.
2. Select the Task Processor for which you want to access the Configuration.

   The Resources associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.
3. Double-click the Configuration icon in the Resources pane.

   The Configuration dialog box appears.
4. Select the settings of your choice and/or enter any required information.
5. Click OK to close the Configuration dialog box.

   The settings are immediately active.

Managing Parameter Sets

Parameter Sets are predefined Task Processor settings that you can use when creating a Production Plan in the Ticket Editor. You can access and manage your Parameter Sets from the System Overview by selecting a Task Processor, and then double-clicking the Parameter Sets icon in the Resources pane.

You can also create or edit Parameter Sets from the Settings pane in the Plan tab.

▷ To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Parameter Sets

Administrator access level only!

1. From the System Overview, select the Task Processor whose Parameter Sets you want to work with.

   The Resources associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.
2. Double-click the Parameter Sets icon in the Resources pane.

   The Parameter Sets dialog box appears.

At the top of this dialog box, you will see one or more icons. These icons represent the operations of the selected Task Processor. For most Task Processors, there is a single operation. However, some Task Processors (such as Render or any Output Task Processor) have two or more operations. Each operation has its own individual Parameter Set(s).

Below this, you will see a list of available Parameter Sets for the selected Task Processor operation. Here, you will see at least an “initial” Parameter Set, as well as any additional Parameter Sets that may have been created.

You will also see a set of icons at the bottom of the dialog box.

You can use these icons to create, duplicate, edit, set as default, delete, import or export Parameter Sets for the selected Task Processor.

To create a new Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select one of the Task Processor operation icons.

  If there is only one operation, then this is selected by default.

2 Click the New button.

  A new untitled dialog box is displayed

3 Enter a unique name for the new Parameter Set, and select your settings.

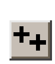
  For detailed information about these settings, refer to the description of the selected Task Processor.

4 Click OK to save your settings.

  The dialog box is closed. The new Parameter Set appears in the list.

To duplicate a Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set and click the Duplicate button:

  A copy of the Parameter Set is added to the list. The new Parameter Set takes the name of the original Parameter Set, appended with the word **copy**.

To edit a Parameter Set

1. In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set and double-click it or click the Edit button:

2. Make any changes you require, and click OK to save your settings.

To set a default Parameter Set

1. In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set from the list and click the Default button:

   The default Parameter Set is highlighted in bold.

To delete a Parameter Set

1. In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set from the list and Press Delete or click the Delete button:

2. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

NOTE: For every Task Processor, there are predefined initial settings. You cannot delete these.

To import a Parameter Set

1. In the Parameter Sets dialog box, click the Import button.

2. Locate the folder which contains the Parameter Set you want to import.

   This will be a Parameter Set that was previously exported. This file will be in MIME format (*.mime).

3. Click Open.

   The imported Parameter Set is displayed in the list.

To export a Parameter Set

You may want to export a Parameter Set for use by another Apogee System, or in order to have a temporary backup file.

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set from the list and click the Export button.

2 Locate the folder to which you want to export the Parameter Set, and click OK.

The Parameter Set is exported as a MIME format file (*.mime).

Managing Resources

For each Task Processor displayed in the System Overview window, you can access the associated Resource categories by selecting the Task Processor icon. Any Resource categories associated with the selected Task Processor are then displayed in the Resources Pane. For information on individual Resources, see “Task Processor Resources” on page 355.

▷ To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Resources

You can manage your Resources in a number of ways. These procedures are similar for most Resource categories.

1 From the System Overview window, select (single-click) the Task Processor whose Resources you want to work with.

The Resource categories associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.

2 Double-click the Resource category of your choice.

The Resources that are available in this category are displayed in a new Resource category dialog box.

You will also see a set of icons at the bottom of the dialog box.

You can use these icons to create, duplicate, edit, set as default, delete, import or export Resources within the selected Resource category.

NOTE: The icons and actions that are available vary from resource to resource.

▷ To create a new Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, click the New button:

A new untitled Resource dialog box is displayed.

2 Enter a name for the new Resource, and specify the Resource settings.

3 Click OK to save your settings.

The Resource dialog box is closed. The new resource appears in the list of Resources in the Resource category dialog box.

▷ To duplicate a Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, click the Duplicate button:

A copy of the Resource is added to the list. The new Resource takes the name of the original Resource, appended with the word **copy**.

▷ To edit a Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and click the Edit button:

2 Make any changes you require, and click OK to save your settings.

The Resource dialog box is closed.

▷ To set a default Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and click the Default button:

The default Resource is highlighted in bold.

▷ To delete a Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and Press Delete or click the Delete button:

Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

NOTE: You cannot delete the standard system resources.

▷ To import a new Resource to a Resource category

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, click the Import from file button:

An Open file dialog box is displayed. In the files of type list, the relevant file suffix for the type of file you want to import is selected (e.g. *.mime for color books).

2 Browse to the location of the Resource you want to import, select the Resource file, and click Open.

The Resource is imported, and is displayed in the list of Resources.

If the imported Resource is a “dedicated” Resource (such as a Press Profile), you will see the following icon next to the Resource in the list:

NOTE: Dedicated Resources are linked uniquely to a specific device: They are not shared between other devices of the same type. Some Resources are always shared between similar Task Processors, and others are always dedicated.

▷ To export a Resource

You may want to export a Resource for use by another Apogee System, or in order to have a temporary backup file.

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and click the Export button.

2 Locate the folder to which you want to export the Resource, and click OK.

The Resource is exported as a MIME format file (*.mime).

CHAPTER 10

Print Task Processors

Print Task Processors represent the printing devices on which you will print the output generated by Apogee. Each printing device that you define at installation will be represented by a unique Print Task Processor.

The settings and resources for installed Print Task Processors can be derived from the following task processors:

- “Generic SD (Sign and Display)” on page 504 for wide format presses such as Anapurna, and Jeti.

Generic SD (Sign and Display)

The Generic SD Task Processor represents a wide format press, for which you can define settings for specific job requirements.

Associated Resources

When you select the Generic SD Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Alignment Pin Sets, Contrast Adjustments, Curves Adjustments, Color Books, Finishing Hub, Marks, Media Hub, Profiles, Device Link Profiles, Print Modes

Generic SD Printer – Image Settings

The Image settings mainly control the rendering of the pages. You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 496). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Separation Output and Order

Specify which separations should be output, and in which order. The initial sort order places the process colors on top, in the same order as specified by the job’s color space. Spot colors come after the process colors, sorted alphabetically. You can reorder the separation order with the Up and Down arrows or by dragging and dropping.

These check boxes are only accessible when the 'Application Decides' check box is deselected in the Separation settings (Hot Tickets only). If 'Application Decides' is selected, you can make no changes to the separation output and order: This is then controlled by the settings of the input document (as generated by a front end application, such as Quark).

NOTE: Process colors are not listed if there is no Press Task Processor in the Production Plan or if you are editing a Parameter Set.

Image

Reading You need to set the Reading yourself because Apogee does not know what media is used for the print job. The preview icon on the right dynamically reflects the chosen state.

Reading: Determines the mirror setting of the image to be output:

- Right Reading
- Wrong Reading

Orientation You can select one of the four standard orientations (0, 90, 180, 270). You can also select the Optimized option to have Apogee select a specific orientation to avoid as much medium waste as possible. If you selected the "Select Automatically" check box, the Orientation is automatically set to "From Output Size", and you will need to specify horizontal and vertical positioning.

Border You can select a predefined border from the drop-down list as defined in the Border Resource category. Select None if you do not want to have a border at all.

You can enter text as a comment in the Slug Lines section. If the selected border contains the comment marks, the text will be printed. If not, it will be ignored.

CAUTION: You cannot select a border containing border marks as the plate size is not known.

Output Size You can select a predefined output size. You either do this manually or have Apogee do it for you according to the page or sheet size and the border.

If you choose to do it manually, select one of the available output sizes, or select <Manual from input> or <Manual from media> from the drop-down list.

Manual from input: The output size is calculated from the page/sheet size and selected border in the pages of the incoming documents. The resulting Output Size is not displayed in the list.

Manual from media: The output size is calculated from the media size. This is only relevant if a specific media is selected.

Select Automatically Select this check box to activate automatic selection. Apogee will then take the orientation from the predefined Output Size - you cannot change this.

Fallback Here, you can select a fallback output size in case the input has no output size specified.

Position Image within Output Size **Horizontal**: Choose Center, or specify an offset in mms.

Vertical: Choose Center, or specify an offset in mms.

Scale content Use scaling to scale the page content. This does not scale the border, but marks that are relative to the sheet are repositioned and not scaled.

From the drop-down list, you can turn scaling off, or you can do the scaling manually by selecting Manual. This activates the following settings:

Width and Height You can specify the scaling percentages for width and height scaling.

- For pages, Width and Height have their starting point in the lower left corner. Width goes along the bottom edge and Height along the left edge.
- For imposed flats, Width is along the gripper edge and Height along the side edge.

Constrain proportions Select the Constrain Proportions option if you want to keep both values equal. Selecting this option will copy the horizontal scale value into the vertical scale field.

Clip This option specifies what will happen if the image is bigger than the output size.

Clip image: Any areas of the image that fall outside the output size are clipped.

Notify: The job will fail with a user interaction notification. The notification specifies the image and output sizes, and provides a 'Clip and Continue' option.

Base imaging on This option specifies how images will be clipped:

Trimbox: The image is clipped to the Trimbox size.

All content: The image is clipped to the Mediabox size.

Slug Lines

In this pane you can enter up to four comments that can be part of a border. These comments are held in the variables $COMMENT1, $COMMENT2, $COMMENT3 and $COMMENT4.

Each comment can contain one or more variables such as $DATE or $COMPANY. The comment variables themselves, however, cannot be part of the comment.

For example: Comment 1: Printed by PrintRite on $DATE for $COMPANY.

Generic SD Printer – Print Settings

The Print settings define the media you will print on, the quality of printing, and various other options. These settings are specified when preparing the job in the Layout Editor. See “Layout Editor” on page 59.

APPENDIX

A

Icons Overview

This section contains a list of icons that appear in the user interface.

Layout Editor and Product Editor

Product Status


The design of the product has a contour-defining operation (other than the frame or trim-box).


The product is double-sided.

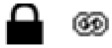

At least one of the product’s artworks was rejected. In addition, the thumbnail of the rejected artwork is shown with a red diagonal line.

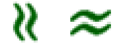

At least one of the product’s artworks has remarks other than rejected.

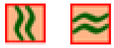

At least one of the product’s artworks could not be aligned to the design.


At least one of the product’s artworks could not be aligned to the design with great confidence.


The product is placed in a frame with a different size, unless the frame has an embedded design.


The product is Locked or Uniform.


The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute and there are no placed instances that violate that requirement.


The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute, but at least one placed instance violates that requirement.


The product has white content, either from the artwork or generated.


The product has varnish content, either from the artwork or generated.


The product has primer content, either from the artwork or generated.


The image is being edited via an external editor.


Indicates that full-gamut color management is applied.


‘F’ shows the effects of the rotation and mirror attributes (here shown with 90 degrees rotation and no mirroring).


Indicates a preflight report has been generated for the image.


Image preview has been generated (gray) or is being processed (green).


Color adjustments (saturation, contrast, curves) have been made in Preview.

The product has Image Operations that prevent changing the product's size (tiling, canvas extensions, etc.).

There is a notification or snag message present on the product. The icon depicts the severity of the status: error, warning or intervention required.

Colors Inspector

The color will be printed/output ('Print as' check box selected).

The color will not be printed/output ('Print as' check box not selected).

The color is a process color or will be printed as a process color.

The color is a spot color, varnish or white.

The color is mapped to a color from a color book.

The color is taken from the application.

The color is mapped to a finishing operation.

The color is mapped to a custom color.

The color is mapped automatically as defined for the colors of the device.

The color is mapped to and depends on another color in the list.

Tools

Selection tool: To select a component or area and display its properties. This is the default tool.

Single Instance Selection tool: To select a single instance of marks which are placed at various locations, or part of a compound mark. In the Paths inspector: selects a path and its anchor points.

Pan tool: To pan layouts in the Layout Editor.

Zoom tool: To zoom into a specific area of a layout.

Frame tool: To draw empty frames on a sheet.

Measurements tool: Use this tool to make measurements on the Press Sheet.


Clear Measurements tool (only activated, if the sheet has measurements): Click to remove all measurements displayed on the Press Sheet.


View Options palette button: Shows/hides the View Options palette.


Marks palette button: Shows/hides the Marks palette.


Presets (licensed feature): To open the Presets dialog box.


Item list: Shows/hides the Items window.


Crop image: Activates the crop mode to crop an image (Image inspector in the Product Editor).


Split tool: Activates the Split tool to split an image into tiles (Tiling inspector in the Product Editor).


Pen tool: Activates the Pen for drawing free-form paths on an image and adding/deleting points of existing paths (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).


Ellipse Path tool: Activates the Ellipse Path tool to draw ellipse and circle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).


Rectangle Path tool: Activates the Rectangle Path tool to draw rectangle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Zoom slider with Zoom to fit and Zoom to maximum buttons, and drop-down list with zoom presets.

Sheet Status


The sheet has a value that has overrules.


The sheet has no products.


The sheet is double-sided.


The sheet has a custom bleed mask.


The sheet has a custom bleed mask that needs to be reviewed.


The sheet is locked.

Sheet Layout

 Unlocked sheet layout/frame

 Locked sheet layout/frame

Mark Types

 Circle Mark: draws a circle with or without fill color.

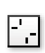
 File Mark: places a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark.

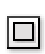
 Fotoba Mark: draws horizontal and vertical lines to enable cutting with a Fotoba cutting device.

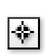
 Grommet Mark: draws sequential marks along the sides of an image or layout. These marks are printed on the layout and indicate where reinforced eyelets can be produced.

 Cutter Registration Mark: draws reference dots to enable cutting with X/Y cutting devices.

 Line Mark: draws a line.

 Crop Mark: a horizontal and a vertical line to indicate where the page has to be cropped.

 Rectangle Mark: draws a rectangle with or without fill color.

 Registration Mark: draws a series of marks which are used to check that the registration of the different printing colors is correct.

 Station Number Mark: indicates the station of an instance of a product, i.e. its position on the sheet.

 Text Mark: prints the job name, order number, color name, etc. on the Press Sheet.

 Color Bar Mark: generates a bar of color patches, using the colors that are present on the press sheet (offset and wide format) or in the product.

Mark Set Conditions

 Mark Set is always applied.

 Mark Set is only applied manually.

 Mark set is applied when all/some criteria are met.

 Mark set is applied partially (for example, mark deleted manually).

 None of the marks of the mark set are applied (for example, marks deleted manually).

Main Windows

Job Notification Icons

 The Asanti system issued a critical system message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

 The job has generated an information message.

Job Status Icons (including Page Store jobs)

 The job is being archived or dumped.

 The job is being imported from archive.

 The job is being deleted.

 Asanti is queuing all commands for this job.

 You are editing the Run List.

 The job is finished.

 The job was broken during editing. You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

 The job has been manually put on hold.

 The job is waiting for a Task Processor (none currently available).

 A group of results is complete, and is waiting to be printed (blue icon).

 The result is waiting for a Hard Proof.

 The job is waiting for a Soft Proof.

 A task has been aborted.

 The task has been manually put on hold.

 New (unplaced) documents are available in the (Private) Page Store.

 Not all the results of a group are yet available (green icon).

 The job is waiting for After Hours processing.

 Some results have been rejected by the user.

 The layout/imposition is not yet defined.

 The job has reached a Milestone: The Run List is not complete.

 The job has reached a Milestone: The job deadline has been reached.

 The job has reached a Milestone: The result is not available in time.

 A job that has been merged.

 A merged job. The job resulting from the merging of two or more other jobs.

 Job is a recurring job.

 A StoreFront job. The job was generated by StoreFront.

Job Status Icons in Tab Area (JTE only)


The job is being viewed by you or by another user (JTE only).


The job is being edited by another user.


You are editing the job.


The selected job was being edited by you or by another user, but the edit session was broken (Jobs window only). You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

Job List Icons


Job group


Commercial job with incomplete Run List.


Commercial job with complete Run List.


Rush job (Commercial jobs only).


Commercial job with disabled input channel.


Commercial job is scheduled to be archived when it is finished.


Commercial job has been archived.


Commercial job is scheduled to be deleted when it is finished.


Commercial job has been deleted.


Commercial job is scheduled to be archived and deleted when it is finished.


Commercial job has been archived and deleted.

Hot List Icons

Commercial Hot Ticket

Commercial Hot Ticket with a disabled input channel.

Job that requires set-up by Printer (WebApproval jobs only).

Collecting Hot Tickets (tickets grouped in separate panel).

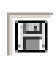
Flow Icons

Main Output to a high resolution output device.

Main Output to a Wide Format output device.

Imposition Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to an imposition proofing device.

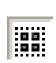
Page Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to a page proofing device.



Export: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for exporting job results to file in PDF or PostScript format.

Public Page Store: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for storing job results in a Public Page Store.

Display: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used to create job results for high-resolution soft proofing.



Digital Quick Strip (DQS): An alternate mode of operation which supports the PrintDrive DQS mode of Apogee Series3. In this mode, Asanti creates and renders the flat backgrounds and pages separately. These are then sent as separate items to PrintDrive. PrintDrive assembles the pages onto the backgrounds, and then outputs the results as an integral job.

Collecting Hot Ticket: Uses the Collect TP to collect images and create special Hot Tickets.

Flow Icon Color Coding

A white background color indicates that this flow is idle.

A green background color indicates that this flow is currently active.

A blue background color indicates that this flow is on hold.

 A yellow background color indicates that this flow contains tasks which are queued and waiting to be processed.

 A white background color with a green checkmark indicates that this flow has finished.

 A red background color indicates that this flow has generated an error.

Filter Buttons

 Job Filter is not applied.

 Job Filter is applied.

Flow Control Actions

 Discard

 Soft Proof

 Collect for Output

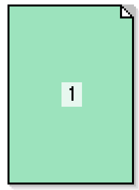
Result Actions

 Keep Result

 Archive Result

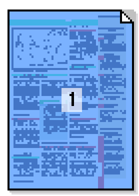
 Milestone

Results - Job Layout Thumbnails

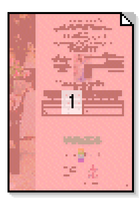


A thumbnail view of this page is either not available, or is currently being retrieved from the Asanti System (green background color).

Page has been processed successfully (no background color).

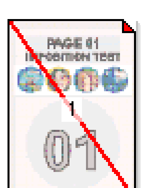


Page has been processed successfully, and is on hold pending approval (blue background color).



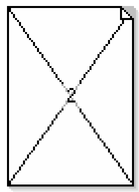
Page has been processed with errors (red background color).

Page is managed by the PlateMaker Client, and is ready to plate (purple background color).

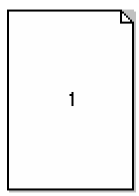


Page has been processed successfully, but has been rejected.

Page has been discarded.



An empty page in the Run List (white background with a cross).



A blank page in the Run List (white background).

Results - Data Indicators

The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The page/flat has been rendered, and is ready for output.

The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The check mark indicates that it has been successfully printed.

A square gray-colored indicator in the lower right corner of the page indicates that all separations have been fully rendered and are ready for previewing or output. Visible for DQS and Raster Impose results when you choose View > Show > Page Rendered.

A small fold in a corner of a page indicates the orientation. The position of the fold tells you where the top of the page is.The orientation of a page may vary in an imposition layout.

The job or flow is finished.

Results - Job Layout Action Icons

The job's Production Plan contains an After Hours Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending the specified time.

The job's Production Plan contains a Soft Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/rejection of a Digital Film preview by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Hard Copy Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/ rejection of a hard copy proof by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Ready for Plating Action. When this point is reached, the job results are taken over and managed by PlateRunner (ready to plate).

The job's Production Plan contains a Collect for Output Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending user intervention.

The job's Production Plan contains a Waiting for Results Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the target flow or required pages are finished.

The job's Production Plan contains a Discard Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the specified pages have been automatically discarded.

Results - Job Layout Action Icon Status

The page or flat has not yet reached this Action.

The page or flat has reached this Action (blue background).

The page or flat has passed this Action (dimmed icon).

Results - Separation/ Composite Indicators in a Normal job

Square outlined separation indicator:

- A process color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). In this example, it is the magenta separation.
- The background is available for an Asanti DQS job.

Square solid separation indicator: A process color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

Checked separation indicator: The separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

Dimmed separation indicator: The separation has been discarded, and will not be output.

Round outlined separation indicator: A spot color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). The outline color is the color of the expected spot color.

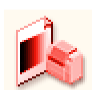
Round solid separation indicator: A spot color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. The solid color is the spot color.

Checked separation indicator: The spot color separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output.

Task Processor Color Coding

The Task Processor is ready, and is currently idle.

The Task Processor turns green when it is processing a task. For example, the Avantra Task Processor is busy processing a separation.



The Task Processor turns red if a processing error occurs. In this case an error notification is sent to the Message Board, explaining the nature of the error.

The Task Processor turns blue if it is offline.

When the Task Processor has been stopped (inactive), the icon will have horizontal stripes running through it. You can re-activate it by context-clicking on the icon and selecting Start from the context menu.

The Task Processor is starting up (moving horizontal stripes).

The Task Processor is locked, because you do not have a license to use it.

A purple arrow is attached to the Task Processor icon if:

- You have a remote license. This means that this Task Processor is not licensed to execute tasks: These tasks are processed remotely on another Asanti System. However, you can use this Task Processor to specify the settings in the Production Plan.
- A remote proofer is installed (as specified in the installer). The remote proofer is combined with the Remote Proofer Controller Task Processor.

Output Task Processor Hardware Status

Paused: The output engine is able to communicate, but cannot process any tasks. A user interaction has taken place on the device itself to trigger this status.

Disconnected: The output engine’s cable has been unplugged.

Warning: The hardware engine requires attention (e.g. ink low), but can still receive tasks.

This platesetter is managed by PlateRunner. The yellow ‘sun’ patch indicates that the device is in attended state (i.e., a user is logged in to the PlateRunner application).

This platesetter is managed by PlateRunner. The gray ‘moon’ patch indicates that the device is in unattended state (i.e., no one is logged in to the PlateRunner application).

Error: The hardware engine requires attention. It cannot continue to receive and process tasks until the problem has been resolved (e.g., no ink).

Resource Status Icons

Media: The icon is followed by a name: There is a cassette in the tray but it is not loaded (not active). However, it can be activated by Asanti. If the name is in bold, the cassette is loaded (active).

Media: The icon is followed by a name: There is a cassette in the tray but it is not loaded (not active). However, it cannot be activated by Asanti (manual intervention on the engine is required).

Media: There is no cassette in the tray.

Media: There is an unknown problem with the tray.

Dedicated Resource linked uniquely to a specific device: This Resource is not shared between other devices of the same type.

Asanti Archive Icons in Windows Explorer

Archived Commercial job (.arch)

Archived Public Page Store job (.arch)

Asanti Ticket Icons in Windows Explorer

Saved Commercial Job Ticket (.ajt)

Saved Commercial Hot Ticket (.aht)

Asanti Toolbar

Submit job or submit changes to a job.

Delete the selected item.

Edit job.

View <selected item> (Job Ticket Editor only).

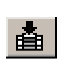
Make Blank (page in Run List - Job Ticket Editor only).

Hold job, or put device offline (System Overview).

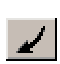
Resume a job on hold, or put device online (System Overview).

Continue processing <selected item>.

Reprocess job from first.



Re-image <selected item>.

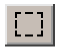


Enables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).

Disables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).

Display information about <selected item>.

Preview Palette Tools



Marquee tool: Allows you to draw a rectangle in the Preview window by clicking and dragging. The ink values for the selected region are measured and displayed in the Inks palette.

Hand tool: Pans the image, allowing you to view a page that exceeds the size of the Preview window. With this tool selected, click inside the Preview window and drag the image around.

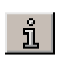
Zoom tool: Zooms in to the next zoom level in the Preview window. You can zoom out by holding down the Alt key. Alternatively, you can click and drag to zoom into a specified area.

Measure tool: Measures raster angles, and distances between the raster points. You can also use it to calculate the line ruling of a separation.

Next tool: Displays the next side result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Front > Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Front > Cover Sig 2 Back etc.). If you hold down the 'C' key while clicking the tool, Asanti displays the next sheet result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Back > Cover Sig 3 Back).

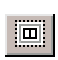
Previous tool: Displays the previous side result. If you hold down the 'C' key while clicking the tool, Asanti displays the previous sheet result.

Turn Sheet tool: If your results have 2 sides (front and back), Raster Preview can switch between the two sides. Click this tool (Ctrl-T) to toggle the view (front or back). This tool is disabled if the result only contains one side.



Info tool: Displays information about the selected item.

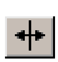
Light Table tool: Displays or hides blended front and back views of your raster data. This feature only works on the front and backs of the same signature/page.



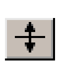
Rule-Ups tool: Displays or hides additional layers of information on top of the Raster Preview image. The Rule/ups palette contains a table which lists the layers you can display.

Rotate clockwise tool: Rotates the current view 90 degrees clockwise.

Rotate counterclockwise tool: Rotates the current view 90 degrees counterclockwise.



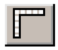
Flip vertical tool: Flips the current view vertically.



Flip horizontal tool: Flips the current view horizontally.

Invert tool: Inverts the current view (negative).

 Color Managed tool: Activates color-managed raster preview. This allows you to preview the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space (based on ICC profiles).

 Show/Hide rulers tool: Shows/Hides ruler coordinates in the units set in your Preferences.

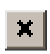
 Show/Hide grid lines tool: Shows/Hides grid lines for every major and minor division of the ruler. The default setting is specified in your Preferences.

Other Buttons

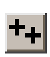
 Task Processor Settings lock

 Edit

 Create New

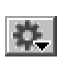
 Delete

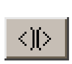
 Set as default

 Duplicate

 Export

 Import

 Auto-fill (Versioning): Automatically fills the version table either with the names of the PDF layers or the names of the documents in the Page Store.

 Insert variable

Customer Contact

 Approver

 Uploader

 Viewer

 Candidate CSR (Customer Service Representative)

 Preferred CSR (Customer Service Representative)

 PrintSphere account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

 PrintSphere account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

APPENDIX B

Keyboard Shortcuts

This section lists the shortcut keys that can be used on Windows workstations.

Layout Editor and Product Editor

Menu Shortcuts

To	Press
Add Product	CTRL + SHIFT + O
Place CAD Layout	CTRL + ALT + O
Get Info	CTRL + I
Show Preflight Report	CTRL + E
Open in Production Center	CTRL + SHIFT + M
Open in Supplementary Files	CTRL + SHIFT + U
Submit	CTRL + SHIFT + G
Undo last action	CTRL + Z
Redo last undone action	CTRL + Y
Remove selected object(s) and store in clipboard	CTRL + X
Copy selected object(s) to pasteboard	CTRL + C
Paste contents of pasteboard: frame or group onto a sheet, separation on a product.	CTRL + V
Delete selected object(s)	Del
Place additional copy of the placed items on the sheet in the next available position. If there is not enough room, the items will be added into a new sheet.	CTRL + D
Step and Repeat	CTRL + ALT + S
Create or Edit Grid	CTRL + ALT + G
Select All	CTRL + A
Select None	CTRL + SHIFT + A
Group the selected items	CTRL + G
Ungroup the selected items	CTRL + U
Auto-Layout Products	CTRL + N
New Empty Sheet Layout/Printer Layout	CTRL + SHIFT + N
Rearrange frames on a sheet layout/sheet layouts on a printer layout	CTRL + SHIFT + F
Rearrange all frames in job	CTRL + ALT +SHIFT + F
Reapply marks	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + M
Reapply all mark sets in Job	CTRL + SHIFT + M
Fix bleed overlaps	CTRL + ALT + M
Zoom into layout	CTRL + + OR CTRL + mouse wheel

To	Press
Zoom out of layout	CTRL + - OR CTRL + mouse wheel
Zoom to fit layout in window	CTRL + 0 (zero)
Display the System Overview	CTRL + 1
Display the Jobs window	CTRL + 2
Open the Paper Stock	CTRL + ALT + 1
Open the Finishing Hub	CTRL + ALT + 2
Open the Mark Engraver	CTRL + ALT + 3
Open the Sheet Sizes	CTRL + ALT + 4
Open the Page Sizes	CTRL + ALT + 5
Open the Color Books	CTRL + ALT + 6
Open the Sheet Layout Templates	CTRL + ALT + 7
Align pin sets	CTRL + ALT + 8
Show/hide the Remarks List	CTRL + SHIFT + R
Show/hide the Snag List	CTRL + R
Show/hide View Options	CTRL + SHIFT + E
Show/hide Presets	CTRL + SHIFT + P
Show/hide Inspector Panel	CTRL + SHIFT + I
Show/hide Product Panel	CTRL + ALT + I
Open the Job Set-up Inspector	ALT + 1
Open the Frame/Product Inspector	ALT + 2
Open the Color Inspector	ALT + 3
Open the Mark Sets Inspector	ALT + 4
Open the Sheet Layout Inspector	ALT + 5

▷ Placing and arranging images on a sheet

NOTE: Some of these shortcuts can also be used for placing sheets on printer layouts.

To	Drag the image and
Place one or more images at the cursor position without ganging them.	Hold SHIFT and release
Switch between snapping to margins (magenta snap guides) and snapping to edges (blue snap guides).	Press ALT
Restrain movement horizontally and vertically.	Hold SHIFT
Cancel the image placement.	Press ESC
Rotate one or more images 90° counterclockwise, while moving them.	Press space bar once

To	Drag the image and
Copy a selected image.	Press CTRL + C
Paste a copied image.	Press CTRL + V
Center an image on the current sheet or on a new sheet if the current one is not empty. Multiple selected images are centered on individual sheets.	Press C
Center an image on the current sheet even if it is not empty. Multiple selected images are centered on individual sheets.	Press SHIFT + C
Duplicate one or more selected images according to the copy count and gang the images on the current and new sheets.	Press N
Duplicate one or more selected images according to the copy count and gang the images on the current and new sheets but starting at the cursor position.	Press SHIFT + N
Duplicate one or more selected images according to the copy count and center the images on the current sheet if empty and on new sheets.	Press N + C or Press SHIFT + N + C
Duplicate the selected image and fill the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each image if multiple images are selected.	Press F
Duplicate a selected image and gang the images with existing images on the current sheet to fill the sheet. Selecting multiple images fills multiple sheets.	Press SHIFT + F
Duplicate the selected image and fill and center on the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each image if multiple images are selected.	Press F + C or Press SHIFT + F + C
Rotate the selected image or images clockwise.	Press R
Rotate the selected image or images counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + R
Mirror the selected image or images clockwise.	Press M
Mirror the selected image or images counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + M

Toolbar Shortcuts

To	Press
Selection tool: To select a component or area and display its properties. This is the default tool.	A
Single Instance Selection tool: To select a single instance of marks which are placed at various locations, or part of a compound mark. In the Paths inspector: selects a path and its anchor points.	D
Pan tool: To pan layouts in the Layout Editor.	H
Zoom tool: To zoom into a specific area of a layout.	Z
Frame tool: To draw empty frames on a sheet.	F
Measurements tool: Use this tool to make measurements on the Press Sheet.	ALT+M

To	Press
Clear Measurements tool (only activated, if the sheet has measurements): Click to remove all measurements displayed on the Press Sheet.	CTRL+ALT+M
View Options palette button: Shows/hides the View Options palette.	CTRL+SHIFT+E
Marks palette button: Shows/hides the Marks palette.	CTRL+M
Presets (licensed feature): To open the Presets dialog box.	CTRL+SHIFT+P
Crop image: Activates the crop mode to crop an image (Image inspector in the Product Editor).	K
Split tool: Activates the Split tool to split an image into tiles (Tiling inspector in the Product Editor).	K
Pen tool: Activates the Pen for drawing free-form paths on an image and adding/deleting points of existing paths (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).	P
Ellipse Path tool: Activates the Ellipse Path tool to draw ellipse and circle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).	L
Rectangle Path tool: Activates the Rectangle Path tool to draw rectangle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).	R
Zoom slider with Zoom to fit and Zoom to maximum buttons, and drop-down list with zoom presets.	CTRL +/-

Split Tool Shortcuts

Activate the Split tool by pressing K with the Tiling inspector selected. To control the splitting of tiles selected with the Split tool, use the following shortcuts.

To	Press
Change the splitting orientation (the magenta splitting line)	Space bar or TAB key once
Extend the splitting action across all tiles	Hold SHIFT
Repeat the split.	CTRL
Cancel the image splitting	ESC

Path Editing Shortcuts

In the Paths inspector, activate the Pen tool by pressing P, the Rectangle tool with R and the Ellipse tool with L. To draw paths with these tools, use the following shortcuts.

To	Press
Draw a square with the Rectangle tool	R
Draw a circle with the Ellipse tool	L

Positioning Toolbar Shortcuts

To control the Positioning toolbar when a tile is selected with Selection tool:

To	
Open the Split Tile dialog box	CTRL + U
Mirror the tile vertically when placed on a sheet	SHIFT + M
Mirror the tile horizontally when placed on a sheet	M
Rotate the tile clockwise in steps of 90°	SHIFT + R
Rotate the tile anticlockwise in steps of 90°	R
Merge the selected tiles	CTRL+ G
Place the cursor in the first Overlap box of the Positioning toolbar	O
Place the cursor in the first Gap box of the Positioning toolbar	G
Jump to next box in the Positioning toolbar	TAB

Jobs Window

Asanti Menu Shortcuts

The following Asanti menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Quit the Asanti Client.	ALT + F4
Display Preferences.	CTRL + ,

File Menu Shortcuts

The following File menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Open a new print layout.	CTRL + N
Close the current window. Close all windows.	ALT + F4
Save the current ticket (Ticket Editor only).	CTRL + S
Log on to an Asanti System, or to log off from one.	CTRL + K
Upload a document.	CTRL + U

Edit Menu Shortcuts

The following Edit menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Undo the last Cut, Copy, or Paste operation.	CTRL + Z
Delete the selected text, and copy it onto the clipboard.	CTRL + X
Copy the selected text onto the clipboard.	CTRL + C
Paste the contents of the clipboard at the selected location.	CTRL + V
Delete the current selection.	Delete
Edit the selected item.	CTRL + ENTER
Display the selected item using the default viewer.	ENTER
Edit job's imposition.	CTRL + SHIFT + ENTER
Duplicate a job.	CTRL + D
Merge Jobs.	CTRL + Y
Rename the selected item.	F2
Select all items in the current view.	CTRL + A
Deselect all items in the current view.	CTRL + SHIFT + A
Find in Page Store.	CTRL + ALT + F
Find the selected page in the Results pane.	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + F
Find plate identity.	CTRL + H
Put a blank page in the selected placeholder(s).	CTRL + B
Enter Run List position comments.	ALT + ;
Reverse Page Order.	CTRL + SHIFT + R
Preferences	CTRL + ,

Control Menu Shortcuts

The following Control menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Continue	CTRL + G

View Menu Shortcuts

The following View menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Display thumbnail images of all pages in the Job Layout pane	CTRL + SHIFT+ T
View Flats Only	CTRL + SHIFT + F
View Extra information	CTRL + T
Scale Small	CTRL + -
Scale to Actual Pixels, i.e., 1:1	CTRL + ALT + 0
Scale Large	CTRL + +
Scale Fit to Window	CTRL + 0
View Page Labels	CTRL + SHIFT + L
Display the run list indexes next to the numbers in run list	CTRL + SHIFT + N
View Extended Page Adjustments	CTRL + SHIFT + E
Show/hide Devices pane	CTRL + ALT + 1
Show/hide Job List pane	CTRL + ALT + 2
Show/hide Flow Activity pane	CTRL + ALT + 3

Raster Preview View Menu Shortcuts

The following Raster Preview menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Zoom In	+ or CTRL + +
Zoom Out	- or CTRL + -
Size to Fit	CTRL + 0
Show Actual Pixels	CTRL + ALT + 0
Toggle full screen mode	F or F11
Show Info	CTRL + I
Show / Hide Grid	CTRL + ALT + ‘
Next Sheet	Right arrow
Previous Side	Left arrow

To…	Press (Windows)
First Side	Home
Last Side	End
Turn Sheet	CTRL + T
Color-Managed	ALT + C
Light Table	ALT + L
Toggle depth-map mode	ALT + H
Toggle the Distortion mode	ALT + G
Display annotations	ALT + A
Toggle the display of the selected Rule-ups	ALT + R
Press Sheet	ALT + P
Device Output	ALT + D
Transform -> Rotate 90 CW	ALT + T
Transform -> Rotate 90 CCW	ALT + SHIFT + T
Transform -> Flip Horizontal	ALT + F
Transform -> Flip Horizontal	ALT + SHIFT + F
Invert	ALT + SHIFT + I

Raster Preview Scrolling and Full Screen mode Shortcuts

The following shortcut keys can be used for scrolling and enter/exit Full Screen mode.

NOTE: These shortcuts are not visualized in the **View** menu.

To…	Press (Windows)
Scroll up (no overlap with the previous view)	Page Up
Scroll down (no overlap with the previous view)	Page Down
Scroll up with a small step (with overlap of the previous view)	ALT + Page Up
Scroll down with a small step (with overlap of the previous view)	ALT + Page Down
Scroll left (no overlap with the previous view)	CTRL + Page Up
Scroll right (no overlap with the previous view)	CTRL + Page Down
Scroll left with a small step (with overlap of the previous view)	CTRL + ALT + Page Up

To...	Press (Windows)
Scroll right with a small step (with overlap of the previous view)	CTRL + ALT + Page Down
Scroll to the top left	CTRL + Home
Scroll to the bottom right	CTRL + End
Enter/exit Full Screen mode	F or F11 / F, F11, or ESC

Raster Preview Tool Toggle Shortcuts

The following Raster Preview tool toggle shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Toggle on/off the Marquee tool.	M
Toggle on/off the Hand tool.	H
Toggle on/off the Zoom tool.	Z
Toggle on/off the Measurement tool.	I

Window Menu Shortcuts

The following Window menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Display the System Overview.	CTRL + 1
Display the Jobs window.	CTRL + 3
Display the Message Board.	CTRL + 4
Display Info for <selected item>.	CTRL + I
Display Activity for <selected item>.	CTRL + J
Display Remarks.	CTRL + R
Display Problem Report for selected job.	CTRL + SHIFT + I
Display Preflight Report for selected job.	CTRL + E

Help Menu Shortcuts

The following Help menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Display the Asanti Help	F1
Display the What's This? Help	SHIFT + F1

APPENDIX C

System Variables

This section provides a list of all System variables. It also defines their syntax, and rules on how to use them.

Generic Variables

You can use variables in a number of different areas to replace parameter and resource settings. These variables are automatically replaced by a text string, or are assigned a text string.

Variable	Description
$COMMENTS	The “Remarks” field in the Administration tab.
$COMMENTS_1-10	The “n”-th paragraph of text in the Remarks field of the Administration tab. A paragraph is a single line of text, delimited by paragraph marks or by the start or end of the text.
$COMPANY	The “Company” field in the Customer Contact information.
$COMPUTER	The name of the Hardware System on which the current Task Processor (or service) is running.
$CONTACTFIRST	The “First” field of the customer’s contact person.
$CONTACTLAST	The “Last” field of the customer’s contact person.
$COPYCOUNT	The Requested Copy Count of an Image (Wide Format jobs only, sets number of copies of the part that is associated with that image).
$CPM	The Calibrated Printing Mode used for the job.
$CUTTER	The name of the cutting device set for the job.
$DATE	The current date (i.e. the date when the variable is resolved). Insert a space when combining this variable with other variables, e.g. \\$SYSTEMCOMPUTER\ArchiveRoot\$DATE:%Y%m \$JOB\
$DEVICE	The name of the output device.
$DOCUMENTPRODUCER	The producer of the (PDF) document.
$JOB	The “Job name” field in the Administration tab.
$JOBDATE	The date when the job was submitted.
$JOBID	A unique job identifier (intended mainly for internal use).
$JOBNR	A unique job sequence number.
$JOBTIME	The time when the job was submitted.
$MEDIANAME	The name of the media.
$MEDIATHICKNESS	The thickness of the media used.
$OPERATOR	The “Operator” field in the Administration tab.
$ORDER	The “Order number” field in the Administration tab. This is the “Name” field in the Hot Ticket Editor.
$OUTPUTSIZE	The size of the rendered image for a sheet/plate. For DQS, the size of the bounding box of all rendered elements on that sheet.
$PRESS	The name of the press.
$PRINTDATE	The date the job was printed.
$PRINTMODE	The date the job is printed (yyyymmdd). This format is best suited for creating pathnames that sort properly by name. It also follows the ISO guidelines for date and time formats.
$PRINTTIME	The time the job was printed.
$QUALITY	The output quality as specified in the Layout Editor.

Variable	Description
$RESOLUTION	The resolution of the image.
$RULINGMAP	Name of the RulingMap in case of Application screening, otherwise empty.
$RUNLENGTH	The run length of the job.
$SEPARATION	The color name of the separation.
$SHEET	Evaluates to $SIGNATURE for single or no web impositions. Evaluates to $SIGNATURE $WEB for multi-web impositions.
$SHEET_GRAIN	The grain of the sheet.
$SIDE	The Press Sheet side ("F" for Front, "B" for Back). Note that the SIDE variable maps either to the SIDE or the SIDEA Asanti variables, depending on the setting of the Imposition Service.
$SYSTEM	The name of the Asanti System.
$SYSTEMCOMPUTER	The name of the Hardware System.
$TIME	The current time (i.e. the time when the variable is resolved).
$WHITEMODE	The white application mode (pre-white, post-white or sandwich-white) used to print the white on the sheet/layout. Empty if no white.

NOTE: You can use a drop-down menu in the various contexts to see which variables are supported in which context.

You can also use system variables to automatically print information about a job, a template, or the part of a job that is being printed, since the information that prints varies from one sheet of media to the next.

Variable Syntax

This section explains the variable syntax, and describes how variables are interpreted and replaced by Asanti. Any variable that cannot be appropriately interpreted in a given context will be replaced by an empty string.

NOTE: Variables are case sensitive! For example, **$system** will not be recognized as the **$SYSTEM** variable: Instead, it will be interpreted as literal text.

Start and End

Variables always start with a dollar sign ($), immediately followed by the variable name. Any non-alphanumerical character (including space or tab) marks the end of the name.

NOTE: The RLPAGE variables that are used in the Run List settings for automatic page placement do not use the dollar sign. They are delimited using the less than/greater than symbols. For example, <RLPAGE:n>. This is also the case when they are used in an input filename template (Open Connect, Hot Folder).

Braces

The variable name should be enclosed between braces { } when other alphabetical text immediately follows the variable name.

Square Brackets

Square brackets should be used to prevent unwanted gaps when variables cannot be resolved because the value is nil, out of context, or only one value is possible.

For example:

```
$JOB[-$PART][-$BOOKSIGNATURE][-$RLPAGE][-v$VERSION][-$FLOWNAME]
```

Width Modifier

Variables can have a width modifier (a colon followed by a number, such as **:3**). This causes the variable to be substituted with exactly the specified number of characters. If the content is longer than the specified width, Asanti truncates it: If the content is shorter than the specified width, Asanti pads the remainder with blanks. You can customize the padding by inserting a plus (+) or minus (-) sign before the width modifier:

- Inserting a "+" before the width modifier specifies that the padding or truncation will be at the end of the variable. Any character you enter after the + will be used as the padding character for the specified number of spaces. For example, **+Y12** will result in a 12-character name, padded out at the end with Ys where necessary (e.g. ECO3YYYYYYYY).
- Inserting a "-" before the width modifier specifies that the padding or truncation will be at the beginning of the variable. Any character you enter after the + will be used as the padding character for the specified number of spaces. For example, -**X12** will result in a 12-character name, padded out at the beginning with Xs where necessary (e.g XXXXXXXXECO3).

When omitted, Asanti assumes "+ " (plus, followed by a space), in which case the padding is done with the "?" wildcard character.

When the string following a $ is not recognized as a variable, it is printed as a literal (e.g. $SITE becomes "$SITE"). To overrule the meaning of the $ character when followed by a legal variable name, you need to prefix the $ with another $: For example, $$SIDE then becomes "$SIDE".

In the following examples, we assume that the job has the following attributes:

- Order number ($ORDER) = 0106G0001

- Customer contact ($CUSTOMER) = ECO3

<table>
<tr><th>Variable Example</th><th>Substitution Result</th></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER$ORDER</td><td>ECO30106G001</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER</td><td>ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:3</td><td>ECO</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:6</td><td>ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:+ 6</td><td>ECO3??.</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:+_6</td><td>ECO3__</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:-_6</td><td>__ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$RLPAGE:-03</td><td>001, 002, 003,... 010, ... (3 character nos, padded up front with 0s)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMERX</td><td>$CUSTOMERX</td></tr>
<tr><td>${CUSTOMER }P</td><td>ECO3P</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER|NO NAME|</td><td>ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER|NO NAME|</td><td>NO NAME (when Customer contact is empty)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER-P</td><td>0106G0001-P</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER:>4</td><td>0001</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[:4]</td><td>0106 (takes first 4 characters)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[5:]</td><td>G0001 (takes characters starting from the 5th character)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[-2:]</td><td>01 (takes last 2 characters)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[:-2]</td><td>0106G000 (takes all characters that precede the last 2 and includes the last but two character)</td></tr>
</table>

Use NONE without the $ sign and between pipe characters to override the default behavior of generating no text if the specified variable is not used. Example: $COMPANY|NONE| generates NONE if the specified company variable is not used.

Date and Time Variable Formats

The date and time variables by default print the date and time according to the regional settings of the computer that evaluates the variable. However, in some cases you may want to have it printed differently.

NOTE: When you use format strings, the date and time variables (DATE/TIME and PRINTDATE/PRINTTIME) produce the same result: Asanti only uses the format to see what has to be printed.

You can modify the behavior of some format codes by prefixing them with #.

Format Code	Description
%#a, %#A, %#b, %#B, %#p,%#X, %#z, %#Z, %#%	# flag is ignored.
%#c	Long date and time representation, appropriate for current locale. For example: Tuesday, August 05, 2008, 12:41:29.
%#x	Long date representation, appropriate to current locale. For example: Tuesday, August 05, 2008.
%#d, %#H, %#I, %#j, %#m, %#M, %#S, %#U, %#w, %#W, %#y, %#Y	Remove leading zeros (if any).

When you specify no format string, $DATE and $TIME default to $DATE:%x and $TIME:%X.

You need to enclose the variable name and format string in braces if you want to print spaces (see examples below).

When you specify an unknown format string, Asanti prints it as a literal (without the %). A width modifier is therefore also printed literally.

Date and Time formatting options	
%a	Abbreviated weekday name (first 3 chars).
%A	Full weekday name.
%b	Abbreviated month name (first 3 chars).
%B	Full month name.
%c	Date and time representation appropriate for locale.
%d	Day of month as decimal number (01 - 31).
%j	Day of year as decimal number (001 - 366).
%m	Month as decimal number (01 - 12).
%U	Week of year as decimal number, with Sunday as first day of week (00 - 53).
%w	Weekday as decimal number (0 - 6; Sunday is 0).
%W	Week of year as decimal number, with Monday as first day of week (00 - 53).
%x	Date representation for current locale.
%y	Year without century, as decimal number (00 - 99).
%Y	Year with century, as decimal number.
%z, %Z	Time-zone name or abbreviation; no characters if time zone is unknown.
%c	Date and time representation appropriate for locale.
%H	Hour in 24-hour format (00 - 23).
%I	Hour in 12-hour format (01 - 12).
%M	Minute as decimal number (00 - 59).
%p	Current locales A.M./P.M. indicator for 12-hour clock.

Date and Time formatting options	
%S	Second as decimal number (00 - 59).
%X	Time representation for current locale.
%z, %Z	Time-zone name or abbreviation; no characters if time zone is unknown.
%%	Percent sign.

Other characters not prefixed with % are printed as literals.

NOTE: You can control the width of the replacement string by using the appropriate format codes. Most of them have a fixed width. Use %a and %b to retrieve the abbreviated day and month names, fixed to 3 characters wide.

Combinations with $DATE

Insert a space when combining this variable with other variables, e.g. \\$SYSTEMCOMPUTER\ArchiveRoot\$DATE:%Y%m \$JOB\

Examples

Format String	Result	Remarks
$DATE	07/09/03	Depends on locale. Equivalent to %x.
$TIME	11:14:45	Depends on locale. Equivalent to %X.
$DATE:%	A Wednesday	
$DATE:%c	Wed Jul 9 11:16:49 2003	Depends on locale.
${DATE:Week %j}	Week 190	
$DATE:%A%f	Wednesdayf	%f printed as literal.
${DATE:Hello World}	Hello World	Printed as literal.
$DATE:+ 5	+ 5	Width modifier printed as literal.
$DATE:%y%m%d	030709	
$DATE:%Y%m%d	20030709	Case matters!

Mark Sets Variables

These are the variables you can use for Mark Sets in Asanti. See the Mark Engraver section for more information about mark sets.

Table legend:

- Image and Sheet: These are the two mark sets categories used in Asanti.
- C = The variable can be used as a condition for placing the mark sets.
- T= The variable can be used to insert data in Text Marks.
- V = The variable can be resolved in the specified view.
- X = The variable cannot be resolved in the specified view, however, the output will be OK even it is not resolved in the view.
- Layout Editor: This column indicates whether a variable can be resolved (V) or not (X) in the Layout Editor. The output will be OK even it is not resolved in the Layout Editor.
- Asanti Configuration: This column lists the corresponding variables that can be used in File Name Templates (output to device or cutter).

Asanti Mark Sets	Image	Sheet	Layout Editor	Asanti Configuration
$product				
$product.code	T	T	V	PRODUCT_CODE
$product.copy_count	T	T	V	PRODUCT_COPYCOUNT
$product.design	T	T	V	
$product.finished_trim_size.height	T	T	V	
$product.finished_trim_size.name	T	T	V	
$product.finished_trim_size.width	T	T	V	
$product.grain	T	T	V	
$product.name	T	T	V	PRODUCT_NAME
$product.order	T	T	V	PRODUCT_ORDER
$image				

Asanti Mark Sets	Image	Sheet	Layout Editor	Asanti Configuration
$image.copy_count_actual	T		V	
$image.copy_count_requested	T		V	COPYCOUNT
$image.document_base_name	T		X	DOCUMENTBASENAME
$image.document_filename	T		X	DOCUMENTFILENAME
$image.document_name	T		X	DOCUMENT
$image.document_page	T		X	DOCPAGE
$image.document_page_label	T		X	DOCPAGELABEL
$image.finished_trim_size.height	CT		V	
$image.finished_trim_size.name	T		V	
$image.finished_trim_size.width	CT		V	
$image.horizontal_scale	CT		V	
$image.product_size.height	T		V	
$image.product_size.name	T		V	
$image.product_size.width	T		V	
$image.scale	T		V	
$image.station_number	T		V	
$image.tile_number	T		X	
$image.tile_rc	T		X	
$image.total_tiles	T		X	TOTALTILES
$image.vertical_scale	CT		V	
$press_sheet				
$press_sheet.number_images	T		V	
$sheet				
$sheet.cad_layout_name		CT	V	
$sheet.cutter.name		CT	V	CUTTER
$sheet.cutter.type		C	V	
$sheet.finishing_margins		CT	V	
$sheet.grain		CT	V	
$sheet.media.name		CT	V	MEDIANAME
$sheet.media.thickness		CT	X	MEDIATHICKNESS
$sheet.media.type		CT	V	MEDIATYPE
$sheet.name	T	T	V	SIGNATURE - SHEET
$sheet.number_images	T	CT	V	

Asanti Mark Sets	Image	Sheet	Layout Editor	Asanti Configuration
$sheet.press.name	T	CT	V	PRESS
$sheet.press.sidelay		C	V	
$sheet.run_length	T	CT	V	RUNLENGTH
$sheet.side.side	T	CT	V	SIDE
$sheet.size.height	T	CT	V	
$sheet.size.name	T	T	V	
$sheet.size.width	T	CT	V	
$sheet.work_style	T	CT	V	WORKSTYLE
$sheet_side				
$sheet_side.side	T	CT	V	SIDE
$output				
$output.cpm		T	X	CPM
$output.printdate	T	T	X	PRINTDATE
$output.printmode		T	X	PRINTMODE
$output.printtime	T	T	X	PRINTTIME
$output.quality		T	X	QUALITY
$output.resolution		T	X	RESOLUTION
$output.size.height		T	V	
$output.size.name		T	V	
$output.size.width		T	V	
$administration				
$administration.comments	CT	CT	X	COMMENTS
$administration.comments_<i>	CT	CT	X	COMMENTS_<i>
$administration.contact.email	T	T	X	CONTACTEMAIL
$administration.contact.first	T	T	X	CONTACTFIRST
$administration.contact.last	T	T	X	CONTACTLAST
$administration.contact.mobile	T	T	X	CONTACTMOBILE
$administration.contact.phone	T	T	X	CONTACTPHONE
$administration.contact.title	T	T	X	CONTACTTITLE
$administration.customer.address	T	T	X	COMPANYADDRESS
$administration.customer.city	T	T	X	COMPANYCITY
$administration.customer.country	T	T	X	COMPANYCOUNTRY
$administration.customer.name	CT	CT	X	COMPANY

Asanti Mark Sets	Image	Sheet	Layout Editor	Asanti Configuration
$administration.customer.phone	T	T	X	COMPANYPHONE
$administration.customer.state	T	T	X	COMPANYSTATE
$administration.customer.zip	T	T	X	COMPANYZIP
$administration.description	CT	CT	X	DESCRIPTION
$system				
$system.date	T	T	X	DATE
$system.time	T	T	X	TIME
$job				
$job.date	T	T	X	JOBDATE
$job.id	T	T	X	JOBID
$job.name	CT	CT	V	JOB
$job.nr	T	T	X	JOBNR
$job.operator	CT	CT	V	OPERATOR
$job.order	CT	CT	V	ORDER
$job.time	T	T	X	JOBTIME
$apogee				
$apogee.computer	T	T	X	COMPUTER
$apogee.displayname	T	T	X	PRODUCTDISPLAYNAME
$apogee.name	T	T	X	PRODUCTNAME
$apogee.system	T	T	X	SYSTEM
$apogee.systemcomputer	T	T	X	SYSTEMCOMPUTER
$apogee.vendor	T	T	X	PRODUCTVENDOR
$apogee.version	T	T	X	PRODUCTVERSION
$apogee.version_major	T	T	X	PRODUCTVERSIONMAJOR
$apogee.version_minor	T	T	X	PRODUCTVERSIONMINOR

APPENDIX

D

Context Menu Commands

This section lists the context menu commands.

Job List Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking on items in the Job List. The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Job Folder or Job.

Context Menu Item	Description
New From Selected	Opens the Job Ticket Editor with an empty Administration tab but with the same plan, imposition, etc.
Save As...	Allows you to save the job with a different name
Save As Template...	Allows you the save the job as a Ticket Template.
Upload Document	Allows you to add a file or a folder containing files to a job or Public Page Store. When you upload a folder, Asanti uploads all files and folders in that folder recursively. The uploaded folder appears as a subfolder in the Page Store.
Invite PrintSphere Uploader	Invites a collaborator to upload files for the job to the PrintSphere cloud server. Only for a PrintSphere job.
Submit Changes	Submits the changes you have made to a job.
Archive Job	Saves the selected job items to file (.arch).
Stop Archiving/ Importing	Stops archiving or importing the selected job.
Export...	• Run List - Exports the entire run list as a single PDF file. A "Save As' dialog prompts for a location and file name (job name as default). Run list must be complete (blanks allowed). • Job Dump - Similar to Archive Job, but only accessible by administrators for troubleshooting purposes (only for jobs, not for Hot Tickets). • Job Log - Exports the log file for the selected job. • Input JDF - Exports the input JDF that created the job. • CAD Files - Export all CAD files (layout and 1-up) that were imported in the job. • InkDrive - Exports the InkDrive files for the selected job (only available when the job has InkDrive files). • File list - Exports a tab-delimited text file listing the used pages/ products. • Imposition Layout - Exports the Imposition Layout and Marks files for the selected job (only available when the job has received layout information 'from Input').
Open in Production Dashboard	Opens the selected job in the Production Dashboard web application.
Reveal Supplementary Files	Opens the Supplementary Files folder of the job in the system's File Browser.
Delete Job	Deletes the current job(s).
Put Job(s) Offline	Put the selected job(s) offline.

Context Menu Item	Description
Edit Job	Displays the selected job using the default editor (Job Ticket Editor or Layout Editor), where you can modify it.
Duplicate Job	Duplicates the selected job.
Select	• All - Selects all jobs in the current view. • None
Rush Job	Upgrades the selected job to a Rush job.
High priority, Normal priority, Low priority	Changes the priority of the job as set in the Options tab to one of the three priorities.
Hold Job	Suspends all processing of the selected job(s) after the current activity for the items has been allowed to finish. This option is disabled if all items are already on hold.
Resume Job	Resumes processing of the selected job(s). This option is disabled if all items are already running.
Restart Job Processing At	Remakes all the existing job results which follow the selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to re-render a job if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.) or if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when no raster data is available.
Mark as Finished	Marks the selected job as finished, aborting all current processing and removing all outstanding tasks.
(Re)make Cut File for Job	(Re)Makes the Cut file(s) for the selected item(s). Job must use cutter that expects cut files.
Reveal Cut File for Job	Open the directory containing the cut file and select the cut file(s) for the selected item (Disabled if there is no cut file for the selected item).
Send Cut File	Sends the cut file of a layout job to the cutter.
Log for Job	Opens a Log window for the selected job(s). You can open multiple Log windows.
Problem Report for Job	Opens a Problem Report window for the job. You can open multiple Problem Report windows (PDF documents only).
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Job List Filter Context Menu Commands

Context Menu Item	Description
Save As...	Allows you to create a new custom job filter from the initial Custom Filter.
Edit	Opens the Job Filter settings.
Rename	Allows you to rename the selected custom job filter.

Context Menu Item	Description
Duplicate	Allows you to duplicate the selected custom job filter.
Delete	Deletes the selected custom job filter.
Insert Divider	Inserts a group divider under the last custom job filter.
Move Up/Down	Moves the selected filter up or down in the list.

Layout Editor

The context menu commands are explained in the relevant section about the Layout Editor: see “Context Menus” on page 178.

Product Editor - Presets

The following commands are available in the Presets dialog by context-clicking a preset in the list:

Context Menu Item	Description
Apply	Applies the selected image preset to the open image.
Apply to New Images	Applies the default preset to all new images.
Edit Preset	Unlocks the presets so you can edit them; in this edit mode you can clear or select the settings check boxes and update the preset to match the settings of the current image; any changes you make to a preset in edit mode are saved automatically.
Rename Preset	Lets you edit the name of the selected preset.
Edit Description	Places the cursor in the Description box of the selected preset.
New Folder	Creates a new folder where you can put new presets.
New Job Preset	Creates a new job preset.
Duplicate Preset	Duplicates the selected preset.
Delete Preset	Deletes the selected preset.
Import Preset	Opens a file browser where you can select a preset for importing.
Export Preset	Opens a file browser where you can select a location to export the selected preset.

Hot Ticket List Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking on Hot Tickets in the Hot Ticket List. The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Hot Ticket.

Context Menu Item	Description
Save As...	Allows you to save the ticket with a different name.
Save As Template...	Allows you the save the ticket as a Ticket Template.
Upload Document	Allows you to add a file to a Hot Ticket.
Invite PrintSphere Uploader	Shows the dialog box where you can invite someone to upload documents via PrintSphere.
Delete Hot Ticket	Deletes the selected Hot Ticket.
Edit Hot Ticket	Displays the selected Hot Ticket using the default editor, where you can modify it.
Duplicate Ticket	Duplicates the selected job and opens the result with the most appropriate editor.
Select	• All - Selects all Hot Tickets in the current view. • None
Enable Inputs	Re-activates all input channels for the selected Hot Ticket(s). By default, input channels are enabled. This option is disabled if all Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs enabled.
Disable Inputs	De-activates all input channels for the selected Hot Ticket(s). This option is disabled if all Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs disabled. A Hot Ticket cannot produce any jobs while disabled.
Log for Hot Ticket	Opens a Log window for the selected Hot Ticket.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Job Layout Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking on items in the Job Layout pane. The commands that you will see in the context menu depend on the item you select (flat or page in flat).

Flats

The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Flat.

Context Menu Item	Description
Info for Flat From	• Latest <Task Processor name> - Opens an Info window for the selected flat(s) at the latest point in the Production Plan. • <Task Processor name> - Opens an Info window for the selected flat(s) from a preceding Task Processor in the Production Plan. You can open multiple Info windows.
Select	• Select All Flats - Selects all flats in the current view • None • Fronts - Selects all front sides when the view is set to "Fronts and Backs". • Backs - Selects all back sides when the view is set to "Fronts and Backs". • Signature - Selects all sides in the signature when the view is set to "Fronts and Backs".
Continue Flat	Continues all or part of a flat that has stopped. The flat may have stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error.
Reject Flat...	Rejects the selected flat(s). All processing will be stopped for the rejected flat(s).
Clear Rejected Status	Removes the rejected status from a previously rejected flat, and restarts processing.
Discard Flat	Prevents the selected flat(s) from being printed, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. Available only when the items are waiting on a Hold action or when finished.
Include Flat	Includes a discarded flat.
Re-render Flat	Remakes all the existing job results which follow the selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to re-render a flat if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.) or if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when no raster data is available.
Re-image Flat	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on your output devices. This feature is available only for flows that have an imaging output device and finished raster data.
Re-export Flat	Re-exports previously exported results (when resources have changed or exported files have to be recreated).

Context Menu Item	Description
Remake InkDrive for Flat	Remakes InkDrive files for the selected flats.
Re-print Flat	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on a digital press. This feature is available only for flows that have a digital press and finished raster data.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Pages

The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Page.

Context Menu Item	Description
Export Page From	• Latest <Task Processor name> - Exports the latest version of the selected page. • <Task Processor name> - Exports a previous version of the selected page from a preceding Task Processor in the Production Plan.
View Page From	• Latest <Task Processor name> - Displays the results of the selected page from the last Task Processor which processed it. • <Task Processor name> - Displays the results of the selected page from a preceding Task Processor in the Plan. The results are displayed using the default viewer. You cannot edit the page.
Info for Page From	• Latest <Task Processor name> - Opens an Info window for the selected page(s) at the latest point in the Production Plan. • <Task Processor name> - Opens an Info window for the selected page(s) from a preceding Task Processor in the Production Plan. You can open multiple Info windows.
Delete Page (imposed pages only)	Deletes the selected page.
Select	• Select All Pages- Selects all pages in the current view • None • Even Positions - Selects all even placeholders/pages • Odd Positions - Selects all odd placeholders/pages • Signature - Selects all sides in the signature when the view is set to “Fronts and Backs”.
Find	• Page in Page Store- Switches to the Page Store and highlights the corresponding page.

Context Menu Item	Description
Page Adjustments (imposed pages only)	• Offset By... - Allows you to adjust the offset of the selected page(s). • Scale By... - Allows you to adjust the scale of the selected page(s) • Rotate By... - Allows you to adjust the rotation of the selected page(s) • Edit/View - Opens the Adjustments dialog box for the selected page(s). If you are not editing the job, the Adjustments dialog box is read-only. • Clear - Clears all adjustments.
Placeholder	• Make Blank - Puts a blank page in the selected placeholder(s).
Comments	Opens a dialog to enter Run List position comments.
Continue Page	Continues all or part of a page that has stopped. The page may have stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error.
Reject Page	Rejects the selected page(s). All processing will be stopped for the rejected page(s).
Clear Rejected Status	Removes the rejected status from a previously rejected page, and restarts processing.
Discard Page	Prevents the selected page(s) from being printed, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. Available only when the items are waiting on a Hold action or when finished.
Include Page	Includes a discarded page.
Re-render Page	Remakes all the existing job results which follow the selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to re-render a page if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.) or if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when no raster data is available.
Re-image Page	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on your output devices. This feature is available only for flows that have an imaging output device and finished raster data.
Re-export Page	Re-exports previously exported results (when resources have changed or exported files have to be recreated).

Context Menu Item	Description
Remake InkDrive for Page	Remakes InkDrive files for the selected pages.
Preflight Report	Generates a Preflight Report.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

System Overview Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking one of the Task Processors or the Asanti System icon in the Hardware pane.

Task Processors

The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Task Processor in the System Overview.

Context Menu Item	Description
Export Output Device PPD (Output Task Processors only)	Device PPD...- Creates a PPD file for the selected output device.
Start	Start a Task Processor
Stop	Stops a Task Processor
Restart	Stops the Task Processor and starts it again.
Put Online (Output Task Processors only)	Enables the scheduling of tasks for the selected Output Task Processor. This option is disabled if all Output Task Processors are online.
Put Offline (Output Task Processors only)	Disables the scheduling of tasks for the selected Output Task Processor. This option is disabled if all Output Task Processors are offline.
Configure	Allows you to access the Configuration settings of the selected output device. Administrator access level required,
Resources	Allows you to quickly access the resources of the selected Task Processor.
New Group	Creates a Task Processor group for the selected Task Processor.
Edit Group	Edits the selected Task Processor group.
Delete Group	Deletes the selected Task Processor group.
Activity for <selected Task Processor>	Opens the Activity window for the selected Task Processor. For more information, see "Monitoring your Task Processors" on page 466.
Log for <selected Task Processor>	Opens a Log window for the selected Task Processor(s). You can open multiple Log windows.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Asanti System

The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click the Asanti System icon in the Hardware pane of the System Overview.

Context Menu Item	Description
Log for Asanti System	Opens a Log window for the Asanti System.
Export System Log	Exports the System Log.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Activity Window Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking one of the tasks listed in the Activity window.

Context Menu Item	Description
Continue Tasks	Continues all or part of a task that has stopped. The task may have stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error.
Hold Tasks	Puts the selected task(s) on hold.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Published by ECO3 BV, Belgium.

doc. version 7.0.1

AGFA

WE EMBODY PRINT